

BOHEMIAN MADE EASY.

A PRACTICAL BOHEMIAN COURSE
for English-speaking people.

39
10971



By CHARLES JONAS,

late U. S. Consul at Prague, author of the first Dictionary of the

Bohemian and English languages.

RACINE, WIS. 1890.

PG4111
JG7

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1890,
by CHARLES JONAS, in the office of the Librarian of
Congress, at Washington, D. C.

694

TO THE HONORABLE

GROVER CLEVELAND,

EX-PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES,

THIS LITTLE WORK IS DEDICATED,

AS A SLIGHT TOKEN OF PROFOUND

RESPECT AND ADMIRATION,

BY THE

AUTHOR.

Why this book has been written.

The answer to such a question is simple: because there is a demand for it. And whenever there is a demand, the supply is sure to come.

Not a year passes, but numbers apply to divers booksellers and publishers for some handy book to give them a practical knowledge of the Bohemian language or to serve as a proper introduction to a study thereof.

Who are the applicants? They are business men, clerks, salesmen and travelers, druggists and physicians, ministers, teachers and lawyers. They live and follow their vocations in localities where a large fraction of the population speaks the Bohemian language; they perceive the advantage which a knowledge of Bohemian, or even a slight acquaintance with that tongue, would give them; and consequently they look for a guide.

Such a guide this little work is designed to furnish. I may say that within six or eight years past I have myself read hundreds of applications for such a guide from different parts of our country and I repeatedly promised to write a book of this kind as soon as my other occupations permitted. Now I have redeemed that pledge. It has been done, to be sure, only in an imperfect manner; there are defects and shortcomings, which in a pioneer work of this kind cannot be avoided. But I applied myself to the task with the honest intention,

materially to assist the beginner in his attempt to gain such a knowledge of the Bohemian language, as would be of help to him in his intercourse with people speaking that language, or in his desire to read Bohemian literature ; and I cherish the hope, that this present result of my labor will prove really helpful to those who will make use of it for that purpose. —

“Is Bohemian a hard language to learn ?” This inquiry I have heard more than once.

I think no language is easy to learn, if a person wants to have a perfect command of it ; and Bohemian presents about a fair average of the difficulties, which a student of languages encounters. But there is no great difficulty in acquiring a superficial knowledge of any living European tongue, a knowledge sufficient for ordinary intercourse in every day life, if a person has the will and perseverance to learn it and a fair opportunity to use what he learns. Beginners who will take up this little book with an earnest purpose, will soon find out that Bohemian comes well under this general rule.

Some years ago I made the acquaintance of a business man in a small city of Wisconsin, with whom I conversed both in English and Bohemian and whom I noticed to use both languages in his general conversation with others apparently with the same ease and fluency. It was not until some time after our first meeting, that I learned the gentleman in question was not a Bohemian by birth, but a native American of German descent. Had I been told that he was a born Bohemian, I certainly would have believed it, from the way he handled the language. On our next meeting I asked him how he succeeded in mastering the Bohemian language so perfectly; and he said : “My instructor was the Bohemian newspaper. I commenced by reading communications written by farmers in an easy, colloquial style and asking explanations as to meaning and pronunciation. In this I persevered, my stock of words and phrases grew rapidly, and I was soon enabled to

understand and to make a rapid progress in conversation. Later on I had recourse to the dictionary."

This tends to show what may be done by patient application and perseverance and it may serve as an encouragement to beginners. Of course, the number of persons of other nationalities who have acquired a sufficient practical knowledge of Bohemian to employ it in ordinary intercourse and business, is very large; and I mention it simply to show, that there is no insuperable difficulty in the way, as some persons perhaps might imagine.

And with this little introduction I wish the beginner God speed!

The Bohemian language.

The Slavonic family of nations, numbering rather more than one hundred and ten millions, is composed of two great divisions :

1. The eastern division, comprising the Russians, Bulgarians and Serbo-Croats, under which latter head may also be classed the Slovenes;
2. the western division, comprising the Poles, Bohemians and the remnant of the Wends in Germany.

The Bohemian language is closely related to the other branches of the Slavonic tongue. It needs only a few weeks' study, for a person having a full command of Bohemian, to obtain a fair practical knowledge of any other Slavonic idiom. Especially is the relationship between Bohemian and Polish so close, that they might almost be considered dialects of one and the same language.

The Bohemian language is spoken in Bohemia, Moravia, part of Austrian and Prussian Silesia, and also in Upper Hun-

gary. The Slovak idiom spoken in the last named country is simply an earlier form of Bohemian, which latter the Slovaks of Hungary used for centuries as their literary or "biblical" language; only within the last fifty years have they begun to employ their proper dialect largely in literature. But still, the language is virtually the same, Bohemians and Slovaks needing no interpreters to understand one another, and no dictionaries mutually to read their publications. As a matter of fact, the two idioms are much nearer than high German and low German.

The Bohemians in the United States.

About the year 1848 Bohemian emigration to the United States commenced. Its volume has never been so large as that of the Irish or German emigration, but it has been steady and it will naturally go on for many years to come. In all probability, it will continue as long as European emigration to this side of the Atlantic ocean in general, and it may in the near future assume larger proportions than in the past.

The census of 1870 found 42,000 persons of Bohemian birth settled in the United States. In the year 1880 there were, according to the census taken in that year, over 85,000. But it must be remembered that many of those classified in the census tables as born in Austria, are of Bohemian nationality, especially such as emigrated from the provinces of Moravia and Silesia, and not from Bohemia proper. Quite a number, also, were by mistake entered under the general heading of "Germany", as to the country of their nativity.

It is safe to say that the number of persons born in Europe, whose mother tongue was Bohemian, at the time of the official enumeration of 1880 exceeded one hundred thou-

sand. At this writing they number nearly 200,000, and together with the first generation born in this country of Bohemian parents and speaking the language, in all probability somewhere near 500,000.

Within the last ten or fifteen years quite a heavy stream of immigration has set in from Hungary. At first mostly employed in Eastern mines and factories, these immigrants have in recent years been spreading west and settling on lands. These Hungarians are mostly Slovaks.

The number of Slovaks in the United States at this time probably equals about one third that of the Bohemians proper; hence the present number of persons in the United States speaking the Bohemian language in both its dialects may be computed at six hundred thousand.

The Bohemians have their homes chiefly in the following states: New York, Pennsylvania, Maryland, Ohio, Illinois, Michigan, Wisconsin, Iowa, Minnesota, Nebraska, Kansas, S. Dakota, Missouri and Texas.

In the first five states and also in Missouri they live chiefly in the cities, following different trades and working in factories. In the other states they are mainly farmers, as a rule very industrious and thrifty. Many of them are of course engaged in business of all kinds and in the professions. In their manners and customs and ways of thought the Bohemians strongly resemble the Germans, particularly the South Germans, with whom they have been in close contact in the old world for over a thousand years. They are industrious and saving, sociable and hospitable; their favorite beverage at social gatherings and entertainments is beer, and "Bohemian beer" of different make has in recent years become quite popular in this country of ours. Immoderate indulgence in their favorite drink may doubtless sometimes be observed among them as among others, especially in the large cities;

but as a rule, they are sober, law-abiding and extremely good-natured.

In religion, Roman Catholicism predominates among the Bohemians and they have a large number of churches, priests and parish schools in the United States. The Protestants also have numerous places of worship. Large numbers of the Bohemians, however, keep apart from all churches and religious denominations. They are liberals, free-thinkers and agnostics of different shades of opinion, enjoying the inestimable privilege of every American citizen to follow his convictions and enjoy a full personal freedom, so long as he respects the laws and the equal freedom of his fellow-citizens.

The first Bohemian newspaper on this side of the Atlantic was issued thirty years ago at Racine, Wisconsin, the first number appearing on New Year's day 1860. Now there are about twenty five or thirty newspapers in that language published in the United States, both daily and weekly, besides several in the Slovak dialect. Most of them have a good patronage and some have in fact a surprisingly large circulation. Other publications are also quite numerous. The Bohemians, and particularly the farmers, are fond of reading, eager for information, and above all they seek political knowledge, taking the liveliest interest in whatever concerns the government, public institutions and laws of their adopted country. During the civil war the Bohemians, although at that time quite generally classified as Germans, furnished a considerable contingent of the defenders of the Union and in Chicago a monument will soon be reared by the Bohemians in memory of those of their nationality, who cheerfully took up arms and gave their lives for the unity and freedom of this great country.*)

*) The following is a quotation from an extensive article on the Bohemians in St. Louis, Mo., which appeared in the GLOBE-DEMOCRAT of February 16, 1890:

"In the territory lying between Seventh and Fourteenth streets on the east and west, and Geyer and Russell avenues on the north and south, there is a population of 25,000 souls, all speaking the language of Bohemia, schooling their children in the ancient tongue, keeping up an acquaintance with a rich and varied literature that dates

back to the ninth century, and for the most part worshiping in the Roman Catholic Church, of which Bohemia has been a stanch adherent since the ninth century. A thrifty set are these Bohemians, good citizens in all that the term implies, prompt tax-payers, fully alive to the requirements of civilization; mingling freely in business intercourse with their cousins from other lands, they yet preserve the social customs of their native land, and take an overweening pride in the preservation of its language and its literature. The Bohemian met up town in business life would be casually mistaken for a German, but a tour through their section of the city impresses one with their startling individuality.... In conversation with S. (one of their leading men) I was struck by the ease and purity of his English diction. This is a marked peculiarity of most of the Bohemians. From their own harsh and difficult language they switch off into English which betrays but little trace of foreign accent." —

The statement about the Bohemians having been steadfast adherents of the Church of Rome may be considered as a serious *lapsus calami*, because it is not borne out by history. The Bohemians were in fact a protestant nation from the burning at the stake of their famous reformers John Huss and Jerome of Prague (in the years 1415 and 1416) until the period of the Thirty Years' war, which took its start in Bohemia. Concerning the allusion to the character of the Bohemian language it may be stated as a well known experience, that nearly every language appears "harsh and difficult" to a person who is perfectly ignorant of the same and very rarely hears it spoken. Time and again have I heard, on the European continent, the English language characterized as "harsh and difficult", whereas in fact, English is a language not only full of melody as well as power, but probably the easiest of all European tongues to learn.

PART I.

SECTION 1.

General observations.

In the Bohemian language Roman characters are used in writing and printing.

In order to read Bohemian it is first necessary to be well acquainted with the sounds, represented by the different letters of the Bohemian alphabet.

In attempting to read English while giving the letters the customary Bohemian sounds, we should find most English words difficult to pronounce and a large proportion of them simply unpronounceable.

The same is true if we attempt to read Bohemian while giving the letters their English sounds.

This explains why English-speaking persons, entirely ignorant of any language but their own and supposing that the letters of the alphabet always retain their English sounds, find so many “jawbreakers” in trying to pronounce Bohemian or other foreign words. Foreign persons, ignorant of English, find themselves “in the same boat”, when trying to pronounce English words, and their difficulty is even much greater on account of the complicated character of English orthography.

SECTION 2.

The Bohemian alphabet.

The alphabet of the Bohemian language consists of 26 letters, the same as the English, if accented letters, being simply a modification of the original sounds, are not counted; but, counting all the accented letters separately, we find 41 letters in the Bohemian alphabet.

The following table gives the complete alphabet of the Bohemian language, with the English equivalents as near as possible. Capital letters, of course, correspond with the small letters, accented or unaccented.

THE ALPHABET.

a	has the sound of <i>o</i> in <i>done</i> .
á	" " " " <i>a</i> in <i>arm</i> .
b	" " " " <i>b</i> .
c	" " " " <i>ts</i> .
č	" " " " <i>ch</i> in <i>child</i> .
d	" " " " <i>d</i> ; it takes the sound of <i>d'</i> when followed by the soft vowels <i>ě</i> , <i>i</i> or <i>í</i> .
ď	" " " " <i>di</i> in the French word <i>diable</i> . This mellow sound of <i>d</i> , imperfectly rendered by <i>dy</i> , is ordinarily heard in the English expressions <i>would you</i> , <i>could you</i> , when rapidly uttered, so that the terminal <i>d</i> and initial <i>y</i> are fused into one sound.
e	" " " " <i>e</i> in <i>end</i> .
é	" " " " <i>e</i> in <i>ere</i> , or <i>ai</i> in <i>air</i> .
ě	" " " " <i>ea</i> in <i>beatitude</i> , or <i>ye</i> in <i>yes</i> ; when it occurs directly after d , n , t , these letters take the soft sound of d' , n' , t' , and ě sounds like e . The syllable je , <i>ye</i> , is an equivalent for ě .
f	" " " " <i>f</i> .
g	" " " " <i>g</i> in <i>great</i> ; it occurs only in foreign words.
h	" " " " <i>h</i> in <i>ham</i> .
ch	" " " " <i>ch</i> in German and Dutch, also in Welsh, or <i>x</i> in Greek, — somewhat like <i>kh</i> .
i	" " " " <i>i</i> in <i>pin</i> .
í	" " " " <i>i</i> in <i>pique</i> , or <i>ee</i> in <i>seen</i> .
j	" " " " <i>y</i> in <i>yes</i> .
k	" " " " <i>k</i> in <i>sink</i> , without an aspirate.
l	" " " " <i>l</i> .

m	"	"	"	"	<i>m.</i>
n	"	"	"	"	<i>n.</i>
ñ	"	"	"	"	<i>ñ</i> in Spanish (<i>cañon</i>) or <i>gn</i> in French (<i>campagne</i>); imperfectly rendered by <i>ny</i> .
o	"	"	"	"	<i>o</i> in <i>obey</i> .
ó	"	"	"	"	<i>ó</i> in <i>lord</i> .
p	"	"	"	"	<i>p.</i>
q	"	"	"	"	<i>q</i> in <i>question</i> ; it occurs only in foreign words.
r	"	"	"	"	<i>r</i> in <i>rest</i> ; it has a sharp, trilling sound.
ř	"	"	"	"	<i>rsh</i> (or <i>rzh</i> , as the Imperial Dictionary of the English Language has it); it is a sound proper to the Bohemian and Polish languages, which must be heard in order to be acquired correctly; the same may be said of the English sound of <i>th</i> , hard and soft.
s	"	"	"	"	<i>s</i> in <i>sink</i> .
š	"	"	"	"	<i>sh</i> .
t	"	"	"	"	<i>t</i> in <i>test</i> ; it takes the sound of <i>t'</i> when followed by <i>ě</i> , <i>i</i> or <i>í</i> .
t'	"	"	"	"	<i>t'</i> in the French word <i>tiens</i> , as commonly pronounced. This mellow sound of <i>t</i> , imperfectly rendered by <i>ty</i> , is also heard in the English expressions <i>wouldn't you</i> , <i>couldn't you</i> , when rapidly uttered, so that the terminal <i>t</i> and initial <i>y</i> are fused into one sound.
u	"	"	"	"	<i>u</i> in <i>push</i> .
ú	{	"	"	"	<i>u</i> in <i>rude</i> , or <i>oo</i> in <i>pool</i> .
ü		"	"	"	<i>v</i> .
v	"	"	"	"	<i>x</i> in <i>expect</i> .
x	"	"	"	"	<i>y</i> in <i>lynch</i> .
y	"	"	"	"	<i>i</i> in <i>pique</i> , or <i>ee</i> in <i>seen</i> .
ý	"	"	"	"	<i>z</i> in <i>zeal</i> .
z	"	"	"	"	<i>z</i> in <i>azure</i> , or <i>s</i> in <i>pleasure</i> .

The beginner must try to master thoroughly the peculiar sound of every accented letter in the Bohemian alphabet, before proceeding with his lessons. However, it is evident that of all the accented letters only four will present a certain difficulty: **d̄**, **ñ**, **t̄** and **ř**. The rest are simple. Among the plain consonants, the peculiar sound of **ch** must be well practiced; the combination **kh** gives it only imperfectly.

SECTION 3.

Names of the letters.

The names of the letters of the Bohemian alphabet, though of little consequence to the beginner, are given in the following table as near as can be. However, the Bohemian sounds of the letters, as explained in the foregoing section, must be well kept in mind, in order to name the letters correctly.

For instance: **b** is called *bé*, to be pronounced like *beh*, the *e* sounding like *e* in *ere*, **ai** in *air*, or **a** in *fare*, the final *h* being mute and serving only as a lengthening mark.

Two of the accents (*á*, *û*), whenever they occur, signify only a prolongation of the sound; the quality of the other accents has been explained in the foregoing section.

In spelling a word, the vowels with a long accent (*á*, *é*, *í*, *ú*, *ý*) are called *long a*, *long e*, etc.; also, **a** with a comma, **e** with a comma, and so forth; *û* is called **u with a ring**.

THE LETTERS NAMED.

a, á	á (<i>ah</i>)	ch	khá	ř	<i>ersh</i>
b	bé	i, í	ee (in <i>bee</i>)	s	<i>ess</i>
c	tsé	j	yé	š	<i>esh</i>
č	ché	k	ká	t	<i>té</i>
d	dé	l	el	ť	<i>té</i>

d'	<i>d'ě</i>	m	<i>em</i>	u, ú, ü	<i>oo</i>
e, é	<i>é (eh)</i>	n	<i>en</i>		<i>(in boom)</i>
ě	<i>iýé</i>	ň	<i>eň</i>	v	<i>vé</i>
f	<i>ef</i>	o, ó	<i>ó (oh)</i>	x	<i>ix</i>
g	<i>gé</i> (like g in <i>go</i>)	p	<i>pé</i>	y, ý	<i>ee or ypsilon</i>
h	<i>há</i>	q	<i>koo</i>	z	<i>zet</i>
		r	<i>er</i>	ž	<i>žet</i>

*SECTION 4.***Bohemian pronunciation.**

After mastering the sounds of the Bohemian letters, the learner may be said to have fully conquered Bohemian pronunciation.

There is in fact only one rule: *Pronounce as it is written, sounding every letter*, — of course, giving the letters their proper Bohemian, and not their English sounds.

The English, French and German written languages abound with silent letters; the Bohemian language has practically none, that is, extremely few. Such as there are, will be pointed out in the course of the following lessons.

It is a well known rule in English, that there can be no written syllable without a vowel. In Bohemian we sometimes encounter syllables made up of consonants without any vowel.

“How in the world can you pronounce that?”

Not infrequently have we heard such a question from persons, having no idea of any language but their own.

But it is just as easy to pronounce such syllables in Bohemian, as it is in English to give utterance to syllables with a mute vowel. An example will elucidate it:

Trn means *thorn*. This word is evidently of the same derivation in both languages.

Now, the Bohemian word **trn** being composed of three consonants and no vowel, how is it pronounced?

In the same way, as the second syllable of the English words *bittern*, *slattern*, where the vowel *e* is silent. We hear in that second syllable only the sounds of *t-r-n*, the sound of the vowel *e* disappearing entirely; and this explains exactly the pronunciation of Bohemian words of one syllable, or syllables, without a vowel. Syllables with silent vowels abound in English as well as in German,—not quite so in French;— and they are constantly pronounced with the same ease, as the syllables having no vowel sounds in Bohemian.

It is to be observed that such syllables **always** contain one of the two consonants **I** and **r** which are sometimes called “half-vowels”, because in such cases they almost take the place of vowels. In a prolongation of the sound we hear in Bohemian somewhat indistinctly the vowel **e** before the proper sound of those consonants, as if we wrote and partially pronounced :

t^{ern} instead of **trn** (thorn)

r^{elk} ,,, .. **vlk** (wolf)

The number of monosyllabic words without a vowel is not large; but syllables consisting of two or three consonants occur quite often.

For instance : **trčeti**, **strčiti**, means in English *to stick out, to push*. Each of these words is composed of three syllables : **tr-č-e-ti**, **str-č-i-ti**; and the first syllable of each contains only consonants : **tr**, **str**.

How are they pronounced ?

Just like *ter* and *ster* in the English words *bitter*, *blister*. Nobody finds any difficulty in passing over the silent *e* and saying *bittr*, *blistr*.

Among the Bohemian vowels there are some, which are called *soft*, namely : **e**, **ě**, **i**, **í**; and others (**a**, **o**, **u**, **y**) which are called hard or broad.

Of the soft vowels the last three, **ě**, **i** and **í**, have a softening influence upon some preceding consonants, particularly **n**, **d**, **t**, which they change into the soft sounds of **ñ**, **đ**, **f**, as noticed in section 1. For instance :

saně (sleigh) is pronounced as if spelt **sañe**;
paní (mistress, lady) is pronounced as if spelt **pañí**;
dělo (cannon) sounds like **d'elo**;
dilo (work).....**d'ilo**;
tělo (body)**telo**;
tisk (printing)**tisk**;

This will always be plainly indicated in the pronouncing columns of the practical lessons contained in Part II.

Care must be taken to give every long vowel (**á, é, í, ý, ó, ú, ü**) its proper *long* sound, because a shortened sound would often make the word unintelligible or change its meaning, the same as in English in numerous cases. For instance :

pata means *heel*; **pátá** means the *fifth* (in the feminine gender). The only difference is in the length of the vowels. Likewise in English : **lid** and **lead** have the same vowel sound, the only difference being in its length or quantity. —

We have said all it is necessary to say about Bohemian pronunciation and in closing we again enjoin the only rule, which obtains in Bohemian with very few exceptions : Pronounce as it is written, — giving every letter its proper Bohemian sound.

SECTION 5.

Parts of speech.

In Bohemian the parts of speech or classes of words are the same as in English, excepting the article.

In English we have the definite article *the* and the indefinite article *a, an*. (In French, masculine, feminine, *le, la, — un, une*; in German, masculine, feminine and neutre, *der, die, das, — ein, eine, ein*.)

In Bohemian there is no article, definite or indefinite. In this regard, Bohemian agrees with Latin.

We say in English : *the house, the houses, a house*; in Bohemian **dům, domy, dům.**

SECTION 6.

Gender.

But, having no article, the Bohemian noun suffers nevertheless from the useless infliction of grammatical gender in the same degree as the German, Latin and Greek. It has three genders, namely : masculine, feminine and neutre.

The English language has rejected all distinction of gender, attributing sex to living beings only, which is one of the greatest advantages the English language has over all other European tongues, ancient and modern.

In the absence of an article in Bohemian, if we want to designate the gender of a noun, we use the indicative pronoun *this* or *that*, namely : **ten** for the masculine, **ta** for the feminine and **to** for the neutre gender. Hence we say :

ten dům	<i>this (or that) house</i>
ta bouda	<i>this (or that) hut</i>
to okno	<i>this (or that) window</i>

In the plural it is **ti** for living masculine beings :

ti muži, *these (or those) men;*

ty for inanimate masculine things and for the feminine gender : **ta** for the neutre :

ty domy, *these or those houses;*

ty boudy, *these or those huts;*

ta okna, *these or those windows.*

However, in colloquial parlance, **ty** is heard in the plural regardless of gender. —

Always remember, that the article has no existence in Bohemian ; and that the words **ten, ta, to, — ti, ty, ta,** when used before a noun, are simply indicative pronouns and nothing else.

SECTION 7.

Grammatical rules in general.

Bohemian is one of the highly inflected languages, like German or the classic tongues, which is doubtless a disadvantage, to be deplored especially from the standpoint of the learner. On account mainly of the useless distinction of gender, which permeates the whole structure of the Bohemian language, grammatical forms and rules are numerous, forming the principal difficulty encountered in the study of the language.

But to some extent, at least, that difficulty is offset by colloquial usage, which largely disregards the artificial distinction of gender in the employment of pronouns, adjectives and verbs, as they relate to nouns of different gender. This serves to simplify the matter somewhat for the learner of Bohemian as commonly spoken.

In the following lessons we try to imitate the natural method of learning a language. We do not teach the child grammatical rules and complications before it knows how to speak. We teach it words and their connection in phrases, expressing thoughts.

Consequently we do not intend to cram the beginner at the outset with all sorts of grammatical rules. There are not thousands but millions of people using the Bohemian language and knowing little of the rules and perplexities of its grammar. The same is true of every other living tongue.

This Course being designed solely for practical purposes, it will be our aim to impart to the learner some practical knowledge of the language in the easiest, most natural and most direct way possible. We shall therefore interpolate in the following lessons only such grammatical rules, as

may appear to be indispensable to facilitate the student's progress and which may easily be mastered *en passant*, or, so to say, by a method of easy induction.

A more extended and methodical review of the Bohemian grammar will be found in the last part of this book. After acquiring to a certain degree a practical knowledge of the language, the learner will find it much easier to grapple with the details of its grammar, which in the beginning would serve only to perplex him unnecessarily and to dampen his ardor. And when a moderate knowledge of the tongue is attained, the progressive student will naturally take a Dictionary of the English and Bohemian languages to his aid, which will make further progress rapid and pleasing.

The main difficulty is in the start, as in every other language. It requires earnestness of purpose and perseverance. The beginner must not allow himself to be discouraged by such initial difficulties, as he is sure to meet with; and whenever the pronunciation of an accented letter or a word, as given in this book, seems to be a stumbling-block, we would advise him to ask some neighbor or acquaintance, who speaks Bohemian, to pronounce it for him repeatedly, so that his ear may grow accustomed to the sound and the same may become quite familiar to him. If he fails to catch it forthwith, let him try again and again, until he succeeds. Let him remember, that the thousands of Bohemians who learn English find similar difficulties in their way; and numbers of those, who at first felt discouraged, thinking they could never master the intricacies of the English tongue, to-day speak and write it tolerably well, — many of them with fluency and grace.

SECTION 8

The accent.

In the Bohemian language the accent is always placed upon the first syllable; consequently its rules, which in English have to be closely studied, do not offer any difficulty whatever. Only when a noun is preceded by a preposition of one syllable, the accent is transferred and placed upon that preposition.

SECTION 9.

Ty and **vy**, — *thou* and *you*.

The personal pronoun **ty** of the second person singular is used in Bohemian in family circles, and in addressing familiar or intimate friends. It expresses endearment, familiarity or close friendship.

But among the Bohemians in America it is very often improperly employed instead of **vy** (*you*) in addressing others, which latter word in Bohemian has the same general usage as in English. By a curious mistake most of the original Bohemian settlers in America, like many of the Germans, translated the English *you* by **ty**, fancying the meaning to be identical and supposing that in English the second person singular is used in addressing another person, instead of the second person *plural*, as is the proper custom in Bohemian. But the rule in ordinary discourse is almost the same in English as in Bohemian, the second person plural (*you*, **vy**) being employed in addressing others and always combined with a plural verb, there being only a few exceptions in Bohemian as stated above. The French language follows exactly the same rule as the Bohemian; but in German discourse the third person plural is used in speaking to another (**Sie**, *they*).

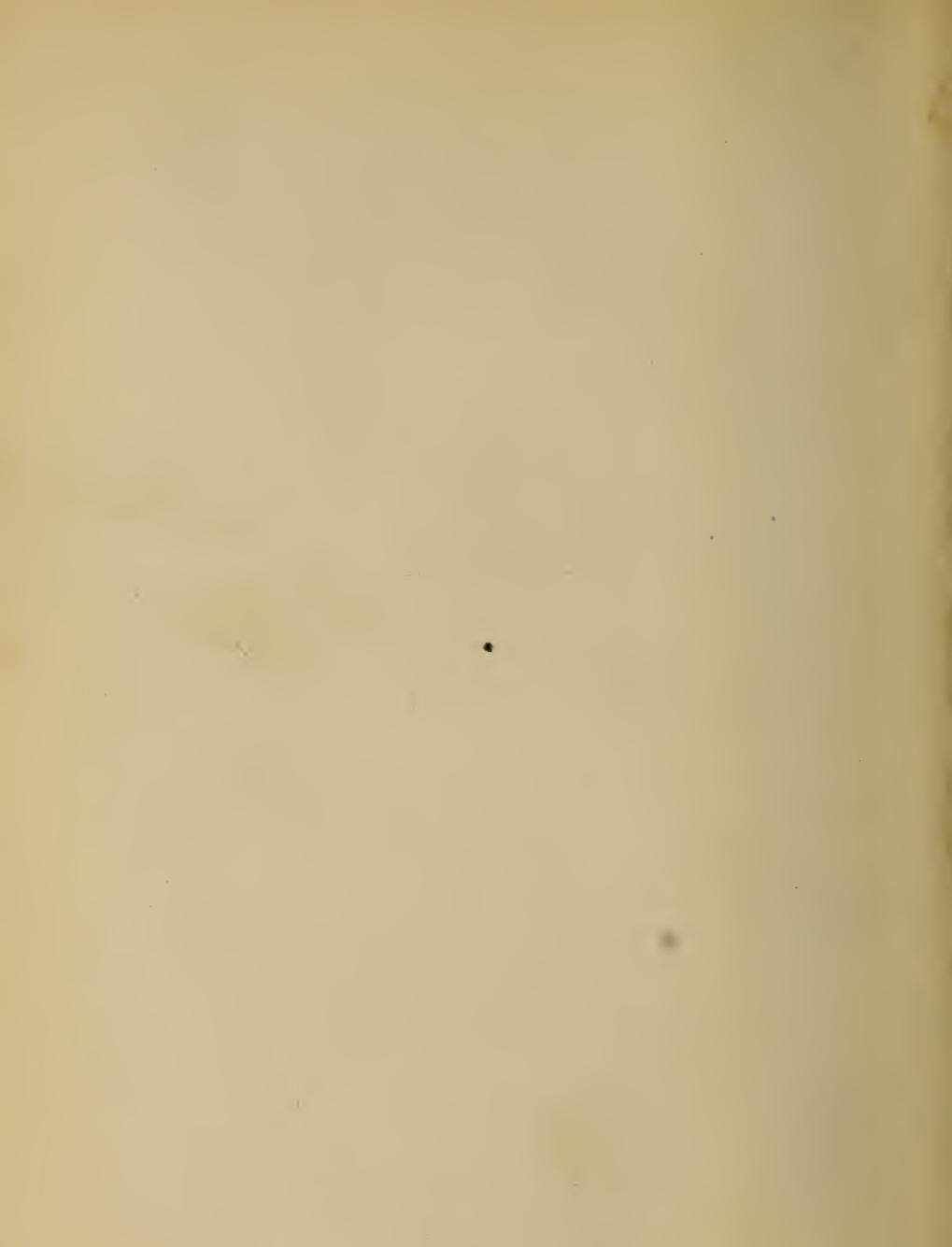
This explanation, though somewhat lengthy, has been deemed necessary at the outset.

SECTION 10.

In vulgar language, the sound of the consonant **v** is often improperly placed before the initial vowel **o**, so that for instance, in place of a pure **on**, **ona**, **ono** (*he*, *she*, *it*) we hear **von**, **vona**, **vono**. It is something similar to the vulgar English custom to place the sound of **h** before an initial vowel: *H'englishman*, *h'eye-tooth*, instead of *Englishman*, *eye-tooth*.



PART III.



Rules of pronunciation.

The following rules must constantly be kept in mind :

1—The Bohemian pronunciation in the following lessons is always given in *italics*.

2—We proceed upon the supposition that section 2, part I, explaining the sounds of all the Bohemian letters, and particularly the sounds of accented vowels, has been fully digested by the beginner.

3—Consequently we do not attempt, in the following lessons, to give English equivalents for the long vowels á and é, which are of very frequent occurrence, because it would be a useless complication. For the long vowels í and ý, whose sound is identical, the English ee as heard in *seen* will have to answer. But it is to be observed that in ordinary Bohemian discourse the sound of ý is frequently (in fact, nearly always) changed into ej, i. e. ey as heard in *they, obey*. The word sýr (cheese), for instance, is properly pronounced *seer*, but commonly *seyr*.

4—The sound of the Bohemian short vowels a, e, o, is represented by ā, ē, ō; but the marked characters á, é, ó are avoided when their use appears to be superfluous. For instance the pronunciation of words like **tento** (this one), **pense** (pension), **ponor** (draught of a ship) is sufficiently indicated by *tentō*, *pensē*, *ponor*, to an English-speaking beginner; and it would be superfluous to write *těntō*, *pěnsē*, *pōnōr*.

5—The short sound of i is given by i, as heard in *pin*. When the long English sound of i (as heard in *dine*) is to be employed a full-face i or I will stand for it, — which however is of rare occurrence.

6 — Short **y** always retains its SHORT English sound as heard in the word **lynch**, and we use for it in the pronouncing column either *i* or *y*, as may be more appropriate. The combination **ej** will commonly be represented by *ey*, which must always be pronounced like *ey* in *they*, *whey*, *obey*.

7 — The short vowel **u** is represented by *ü*, but frequently also by *oo*, where a slight lengthening of the sound is not only admissible, but conducive to a clear enunciation. Long **ú** and **ü** are naturally always rendered by *oo*, as heard in *boot*.

8 — The vowel **ě**, when preceded by **d**, **n**, **t**, changes them into **đ**, **ñ**, **ť**, and has then the sound of a simple **e**. When it retains its proper sound of **ě**, we commonly write it *ye* in the pronouncing column. The student must be careful always to sound it like *ye* in the English words *yes*, *yet*, *yell*, and NEVER like the word *ye*, meaning "you". For instance : **mě**, **právě**, (me, just), **mye**, **prárye** (*mye*, *prárye*).

The syllable **je** is identical in pronunciation with **ě**, and is also rendered by *ye*; for example : **jen** (only), *yen*. **Je** is generally used in common discourse as an abbreviation of **jest**, *jest* (is); to guard against possible mispronunciation, we will always write it *yě*.

9 — The sound of the soft consonants **đ**, **ñ**, **ť** is represented by the combination *dy*, *ny*, *ty*, when practicable, which is rarely the case. Whenever this is found impracticable, or when it would only serve to obscure instead of facilitating matters, a full-face **đ**, **ñ**, **ť** is used in the pronouncing column and the student must try his best to give it the proper Bohemian sound.

Inflexible rule : When the soft vowels **ě**, **i**, **í** follow after **d**, **n**, **t**, these consonants are softened into **đ**, **ñ**, **ť**, and will be so marked.

10 — To represent the sound of **ch**, the combined letters **kh** are invariably employed, for want of a better substitute. The sound of **r̄** is given by *rsh*, for the same reason.*)

*) The letter **r̄** was unknown in the old Bohemian language and is wisely rejected by the Slovaks, who use the letter **r̄** in its place. In many cases also, where its use is insisted upon by strict and pedantic grammarians, it is avoided by the practical common sense of the people.

11 — For the letter č we use *ch* or *tch* as heard in *chap, wretch*; for š the English equivalent *sh* is used; for the Bohemian **j**, the letter *y* as heard in *yonder* is made to answer. A final s in Bohemian has always the sharp hissing sound and will be marked *ss*.

12 — For the sound of ž the Imperial Dictionary gives *zh* as a substitute; but we retain the full-face Bohemian ž in the pronouncing column, as nothing would be gained by such a substitution. It is always pronounced like *z* in *azure*, or *s* in *pleasure*. But in some cases, when terminating a word or a syllable, the letter ž takes the sharper sound of *sh* and will be so noted.

THE DIPHTHONG ou.

This is the only diphthong in the Bohemian language, and it must always be pronounced like *ou* in *dough*, or like the word *owe*, — never like *ou* in *pound* or *ghoul*. We shall commonly mark it *oŭ*.

ABBREVIATIONS

will be avoided as much as possible, and their meaning will in every case be self-evident. — The letters *m, f, n* beside a noun denote gender (masculine, feminine, neutre). — *Sing.* means singular number; *pl.* means plural number.

THE HYPHEN.

Syllables without a vowel — but always containing one of the so-called “semi-vowels” **I** and **r**, as before observed, — are separated from other syllables of the same word by a hyphen, to make their separate pronunciation apparent. For instance: **brzo** (soon), *br-zō*, — the syllable *br* being pronounced exactly like *bor* in the English words *labor, neighbor*.

However, a silent *e* will often be interpolated in such syllables, to elucidate their pronunciation; for instance: **prší, pershee**, it rains.

THE APOSTROPHE

will be used to prevent a collision of two letters, into which an English-speaking beginner might easily be entrapped, and to keep them separate; as, for example: **měl jsem** (I had), pronounced *m'yell sěm*, — and not *my-ell sěm*.

LESSON I.

Já	yá	I		ona	oňa	she		
ty	ty	thou (<i>improperly</i> you)		ono	oňo	it		
on	oň	he		ten, ta, to,	ten, tă, tō,	this, that		
				ty	ty,	that or those		
				tu,	zde	tă,	zdě	here
				a,	i	ă,	i	and
				ano,	ne	ăňo,	ne	yes, no
				za	ză	for;	půl	pool half
				na	nă	on		

Já mám,	yá mám,	I have	or	on má,	oňa má,	he has	or
mám	mám	I have	got	má	má	he has	got
mám ?	mám ?	have	I ?	má ?	má ?	has	he ?
ty máš,	ty másh,	thou hast	or	ona má,	oňa má,	she has	or
máš	másh	thou hast	got	má	má	she has	got
	(<i>improperly</i> : you have)			ono má,	oňo má,	it has	or
máš másh	hast thou? (have you?)			má	má	it has	got
dollar, m.	dollär.	dollar		účet, m.	oo-chet	bill, account	
půl-dollar, m.	pool-d.	half-a-dollar		dluh, m.	dlooh	debt	
cent, m.	tsent	cent		na dluh	nă-dlooh	on trust, on credit	
peníze, pl.	peňeezĕ	money or cash		na účet	nă-oochet	on trust, on credit	
hotové	hőtové	cash		maso, n.	măsō	meat	

chleb,	m.	<i>khleb</i>	<i>khlebā</i>	bread	pivo,	n.	<i>peerō</i>	beer
chleba					víno,	n.	<i>veenō</i>	wine
sýr,	m.	<i>seer</i>		cheese	soda,	f.	<i>sodă</i>	soda
máslo,	n.	<i>máslō</i>		butter	voda,	f.	<i>vodă</i>	water

Note 1. Pronounce **má** like *ma'a*, the vulgar abbreviation of Mamma; and **mám** like *ma'am*, the vulgar abbreviation of Madam; it will assist in catching the true sound.

Note 2. In Bohemian, **mítí** *meefi* (to have), is not an auxiliary verb as in English, but always an independent verb.

Note 3. Soda is commonly used as an abbreviation of **sodovka**, soda-water. — In vulgar speech, the expression **jo**, *yō*, (from the German *ja*) is often heard instead of **ano**, *yes*.

Note 4. The long vowel **ú**, *oo*, which occurs only at the beginning of a word or syllable, is often changed into **ou**, *oū*, and so pronounced. Hence we frequently hear **oučet**, *oūchet*, instead of **účet**, *oochet*, and the like.

EXERCISES.

Já mám peníze, I have money.

Mám peníze, I have money.

Ty máš peníze, thou hast money
(sometimes *improperly* used for:
you have money. See Section 7,
Part I).

On má hotové, he has the cash.

Ona má chleba, she has bread (*or*
the bread).

Ona má dollar, she has a dollar.

Ona má cent, she has a cent.

Já mám účet, I have the bill.

Já mám dluh, I have a debt.

Ty máš dluh, thou hast (you have)
a debt.

On má dluh, he has a debt.

Já mám ten účet, I have the bill.

Mám ten účet? have I that bill?

Mám, I have.

Máš ten účet? hast thou (have
you) that bill?

Mám, I have.

Máš dollar? hast thou (have you)
a dollar?

Já mám půl-dollar, I have half-a-
dollar.

Máte peníze? have you money?

Má peníze? has he money?

Má on ty peníze? has he that money?

On má dollar, he has a dollar.

On má ten dollar, he has that dollar.

Ona má ty peníze, she has that money.

Ona má dluh, she has a debt.

Ona má zde účet, she has an account here.

Ona má ten účet, she has that bill.

Mám chleba, I have bread.

A já mám maso, and I have meat.

Máš chleba? hast thou (have you) bread?

Ano, mám; yes, I have.

Máš maso? hast thou (have you) meat?

Ne, no.

Mám chleba a maso, I have bread and meat.

A já mám pivo, and I have beer.

To pivo, that beer (*or* this beer).

To pivo a to víno, that beer and that wine.

Chleba za peníze} bread for cash
a pivo na dluh, } and beer on trust.

Maso za hotové} meat for cash and
a víno na účet} wine on account.

Má ten chleb} has he that bread
a to máslo? } and that butter?

Chleb i voda, bread and water.

Máslo a sýr, butter and cheese.

Note 5. *Gender of the nouns.* It will be observed that the nouns

dollar

účet

chleb

cent

dluh

sýr

are all of the masculine gender, and using the indicative pronoun we say: **ten dollar, ten cent, etc.**

Nouns terminating in consonants are mostly of the masculine gender.

The nouns **voda, soda,** are of the feminine gender: **ta voda, ta soda.**

Nouns terminating in a are always of the feminine gender.

But some feminine nouns also terminate in ě and in consonants; for instance **země,** earth (land, country); **kost,** bone; **dan,** tax.

The nouns **maso, máslo, pivo, víno,** are neutre: **to maso, to máslo,** etc.

Nouns terminating in o are always of the neutre gender.

But some neutre nouns have the termination e, ě or i; for instance **pole**, field; **doupě**, den; **osení**, crop.

Note 6. The noun **peníze** (money) is in the plural; the singular **peníz**, **peñeez**, means either "a coin" or "an amount".

LESSON II.

My	<i>me</i>	we	máme	<i>máme</i>	we	have
vy	<i>vy</i>	you	máte	<i>mátě</i>	you	have
oni	<i>oňi</i>	they	mají	<i>má-yee</i>	they	have

Note 1. In the third person plural **oni** *oňi* (they) is used in the masculine gender for animate creatures; **ony**, *oňy* (they) in the feminine gender, and in the masculine for inanimate things; **ona** *oňa* (they) in the neutre gender.

But in common discourse no such grammatical distinction is made and the masculine form **oni** is employed in all cases.

papír ,	m.	<i>păpeer</i>	paper	plac ,	m.	<i>plăts</i>	<i>ʃ</i>	place or
pero ,	n.	<i>perő</i>	pen	místo ,	n.	<i>meestő</i>	<i>t</i>	room
inkoust ,	m.	<i>inkoňst</i>	ink	stůl ,	m.	<i>stool</i>		table
vůz ,	m.	<i>vooz</i>	wagon	seno ,	n.	<i>sěnő</i>		hay
bíč ,	m.	<i>bitch</i>	whip	obilí ,	n.	<i>öbe-lee</i>		grain
pytel ,	m.	<i>pitěll</i>	sack	petah ,	m.	<i>patěl</i>		team
		čas ,	m.	<i>chăss</i>		time		
tam		<i>tăm</i>	there	dost		<i>dăst</i>		enough
jen, jenom ,		<i>yen, yenõm</i>	only	každý		<i>kažglee</i>		every one
				všichni ,		<i>fshikhñi</i>		

EXERCISES.

My máme papír, we have paper.
Máte pero? have you a pen?
Ano, mám; yes, I have.
Máte inkoust? have you ink?
Mám, I have.
Máte peníze? have you money?
Zde máte plac, here you have a place
Tam máte místo, there you have a place.
Zde má každý místo, here every one has a place.
Tam mají všichni místo, there they all have a place.

Zde máte stůl, here you have a table.
Máme vůz, we have a wagon.
On má bič, he has a whip.
Ona má pytel, she has a sack.
Mají potah, they have a team.
Oni mají obilí a seno, they have grain and hay.
Mají obilí a seno? have they grain and hay?
Mají jen seno, they have only hay.
Oni mají jenom pytel, they have only a sack.
Máme čas, we have time.

Note 2. As observed in **všichni** (all), when a word commences with the letter **v** followed by another *consonant*, the initial **v** takes the sharp sound of an **f**, whenever the facility of pronunciation naturally requires that modification of the sound.

LESSON III.

Kde	<i>gdě</i>	where	ne	<i>ně</i>	no, not
kdy	<i>gdy</i>	when	proč	<i>prěch</i>	why
kdo	<i>gdő</i>	who	proto že	<i>protő že</i>	because
ted'	<i>ted'</i>	now,	ani	<i>āní</i>	no, not one, not even, neither--nor
nyní	<i>nyñi</i>	at present			
nemám	<i>nemám</i>	I have not, I have not got	nemáme	<i>nemámě</i>	we have not
nemáš	<i>nemásh</i>	thou hast (you have) not	nemáte	<i>nemátě</i>	you have not
nemá	<i>nemá</i>	he (she, it) has not	nemají	<i>nemÿyee</i>	they have not

Note 1. In the words **kde**, **kdy**, **kdo** the hard consonant **k** is pronounced like **g** in *go*. In **nemám**, **nemáš**, etc., **nem** has exactly the same sound as in the word *nemesis*.

Note 2. Negation is always expressed by the prefix **ne**.

EXERCISES.

Nemám peníze, I have no money.

Nemáš peníze? hast thou no money?

Nemáte peníze? have you no money?

Ne; no.

Proč nemá peníze? why has he (she, it) no money?

Proto že nemá obilí, because he has no grain.

Nemáme účet, we have no account.

Nemáte hotové? have you no cash?

Nemáte ani dollar? have you not even a dollar?

Nemá ani cent? has he not a cent?

Nemám ani dollar, I have not a dollar.

Nemá ani cent, he has not a cent.

Nemají ani chleb, ani máslo; they have neither bread nor butter.

Nemají chleba, ani máslo, ani sýr; they have no bread, no butter and no cheese.

Nemáme papír, pero, ani inkoust; we have no paper, no pen and no ink.

Nemáte plac? have you no place?

Zde nemáme místo, we have no place here.

Tam nemáme místo, we have no place there.

Máš čas? hast thou time?

Máte čas? { have you time?

Máte kdy? { I have no time.

Nemám čas, { I have no time.

Ted nemáme čas, we have no time now.

Nyní nemají čas, they have no time now.

Kdy máte čas? when have you time?

Kdy máme čas? when have we time?

Nyní; now.

Kdo má peníze? who has money?

Kdo má čas? who has time?

Kde máš peníze? where hast thou the money?

Kde máte peníze? where have you the money?

Kdo nemá peníze? who has no money?

Kdo má dluh? who has a debt?

Kde máte dluh? where have you a debt?

Proč nemáte hotové? why have you not the cash?

LESSON IV.

Co	<i>tsō</i>	what	moc	<i>mōts</i>	{	much, many
co to	<i>tsō tō</i>	what is it (that)	mnoho	<i>mnohō</i>		
něco	<i>ñelsō</i>	something	tuze	<i>toozē</i>		
nic	<i>ñits</i>	nothing	jak	<i>yāk</i>		
pranic	<i>prāñits</i>	nothing at all	tak	<i>tāk</i>		so

EXERCISES.

Já mám něco, I have something.

Já nemám nic. Nemám nic. I have nothing.

Já mám dollar, I have a dollar.

Nemám ani dollar, I have not even a dollar.

Nemám pranic, I have nothing at all.

Nemáš nic, thou hast nothing.

Nemáte nic, you have nothing.

Oni nemají nic, they have nothing.

Co to máš? what is it thou hast got?

Máš něco ? hast thou anything ?

Co to máte? what have you? (what is it you have? what have you got?)

Máte něco ? have you anything?

Co to mají ? what have they got?

Nemáte nic ? have you nothing?

Nemáte pranic ? have you nothing at all?

Tak vy nemáte nic, so you have nothing.

Nic nemám, I have nothing.

Pranic nemáme, we have nothing at all.

Pranic nemají, they have nothing at all.

Ani víno, ani pivo nemají; they have neither wine, nor beer.

Mám moc, I have much.

Máme mnoho, we have much.

Ty nemáš moc, thou hast not much.

Vy nemáte moc, you have not much.

Oni nemají mnoho, they have not much.

Jak moc? Jak mnoho? how much?

Tuze moc. Tuze mnoho; very much.

Ne moc. Ne mnoho; not much.

Ne tuze moc, not very much.

Ne tuze mnoho, „ „ „ „

Ne tak tuze moc, not so very much.

Máš dost? hast thou enough?

Máte dost? have you enough?

Ano, mám dost; yes, I have enough.

Nemám dost, I have not enough.

To je tuze mnoho, co máte; that is very much, what you have got.

LESSON V.

někdo	ňegdő	sombody, some one	někde	ňegdě	somewhere, anywhere
nikdo	ňigdő	} nobody, no one	nikde	ňigdě	nowhere
žádný	žádnee	}	nikdy	ňigdi	never
vždy	vždi		stále	stále	stále
vždycky	vždi-tski*)	}	pořád*)	pořád*)	poršád
práce,	f.	prátsč	eo	dělat	tsř d'elat
		work			to do.

EXERCISES.

Máte něco? have you something?

Máte někde něco? have you got something, anywhere?

Nemáme nikde nic, we have got nothing, nowhere.

Kdo má něco? who has something?

Žádný nic, nobody (has) anything.

Nikdo nemá nic, nobody has anything.

Nemáme žádný nic; nobody (none of us) has anything.

Nikdo nemá tuze moc, nobody has too much.

Nemám nikde nic, I have not anything anywhere.

Ty nemáš nikdy nic, thou never hast anything.

Vy nemáte nikdy nic, you never have anything.

Mám vždy (dyky) něco, I always have something.

Máte vždycky něco, you always have something.

Pořád něco máte, you always have something.

Ty pořád něco máš, thou hast always something.

Stále něco máte, you always have something.

Neustále něco mají, they always have something.

Nemám pořád nic, I never have anything.

Stále nemá nic, he never has anything.

*) Colloquially **dycky**, *dit-ski*; **pořád**, *porád*.

Pořád nemají nic, they never have anything.

Proč nemáš nic? why hast thou nothing?

Proč nemáte nic? why have you nothing?

Proč nemáte něco? why have you not something?

Proto že nemám, because I have not.

Nemáš dollar? hast thou not a dollar?

Nemáte peníze? have you no money?

Proč nemáte peníze? why have you no money?

Já mám půl-dollar, I have half-a-dollar.

On má dollar a půl, he has a dollar and a half.

Nikdy nemám čas, I never have time.

Proč nemáte nikdy čas? why have you never time?

Proto že mám moc práce, because I have much work (much to do).

Proto že mám mnoho co dělat, because I have much to do.

Proto že mám tuze moc práce, because I have very much to do.

Jak moc? **Jak mnoho?** how much (many)?

Tak moc. **Tak mnoho.** So much (many).

Tak tuze moc, so very much.

Proč tak moc? why so much?

Stále tak tuze moc, always so very much.

Žádný nemá tak mnoho, nobody has so much.

Ne tuze moc, not too much.

Co to? what is that?

Nic, nothing.

Note 1. It will be observed that in Bohemian there is a double negation expressed in a negative sentence :

Já nemám nic; literally, I have not nothing, (*actually*, I have nothing).

Žádný nemá nic; nobody has not nothing, (nobody has anything).

Nemáte nikdy nic; you never have not nothing, (you never have anything).

Note 2. The order of the words in a sentence is much less rigid than in English, and may often be changed at pleasure or according to the stress we wish to lay upon a certain word, without changing the sense. For instance :

Žádný nemá mnoho; **mnoho nemá žádný;**
nemá žádný mnoho.

This is always one and the same sentence, the words fitting together at the pleasure of the speaker. But in English we are rigidly bound to a certain order: *nobody has much*. It would be impossible to transpose the words and say: *much has nobody; has nobody much*.

Of course, not every Bohemian sentence yields to transposition to the same extent, but nearly every one yields more or less. Let us take another illustration at random from the foregoing exercises:

Proto že mám moc práce, because *I have much work (much to do)* may be expressed as follows, without changing the sense:

proto že moc práce mám;
proto že práce moc mám;
proto že moc mám práce;
proto že práce mám moc.

In the English sentence no transposition is possible. What an immense help this freedom of transposition is, especially in poetry, will be apparent to the student.

LESSON VI.

Já jsem,	yá sěm	{	I am	ty jsi	ty si	{	thou art
jsem	sěm			jsi	si		
on jest,	ón yest;	{	on je,	ón yě;	jest,	{	he is
ona ,,	ónă ,, ;		ona ,,	ónă ,, ;	„ „		she is
ono ,,	óno ,, ;	{	ono ,,	óno ,, ;	„ „	{	it is
My jsme,	me smě		we are	vy jste	vee stě		you are
jsme	smě			jste	stě		
oni (ony, ona) jsou,	óñi (óny, ónă)		soù,				they are
jsou	soù						

Note 1. The verb **býti**, *beet'i* (to be) is the only auxiliary verb in the Bohemian language.

Jsem, jsi, jsme, jste, jsou, as shown above, are pronounced : *sem, si, smě, stě, soū*. In spelling the initial **j** is also frequently omitted, even by some of the best writers : **sem, si, sme, ste, sou**.

dobrý, á, é	<i>dobree</i>	good	také, taky	<i>tăke</i>	also, too;
špatný, á, é	<i>shpătnee</i>	bad	ale	<i>ălĕ</i>	but
drahý, á, é	<i>drăhee</i>	dear	zde, tu, tady	<i>zdĕ, tŭ, tăde</i> ,	here, present;
laciný, á, é	<i>lătsinee</i>	cheap	teda	<i>tĕdă</i>	well then;
čerstvý, á, é	<i>cherstvee,</i>	fresh	už, již	<i>ŭsh, yeež</i>	already
doma	<i>dōmă</i>	at home			

není nění (colloquially : **nejní, neyňi**), he (she, it) is not

pravda právdă true, truth

EXERCISES.

Jsem zde, I am here.
Zde jsem, here I am.
Já jsem už zde, I am here already.
Jsi zde? art thou here?
Už jsem tu, I am here already.
Jste už tady? are you already here?
Už jsme tady, we are here already.
My jsme už také zde, we are also
here already.
Jsou už zde? are they already here?

Ano, už jsou tu! Yes, they are here
already.
Teda jsou všichni zde; well, then
they are all here.
Proč jsme zde? why are we here?
(what are we here for?)
Proč vy jste tu? why are you here?
A proč on tady je? and why is he
present?
Proč jsou ty zde? why are those here?

Máme dobrý chleb, we have good
bread.
Je ten chleba dobrý? is this bread
good?

Ano, je dobrý; yes, it is good.
Ale je drahý, but it is dear.
My máme chleba doma, we have
bread at home.

Je čerstvý? is it fresh ?
Ano, ten chleba je čerstvý; yes, that
 bread is fresh.

Ale proč je tak drahý? but why is
 it so dear?

Není drahý, it is not dear.
Jest tuze drahý, it is very dear.

Vždyť (dty) není drahý; but it is
 not dear.

Ale vždyť není drahý; why, it ain't
 dear at all.

Je laciný, it is cheap.

Je dost laciný, it is cheap enough.

Je tuze laciný, it is very cheap.

Ten sýr je dobrý, that cheese is good.
Ta voda je dobrá, that water is good.

Ano, je tuze dobrá; yes, it is very
 good.

Je čerstvá, it is fresh.
To pivo je taky dobré, that beer is
 also good.

Ano, to je pravda; yes, that is true.
Je čerstvé, it is fresh.
Ale ta soda není dobrá, but this
 soda-water is not good.

To víno je špatné, that wine is bad.
Proč není to víno také tak dobré ?
 why is that wine not just as good?

My máme dobré víno, we have
 good wine.

Kde mají dobré pivo ? where do
 they have (keep) good beer?

Zde všude, here everywhere.

Je to pravda ? is it true ?

Ano, to je pravda; yes, that is true.

Zde všude mají dobré pivo, here
 they everywhere have good beer.

Ale víno nemají dobré, but their
 wine is not good (*literally:* but
 wine they have not good).

Proč nemáte dobré víno ? why
 have you not good wine ?

Note 2. It will be observed that the termination of the adjectives
dobrý, drahý etc. changes according to gender.

The masculine gender terminates in **ý**
 the feminine „ „ „ **á**
 the neutre „ „ „ **é**

dobrý sýr (masc.), *dobree seer,* good cheese;
dobrá voda (fem.), *dobrá vřdă,* good water;
dobré pivo (neut.) *dobré (eh) pivō,* good beer.

The feminine and neutre will always be indicated by placing á, é after the masculine adjective, as above.

In common conversation, however, the masculine termination is also used in the neutre gender: **dobrý pivo**; so that practically we hear only the two terminations ý and á: **dobrý, dobrá**.

Note 3. In ordinary speech the final ý of all adjectives in the masculine gender is pronounced *ey* (as in *they*), and such is in fact the prevalent custom in relation to the long letter ý, no matter where it occurs, as stated in the "Rules of Pronunciation". Hence we hear *dobrej*, *dráhey* in the masculine gender, instead of *dobree*, *dráhee*. This is the general colloquial usage, by no means confined to the uneducated classes. It has sprung up quite naturally because the sound of *ey* is not only easier, but also more euphonious than the sound of *ee*, in most such cases. Listening to the common conversation of Bohemians, the beginner will almost constantly hear the long ý pronounced *ey*.

LESSON VII.

Rád	rád	glad	nemíti rád	<i>nemeet'i rád</i> , (<i>nemeet rád</i>), to dislike
nerad	nerád	sorry	býti rád	<i>beet'i rád</i> , (<i>beet rád</i>), to be glad
rádi	rádi	{ (the same	býti nerad	<i>beet'i nerád</i> (<i>beet nerád</i>), to be sorry
neradi	neradi	{ in plural)		
míti rád	meet'i rád	(<i>meet rád</i>) to like		
<hr/>				
vždyť	vždiť	{ but, well, yet	veliký, á, é	<i>velikee</i> { large,
dyť (colloquial)	dyť	{	velký	<i>velkee</i> { great, big
tak	ták	so, such	malý, á, é	<i>mälee</i> small, little
také tak	{ táké ták	{ just so,	dłouhý, á, é	<i>dłouhhee</i> long
taky tak	{	{ just as	krátký, á, é	<i>krátkee</i> short
všude	fshudě	{ every-	pravý, á, é	<i>prävee</i> right, genuine
všade	fshădě	{	falešný, á, é	<i>fäleshnee</i> false
všudy	fshude	{ where	plný, á, é	<i>pl-nee</i> full
			prázny, á, é	<i>práznee</i> empty

i	e	oh, well	nebo	něbř	or
že	žě	that	jako	yěkř	as, like
že je	žě yě	that he (she, it) is	skoro	skorř	almost
zase	ză-sě		tomu	třmř	of it
zas	zăss	{ again	žádné	žádné	none
opět	op-yet	{	dlužen	dloožen	indebted

EXERCISES.

Já jsem rád, I am glad.

To sem rád! I am so glad!

Tuze rád! very glad!

Jsme tomu rádi, we are glad of it.

Tuze jsme tomu rádi, we are very glad of it.

Oni jsou tomu moc rádi, they are very glad of it.

Jsi rád nebo ne? art thou glad or not?

Jste tomu rádi? are you glad of it?

Máte to rád? (speaking to *one* person) do you like it?

Máte to rádi? (speaking to *more than one* person) do you like it?

Nemám to rád, I do not like it.

Nie to nemám rád, I do not like it at all.

Nemají to rádi. Oni to nemají rádi. They do not like it.

Jsem rád že mám peníze; I am glad (that) I have money.

Ten dollar je falešný; that dollar is false.

Není, je pravý; no, it is genuine.

Já mám vždycky dobré peníze, I have always good money.

Máte vůz plný? have you a full wagon (is your wagon full)?

Vůz není plný, the wagon is not full.

On je skoro prázny, it is almost empty.

On je rád že má prázny vůz; he is glad that he has an empty wagon.

Já mám dluh, I have a debt.

Mám jen malý dluh, I have only a small debt.

Ale ty máš (vy máte) velký dluh; but thou hast (you have) a big debt.

Mám také tak velký dluh jako vy; I have just as large a debt as you.

Vždyť máte peníze! but you have money!

I nemám žádné; oh, I have none (well, I have none).

On je všude dlužen, he is indebted everywhere (he owes everybody).

Už zase máme peníze, again we have (some) money.

Ale vy zas už nemáte peníze, but you again have no money.

Já sem tuze rád, že mám peníze! I am very glad that I have money!

On je tuze nerad, že je dlužen; he is very sorry, that he is in debt.

Proč je dlužen? why is he in debt?

Proto že nemá peníze, because he has no money.

Vždyť (dyť) on nemá skoro žádný dluh; well, he has almost no debt (is almost out of debt).

To je pravda, that is true.

On není dlužen, he is not in debt.

Mám velký dluh, nebo malý? have I a large debt or a small one?

Tu jest účet, here is the bill.

To není dlouhý účet, that is not a long bill.

Je jenom krátký, it is only short.

Ano, velmi krátký; yes, very short.

Máte jen tak malý účet? have you only such a small bill ?

Nemám rád velký účet, I do not like to have a large account.

Je velký dost, it is large enough

Nemám mnoho, I have not much.

To je nic, that is nothing.

To je jako nic, that is like nothing.

To že je nic ? this you call nothing (*literally:* that this is nothing)?

Oni jsou rádi, že tam není žádný dluh; they are glad, that there is not any debt there.

I je tam dluh, ale malý; well, there is a debt there, but a small one.

Pravda, jenom malý: true, only a small one.

Ano, tak to je; yes, it is so.

Ne, tak to není; no, it is not so.

Účet je pravý, the bill is right.

Ten účet není pravý, that bill is not right.

Je falešný, it is false.

A proč ? and why ?

Proto že je ! because it is !

LESSON VIII.

Nejsem	<i>neysem</i>	I am not	nejsme	<i>neysmě</i>	we are not
není	<i>neyñí</i>	he (she, it) is not	nejste	<i>neystě</i>	you are not
nejsi	<i>neysi</i>	thou are not	nejsou	<i>neysoù</i>	they are not

Note. Always pronounce *ney*, in the pronouncing column, like the English word *neigh*.

sám (masc.)	<i>sám</i>	}	alone;	dnes	<i>dness</i>	to-day
sama (fem.)	<i>sáma</i>		him-	právě	<i>práv'yě</i>	just;
samo (neut.)	<i>sámo</i>		self, herself	zrovna	<i>zrøvnā</i>	
samoten (tma, tno)		}	itself			this moment

otec	<i>otěts</i>	father	strýc	<i>streets, streyts</i>	uncle
matka	<i>mátkă</i>	mother	teta	<i>tětă</i>	aunt
bratr	<i>brä-tr</i>	brother	hoch	<i>hökh</i>	{ boy
sestra	<i>sest-ră</i>	sister	chlapec	<i>khläpets</i>	
syn	<i>syn</i>	son	holka	<i>holkă</i>	{ girl
deera	<i>tsěrč</i>	daughter	děvče, n.	<i>děfchë</i>	
		docela	<i>dotsělă</i>	all, quite	
		pryč	<i>pritch</i>	away, gone	
		i	<i>e</i>	both...and	

EXERCISES.

Nejsem rád, I am not glad.

Nejsem tomu rád, I do not like it.

Nejsi rád? art thou not glad?

Nejste rád? (addressing *one* person);
nejste rádi? (addressing *more than one* person;) are you not glad?

Jsem sám, I am alone?

Docela sám? all alone?

Ano, docela samoten; yes, all alone.

Není otec doma? is father not at home?

Ne, on není doma; no, he is not at home.

Není žádný doma? is nobody at home?

Matka, ani bratr, ani sestra nejsou doma; neither mother, nor brother or sister are at home.

Kde jsou? where are they?

Pryč; gone.

Všichni jsou pryč? are they all gone?

Ano, všichni; yes, all of them.

Je strýc doma? is uncle at home?

Nebo teta? or aunt?

Jsou taky pryč; they are gone, too.

Ten hoch je tu sám; the boy (this) that boy) is here alone.

Ta holka je pryč; the girl (that girl) is gone.

To děvče je doma samotno, that girl is at home alone.

Proč tu není bratr? why is the brother (her brother) not here?

On není doma, on je pryč; he is not at home, he is gone.

Deera není zde docela samotna, the daughter is not here all alone.

Matka je zde také; the mother (her mother) is here, too.

Je někdo doma? is somebody at home?

Není; no.

Dnes jsou všichni pryč, to-day they are all gone.

A kde jsou? and where are they?
Někde pryč, somewhere away.

Právě jsem tu sama (fem.); I am here just alone.

Proč jste tu samotna? (fem.) why are you here alone?

Protože otec i matka jsou pryč, because both father and mother are gone.

LESSON IX.

Byl jsem	<i>billy sěm</i>	{	I have been;	byli jsme	<i>billy smě</i>	{	we have been;
(byla, f.	<i>billā</i> , ,		I was	(byla, f.	<i>billā</i> , ,		we were
bylo, n.)	<i>billō</i> , ,	{		byla, n.)			
byl jsi	<i>billy si</i>		thou hast been;	byli jste	<i>billy stě</i>	{	you have been;
(abbr.) byl's,	<i>billss</i>	{					you were
, , byla's,	<i>billäss</i>		thou wast	byli(y,a)	<i>billy(y,ř)</i>	{	they have been;
byl (a, o)	<i>bill (ă, ŭ)</i>	{	he (she, it) has been;				they were
			he (she, it) was				

Nebyl jsem	<i>ně-bill</i>	{	I have not been;	Nebyli jsme	<i>ně-billy</i>	{	we have not been;
	<i>sěm</i>		I was not		<i>smě</i>		we were not etc.
Kde jsem byl?	<i>gdě</i>	{	where have I been?	Kde jsme byli?	<i>gdě</i>	{	where have we been?
	<i>sěm bill</i>		where was I?		<i>smě billy?</i>		where were we? etc.

Míti, to have: **mám,** I have;

měl jsem,	<i>m'yell sěm,</i>	{	I have had; I had;
měla jsem, f.	<i>m'yellä sěm,</i>		
měli jsme,	<i>m'yelli smě,</i>		we have had; we had;
			and so forth, using měl, měli in place of byl, byli.

Note 1. There is in Bohemian no such formal difference between the perfect and imperfect tense as in English: *I have been; I was.*

Note 2. There is a distinction of gender in the past tense, which does not exist in English. **I have been, I was,** is used in all cases. In Bohemian however, when a man speaks, he says: **byl jsem, bill sěm;** when a woman speaks, she says: **byla jsem, billá sěm.** And this rule covers every verb in the language. For instance, a man says:

jedl jsem,	yěd'l sěm,	I ate; I have eaten;
sedl jsem,	sěd'l sem,	I sat down; I have sat down;
šel jsem,	shell sem,	I went; I have gone;
šil jsem,	shill sem,	I sewed; I have sewn;
viděl jsem,	viď'el sem,	I saw; I have seen.

A woman says:

jedla jsem,	yědlá sěm;	šla jsem,	shlá sem;
sedla jsem,	sědlá sem;	šila jsem,	shillá sem;
	viďela jsem,	viď'elá sem.	

In the third person of the past tense we say in English : *he was, he has been; she was, she has been; it was, it has been.*

In Bohemian we must say : **on byl, ona byla, ono bylo**, according to gender. This rule holds good in the conjugation of every verb.

For instance :

Jedl, yed'l, he has eaten; he ate;	šel, shell, he has gone; he went;
jedla, yedlá, she has eaten; she ate;	šla, shlá, she has gone; she went;
jetlo, yedlō, it has eaten; it ate;	šlo, shlō, it has gone; it went.

In the plural number the distinction of sex is simply grammatical and perfectly useless; in the ordinary spoken language there is none whatever. In grammatical theory

byli jsme,	byli jste,	byli,	is masculine;
byly jsme,	byly jste,	byly,	is feminine;
byla jsme,	byla jste,	byla,	is neutre.

But in the living tongue, or at least in ordinary conversation, we hear in all three genders :

byli jsme, *billi smě;* **byli jste,** *billi stě;* **byli,** *billi.*

There is no difference of pronunciation between **byli** and **byly**; and this orthographical distinction as well as the form **byla** in the third person neutre are only maintained by the pedantry of theoretical grammarians, opposing changes which a living tongue has actually undergone and which always tend in the direction of practical simplicity. That artificial and useless distinction of gender is found in writing, but not in conversation.

Note 3. The form of the second person plural as given above (**byli jste, billi stě**) is of course used when several persons are meant or spoken to; but when employing **vy, you**, in addressing a single person, we leave the main verb in the singular, whereas in English it is put in the plural, as if several persons were addressed : **byl jste, bill stě**, you have been, you were, (meaning only one person). And so in all Bohemian verbs ; for instance :

jedli jste, *yed'li stě*, you have eaten, you ate, (meaning several persons);
jedl jste, *yed'l stě*, you have eaten, you ate, (meaning one person, addressed **vy, you**).

Ráno	<i>ránč</i>	in the morning	včera	<i>fcherā</i>	yesterday
v poledne	<i>fpoledně</i>	at noon	včera večer	<i>fcherā včher,</i>	last even-
večer	<i>včher</i>	in the evening			ing; last night
venku	<i>venkū</i>	outside, out of doors	zima	<i>zimā</i>	cold
			oba	<i>obā</i>	both

EXERCISES.

Byl jsem doma, I was at home.
Byl jsem stále doma, I have been
at home all the time.

Byl jsi doma ? (abbreviated : **byl's doma?**) hast thou been at home?
wast thou at home?

Ne, nebyl jsem doma; no, I was not at home.

Ale bratr byl doma, but brother was at home.

Kde jsi byl? (*abbreviated: kde's byl? gděs bil?*) where hast thou been? where wast thou?

Kde jste byl? Kde jste byla? (fem.) (*when addressing one person*) where have you been? where were you?

Byl jsem pryč, I was away.

Byla jsem pryč (fem.) I was away.

Byli jsme právě pryč, we were just gone.

Byli jsme všichni pryč, we were all gone; we have all been away.

Kde byl otec? where was father?

Byl venku, he was out of doors.

A matka? and mother?

Matka byla také pryč, mother also was gone.

Oba byli pryč, they were both gone.

Žádný nebyl doma, nobody was at home (*literally: nobody was not at home*).

Všichni byli pryč, all were gone.

Ráno byli jsme doma a v poledne pryč; in the morning we were at home and at noon we were gone.

Byli jste večer doma? (*addressing one person:* **byl jste večer doma?**) Were you at home in the evening?

Nebyli jsme doma, we were not at home.

Nebyl jsem doma, I was not at home.

Proč jsi nebyl doma? why wast thou not at home?

Proč jste nebyl doma? why were you not at home?

Kdo byl doma? who was at home?

Bratr a sestra byli oba doma, brother and sister were both at home.

Proč nebyli venku? why were they not out of doors?

Protože bylo zima, because it was cold.

Nebylo zima včera večer, it was not cold last evening.

Že nebylo? wasn't it?

Ba bylo! oh yes, it was!

Včera bylo zima, yesterday it was cold.

Nebylo tuze, it was not very.

LESSON X.

It will doubtless be self-evident to the student, that the past tense in the preceding lesson may at pleasure be connected with the personal pronoun, as is the rule in English.

(Instead of :)

(we can say :)

byl jsem,	I have been	já jsem byl,	yá sěm bill
byl jsi,	thou hast been	ty jsi byl,	ty si bill (abbrev. ty's byl, tyss bill)
byl, a, o,	he (she, it) has been	on (ona, ono) byl, a, o,	řn bill
byli jsme,	we have been	my jsme byli,	me smě billy
byli jste,	you have been	vy jste byli,	vee stě billy
byli, y, a,	he (she, it) has been	oni byli,	řní billy

The sense is not changed thereby, only more emphasis is laid on the subject.

Then again, in the *first* person of the second form, both singular and plural, the auxiliary **jsem, jsme** is commonly left out.

(Instead of :)

(we say :)

já jsem byl,	yá sěm bill	já byl,	I have been; I was;
my jsme byli,	me smě billy	my byli,	we have been; we were;
já jsem měl,	yá sěm m'yell	já měl,	I have had; I had;
my jsme měli,	me smě m'yelli	my měli,	we have had; we had;
já jsem šel,	yá sěm shell	já šel,	I have gone; I went;
my jsme šli,	me smě shli	my šli,	we have gone; we went.

u mě	<i>ūm'ye</i>	by me,	with me,	at my house (or place)
u tebe	<i>ūtēbē</i>	by thee,	with thee,	at thy house
u něho	<i>ūñehō</i>	{ by him,	with him,	at his house
u něj	<i>ūñey</i>			
u ní	<i>ūñee</i>	by her,	with her,	at her house
u nás	<i>ūnáss</i>	by us,	with us,	at our house
u vás	<i>ūváss</i>	by you,	with you,	at your house
u nich	<i>ūñikh</i>	by them,	with them,	at their house
rodiče	<i>rođichē</i>	parents	celý den	<i>tsělee den</i>
domu	<i>dōmū</i>	home	až	<i>ăsh</i>
nic než	<i>nits něsh</i>	nothing but	pak	<i>păk</i>

EXERCISES.

Já byl doma, I was at home.
Byl jsem doma celý den, I was at home all day.

Byl jsem pořád doma, I have been at home all the time.

Byl otec doma? was father at home?

Ano, byl; yes, he was.

A kdy byl doma? and when was he at home?

Skoro celý den, nearly all day.

Já šel domu ráno, I went home in the morning

Kdy sestra šla domu? when did sister go home?

Ona šla domu večer, she went home in the evening.

Nešla domu až večer, she didn't go home till evening.

Byl strýc doma? was uncle at home?

Nebyl; he was not.

Byl's u něho? wast thou at his house?

Byl jste u něho? were you at his house?

Ano, byl jsem tam; yes, I was there.

Sestra byla zde, sister was here.

Byla u mě, she was at my house.

Byla také u vás? was she also at your house?

Byla tam v poledne, she was there at noon.

Teta u nás nebyla, aunt was not at our house.

Ale její hoch tam byl, but her boy was there.

My byli včera u ní, we were at her house yesterday.

Rodiče byli včera ráno doma, our parents were at home yesterday morning.

Pak šli pryč, then they went away.

A my jsme šli taky pryč, and we went away, too.

Byl někdo u nich? was anybody at their house?

Žádný u nich nebyl, nobody was at their house.

V poledne někdo tam byl, ale šel pryč; at noon somebody was there, but went away.

Já měl dnes maso a pivo, I had today meat and beer.

Sestra měla maso a chleba, sister had meat and bread.

Ten malý hoch neměl nic, that little boy had nothing.

Proč neměl nic? why did he have nothing?

Neměli jsme nic pro něho, we had nothing for him.

Byl zde ten chlapec? was that boy here?

Byl tu, he was here.
Co měl? what did he have?
Nic neměl; he had nothing.
Byl zde pořád? has he been here all the time?
Ano, byl tu stále; yes, he has been here all the time.
Kdy šel pryč? when did he go away?
Šel večer, he went in the evening.
Šel sám? did he go alone?

Docela sám, all alone.
Měli jste dnes víno? have you had wine to-day?
Ne, my jsme měli pivo; no, we had beer.
A co oni měli? and what did they have?
Také pivo; beer, also.
My neměli nic, we had nothing.
Ale praní! not a thing!

LESSON XI.

Budu	<i>būdū</i>	{	I shall be	budeme	<i>būdemē</i>	{	we shall be
		,	, will ,	budem	<i>būdem</i>	,	, will ,
budeš	<i>būdesh</i> ,	thou will be		budete	<i>būdětē</i>		you will be
bude	<i>būdē</i>	he (she, it) will be		budou	<i>būdoū</i>		they will be
			nebudu <i>nēbūdū</i> ,	I shall (will) not be; etc.			

neb	<i>neb</i>	{	or	snad	<i>snād</i>		perhaps
nebo	<i>nēbō</i>			sotva	<i>sōtvā</i>		hardly
brzo	<i>br-zō</i>	{	soon	zítra	<i>zeetrā</i>	{	
brzy	<i>br-ze</i>			zejtra	<i>zeytrā</i>		to-morrow
hned	<i>hned</i>	presently, right away		letos	<i>letōs</i>		this year
až	<i>ăsh</i>	{	when	dobře	<i>dobrshē</i>	{	well, right, it is
když	<i>gdiž</i>						well, all right.

dělati	<i>dělā-ti</i>	to do	prodávati	<i>prodávā-ti</i>	to sell; to be
platiti	<i>plätfi-ti</i>	to pay			selling;
kupovati	<i>küpovā-ti</i>	to buy; to be buying;	chtiti	<i>khṭee-ti</i>	to want.

Note 1. English verbs in the infinitive have various endings : *to do, to pay, to sell, to speak, to converse, to understand, etc.*

Bohemian verbs invariably end in **ti**. However, in ordinary discourse the final **i** is nearly always dropped, and very often it is also omitted in spelling; the preceding **t** in such cases should indeed be written and pronounced **f**; but it generally retains its common *hard* sound:

dělat	dělāt	to do	kupovat	küpovāt	to buy
platit	platīt	to pay	prodávat	prodávāt	to sell
	chtít	khťeet			to want.

Note 2. **Budu, budeš**, etc., connected as an auxiliary with the infinitive of another verb forms the future tense of this verb :

budu dělati	I shall (will) do	bude kupovat	he will buy
,, dělat		budeme prodávat	we shall (will) buy
budeš platit	thou wilt pay	budete chtít	you will want
		budou chtíti	they will want.

Zde jsem, here I am.

Proč tu bude? why will he be here?

Už jste tu? are you here already?

Kupovat obilí a seno, to buy grain
and hay.

Je zde taky bratr? is brother also

Budete mít letos víno? will you have
wine this year?

here?

Nebudeme mít žádné víno, we shall
have no wine.

Není, ale bude tu hned; he is not,

Co budou u vás prodávat? what will
they sell at your place?

but he will be here presently.

Nebudou nic prodávat, they will
sell nothing.

To bude dobré, that will be all right.

Kdy zde bude otec? when will father
be here ?

Dnes sotva, hardly to-day.

Snad zejtra, perhaps to-morrow.

Máte čerstvé*) máslo? have you
fresh butter?

Nemáme žádné, we have none.

Dnes nemáme, to-day we have not.

Ale budeme mít zejtra, but we shall
have (some) to-morrow.

*) See lesson VI, note 2.

Co budete dělat dnes večer? what will you do this evening?

Nebudu dělat nic, I shall do nothing.

A proč? and why?

Nemám co dělat, I have nothing to do.

Až bude zase práce, budu dělat; when there will be work again, I shall work.

LESSON XII.

Míti	<i>meet̄i</i>	{	to have	chtíti	<i>kht̄eet̄i</i>	{	to want
mít¹⁾	<i>meet</i>			chtít¹⁾	<i>kht̄eet</i>		
chci	<i>khtsi</i>		I want	cheeme	<i>khts̄em̄e</i>		we want
chceš	<i>khts̄esh</i>		thou wantst	cheete	<i>khts̄et̄e</i>		you want
chce	<i>khts̄e</i>		he wants	chtějí	<i>kht̄e-yee</i>		they want
chtěl jsem²⁾	<i>kht̄el s̄em</i>		I wanted	chtěli jsme	<i>kht̄eli sm̄e</i>		we wanted
budu chtíti³⁾	<i>būdū kht̄eet̄i</i>	{					I shall (will) want
,, chtít	<i>,, kht̄eet</i>						
budeme chtíti	<i>būděm̄e kht̄eet̄i</i>	{					we shall (will) want.
,, chtít	<i>,, kht̄eet</i>						

Note 1. Irregular verbs in the Bohemian language are far less numerous than in English. There is not a full dozen of them, whereas in English we find nearly two hundred. On the other hand, regular verbs have only one conjugation in English, whereas in Bohemian there are several conjugations, as we shall see in due time.

Chtíti and **míti** are irregular verbs.

1) See Lesson XI, Note 1.

2) See Lesson IX. **Chtíti** simply takes the place of **byl**.

3) See Lesson XI, Note 2.

Od	<i>ođ</i>	since, from	nůž	<i>noož</i>	knife
pro	<i>prō</i>	for	vidlička	<i>vidlichkă</i>	fork
více	<i>veetsě</i>	more	jídlo	<i>yeedlō</i>	someting to eat; victuals; meal
ještě	<i>yesh-te</i>	{ still, more, another	jíst (jísti)	<i>yeest</i>	to eat
trochu	<i>trokhū</i>	some, somewhat	krájet (i)	<i>kráyet</i>	to cut
spolu	<i>spölä</i>	together	mluvit (i)	<i>mlüvit</i>	to speak
dłouho	<i>dložhō</i>	long	dát (i)	<i>dát</i>	to give
už dávno	<i>úsh dávnō</i>	{ already long (a long time already)	dejte mi	<i>deytě me</i>	give me
na prodej	<i>nū prodey</i>	for sale	kůň	<i>küñ</i>	horse
nový, á, é	<i>növée</i>	new	koně*	<i>koñe</i>	{ of the horse; for the "
starý, á, é,	<i>stääree</i>	old	ani	<i>äñi</i>	{ not one; not even; neither
dříví	<i>drshee-vee</i>	wood	asi	<i>ässi</i>	about, probably
stavivo	<i>stäävivō</i>	lumber	se, s	<i>së</i>	with
mítí hlad	<i>meet'i hlăd</i>	to be hungry	opravdu	<i>oprävdū</i>	truly, really
			muz	<i>moož</i>	man

EXERCISES.

Máte peníze? have you money?
Mám asi dollar, I have about a dol-

lar.

Nic více? nothing more?

Ani cent, not a cent.

Co s dollarem? what (can you do)
with a dollar?

Aha, zde je ještě půl dollaru; ah,
here is half a dollar more.

Bude to dost? will that be enough?

Sotva, hardly.

Ani to nebude dost, even that will
not be enough.

Já mám hlad (literally: *I have
hunger*), I am hungry.

Chci něco jíst, I want something
to eat.

Máte nějaké jídlo? have you some-
thing to eat?

Tu máte maso, here you have
(some) meat.

Dejte mi nůž, give me a knife.

Zde máte nůž a tu je vidlička; here
you have a knife and here is a fork.

Nožem můžete dobré krájet, with
the knife you can cut well.

Tu je kůň a vůz, here is a horse
and a wagon.

Vy máte zde koně, you have a horse
here.

*) The plural of the noun **kůň** is also **koně**, *koñe* (the horses).

Ano, jsem tu s koněm; yes, I am here with the horse.

To je dobrý kůň, that is a good horse.

Tuze dobrý; a také není na prodej; very good; and he is not for sale.

Máte nový vůz? have you a new wagon?

I ne; to je starý vůz; o no; that is an old wagon.

Ale jako nový; but (it looks) like a new one.

Opravdu? really?

Co máte na voze (ve voze)? what have you got in the wagon?

Dříví, wood.

Stavivo, lumber.

Trochu obilí je tam, some grain is in there.

Budete něco kupovati? will you buy something (will you make some purchases)?

Koně pro syna a vůz pro strýce, a horse for my son and a wagon for my uncle.

Checi dátí synovi dobrý potah, I want to give my son a good team.

Chtěl jsem to už dávno; I wanted (to do) it long ago.

On je zde se strýcem, he is here with uncle.

Jsou tu spolu, they are here together.

Jak dleuhu jsou tu? how long are they here?

Od večera, since evening.

A jak dávno vy jste tu? and how long are you here?

Od poledne, since noon.

Tam ten muž má koně na prodej, that man there has a horse to sell.

Checete vidět toho (třetího) muže? do you want to see that man.

Checi mluvit s tím (střímem) mužem; I want to speak with that man.

Je na koni, he is on horseback.

Dobrě že je tu s tím koněm; it is well he is here with that horse.

Je to velký kůň; it is a big horse.

Note 2. In the English language the noun remains nearly unchanged in all its relations, there being only a slight change in the genitive or possessive case: *brother*, *brother's* (of the brother); but this form of the possessive case is being more and more limited. The relations of one person or thing to another are expressed by separate words, called prepositions: *of a brother*; *to a brother*; *with a brother*.

In Bohemian these relations are expressed by changes in the termination of the noun, which process is called declension: **bratr**, *brother*; —**bratra**, *of a brother*; **bratru**, *to a brother*; **bratrem**, *with a brother*.

This is a heavy encumbrance which the Bohemian language shares with the German and Latin. The declension of the nouns is followed by that of the adjectives joined to the nouns, which are subject to corresponding changes in their terminations. Pronouns also have declensions, and these continue to exist even in the English tongue.

Note 3. The declension of Bohemian nouns varies according to their gender and the termination of their nominative; there is, besides, a slight variation between animate and inanimate nouns of the masculine gender.

The following table will bring before the student's eyes the different changes of the termination of Bohemian masculine nouns, in the singular, omitting the vocative case. A glance over the same now and then may assist him to become more rapidly familiar with the different endings and their signification in English; but only frequent use in common sentences during the further progress of these lessons will make them handy to him.

Inanimate nouns:

Dollar, výz *dolár*, *vooz* the dollar, the wagon;
dollaru, *vozu* *doláru*, *vózú* of the dollar, the dollar's; of the wagon, the wagon's; (**v dollaru**, in the dollar; **ve voze**, in the wagon; etc.)
dollarem, *vozem* *dolárem*, *vózem* (or **s dollarem**, **s vozem**), with the dollar, with the wagon.

Animate nouns:

Syn, muž *syn*, *moož* the son, the man;
syna, muže *synă*, *moožé* { of the son, the son's; of the man,
synu, muži *synă*, *mooži* { the man's; also in the *accusative*:
—ovi, —ovi *synövi*, *moožövi* { the son, the man;
synem, mužem *synem*, *moožem* (or **se synem**, **s mužem**), with the son, with the man.

Note 4. It will be observed that the letter **ň** in the nominative case of a monosyllable changes into **o** in the inflected cases :

vňúz,	the wagon;	vozu, -e	of the wagon;
kňúm,	the horse;	koně,	of the horse;
nňúž,	the knife;	nože,	of the knife;

Nňúž and similar nouns (masculine inanimate and ending in a soft consonant) are declined just like **muž**; only in the dative and locative case we cannot use the long form like **mužovi**, **v mužovi** (to the man, in the man), but must always employ only the short form: **noži**, **v noži**, **nřoži**, **vnřoži** (to the knife, in the knife); and the accusative agrees with the nominative: **nňúž—nňúž**.

Note 5. Prepositions consisting of a single consonant (**v**, **s**, **k**, simply abbreviations of **ve**, **se**, **ke**, — in, with, to) are always joined in pronunciation to the succeeding syllable; hence we write: **v synu**, **s koněm**; and pronounce: *vsynū* (or *fsinū*), *skoňem*; in the son, with the horse.

It may hardly be necessary to mention that the locative case does not always appear with the preposition **v** or **ve**, but employs also different other prepositions. For instance: **ve voze**, in the wagon; **na voze**, on the wagon; **o voze**, about the wagon.

LESSON XIII.

Museti	<i>mřseti</i> *		jíti	<i>yeeťi</i>		
	<i>mřset</i>	must, to have to		<i>yeeť</i>		to go, to come.
musiti	<i>mřsiti</i>					
musím	<i>mřseem</i>	I must	jdu	<i>dř</i>		I go
musíš	<i>mřseesh</i>	thou must	jdeš	<i>děsh</i>		thou goest
musí	<i>mřsee</i>	he must	jde	<i>dě</i>		he goes
musíme	<i>mřseemě</i>	we must	jdemě	<i>děmě</i>		we go
musíte	<i>mřseetě</i>	you must	jdetě	<i>dětě</i>		you go
musí	<i>mřsee</i>	they must	jdou	<i>doř</i>		they go
musejí	<i>mřsě-yee</i>					

*) The letter **s** has the same sharp sound as in *must*.

muset platiti	to have to pay	šel	shell	he has gone;
budu museti <i>břdū mřset</i> , I shall	have to; I shall			he went
	be obliged.			
musej jsem <i>mřsell sěm</i>	I was oblige	přjdu	<i>přydř</i>	(colloquially <i>přdř</i>) I shall go
musej <i>mřsell</i>	he was obliged			
muset jítí	to have to go, to be obliged to go	přjdeš, přjde, přjdeme, přjdete, přjdou; <i>přydesh, přydeč, přy- děmě, přydětě, přydoú;</i> (collo- quially: <i>přdesh, přdě, přděmě, přdětě, přdoú</i>);		
šel jsem <i>shell sěm</i>	I have gone; I went	jdi	đi	go (thou)
		jděte	đetě	go (you)

Note 1. All Bohemian verbs in the infinitive (as stated in Lesson XI, Note 1) end in **ti**, which becomes a simple **t** in ordinary discourse: **dělati**, to do, to make; **platiti**, to pay; **kupovati**, to buy, to be buying; **prodávati**, to sell, to be selling; **museti**, must.

Note 2. Leaving out **ti** and putting **I** in its place (**la** for the feminine, **lo** for the neutre gendre), we get the past tense of every regular verb, using the auxiliary **jsem**, **jsi** in the first and second person singular, **jsme**, **jste** in first and second person plural, and changing **I** into **li** in the *plural* (feminine **ly**, neutre **la**, — of no account in ordinary conversation); in the third person singular and plural no auxiliary is used:

dělal	<i>dělūl</i>	he made;	he has made;
dělali	<i>dělāli</i>	they made;	they have made;
dělal jsem	<i>dělūl sem</i>	I made;	I have made;
dělal jsi	<i>dělūl si</i>	thou madest;	thou hast made;
dělali jsme	<i>dělāli smě</i>	we made;	we have made;
dělali jste	<i>dělāli stě</i>	you made;	you have made;
platil	<i>plřtūl</i>	he paid;	he has paid;
kupoval	<i>křpovāl</i>	he was buying;	he has been buying;
prodával	<i>prodávāl</i>	he was selling;	he has been selling;
musej	<i>mřsell</i>	he had to;	he was obliged.

Ho	<i>hō</i>	him, it; of it;	žena	<i>ženā</i>	woman
ven	<i>ven</i>	out	služka	<i>slūshkā</i>	servant girl
venku	<i>venkū</i>	out of doors	země, f.	<i>zemyē</i>	land, earth
prý	<i>pree</i>	they say;	snidaně, f.	<i>sñeedañe</i>	breakfast
(colloq. prej)	<i>prey</i>	it is said	oběd, m.	<i>ob yēd</i>	dinner
náš, m.	<i>násh</i>	our, ours	večeře, f.	<i>věchershē</i>	supper
naší, f.	<i>náshee</i>	of our	kost, f.	<i>kōst</i>	bone
dobře	<i>dobrshē</i>	well; right	kus, m.	<i>küss</i>	piece
tuze dobré	<i>toozé dobrshē</i>	very well	oděv, m.	<i>oděf</i>	clothing
časně	<i>chássnē</i>	early	oblek, m.	<i>oblék</i>	suit of clothes
nějaký, á, é	<i>ñeyákee</i>	some	kabát, m.	<i>käbát</i>	oat
(colloq. níakej)	<i>ñákey</i>	{	kalhoty, pl.	<i>kälhöty</i>	pants
pohromadě	<i>pō-hromáðe</i>	{ together	vesta, f.	<i>vestā</i>	vest
najednou	<i>náyednoú</i>	{ at once	klobouk, m.	<i>klobouk</i>	hat
dál	<i>dál</i>	in, farther	boty, pl.	<i>botty</i>	boots
at	<i>áť</i>	{ let him be, let	škoda	<i>shkõdā</i>	pity
		her be, let it be	hotov, a, o	<i>hōtof</i>	ready
po	<i>pō</i>	after	ke	<i>kē</i>	to
do	<i>dō</i>	to, before			

podívat se	<i>pod'evát se</i>	to take a look
spáti	<i>spát'i, spát</i>	to sleep
státi	<i>státi, stát</i>	to stand
čekati	<i>chekáti, chekát</i>	to wait
viděti	<i>vid'et'i, vid'et</i>	to see
dívati se	<i>d'evát sě</i>	to look, to be looking

dělati	<i>d'eláti, d'elát</i>	to make
myslím	<i>mysleem</i>	I think
koupiti	<i>koüpít</i>	to buy
kupovati	<i>külpövát</i>	to be buying
prodati	<i>prodät</i>	to sell
prodávati	<i>prodávát</i>	to be selling

EXERCISES.

Musím jít ven. I must go out.
Půjdu se podívat ven. I shall go and look out.
Je někdo venku? Is somebody out of doors?

Kdo je venku? Who is out of doors?
Nějaká žena je tam. Some woman is there.
Co chee ta žena? What does that woman want?

Chee viděti deeru. She wants to see (her) daughter.

Je to matka naší služky. It is the mother of our servant girl.

Ať jde dál. Let her come in.

Proč nejde dál? Why doesn't she come in?

Chee něco jíst? Does she want anything to eat?

Dejte ženě jíst a pít. Give that woman to eat and to drink.

Maso na kosti a pivo. Meat on the bone and beer.

Až bude oběd. When dinner is (shall be) ready.

Bude zde spátí? Will she sleep here?

Já myslím. I think so.

Dobře teda. Very well, then.

Musí spátí se služkou. She must sleep with the servant girl.

Chei něco koupit. I want to buy something.

Chei si něco koupit. I want to buy me something.

Co si checete koupit? What do you want to buy (yourself)?

Myslím že nějaký oděv. I think (that) some clothing.

Už jdu. I am going already.

Jdete taky? Are you going, too?

My taky jdeme. We are going, too.

Oni všichni jdou. They are all going.

Holka má mnoho práce. The girl has much to do.

Bude sotva do večera*) hotova. She will hardly be done before evening.

Myslím že bude s prací hotova. I think she will be done with the work.

Po večeři nemusí dělat nic. After supper she need not do anything.

Ať je večeře brzy hotova. Let supper be soon ready.

Bude zde ta ženská ke snídani? Will that woman be here to breakfast?

Myslím že bude. I think (that) she will.

Budeme míti snídani brzy ráno. We shall have breakfast soon in the morning.

Ano, časně ráno. Yes, early in the morning.

Kabát, kalhoty, vestu, klobouk. A coat, (a pair of) pants, a vest, a hat.

Snad také boty. Perhaps also (a pair of) boots.

Cely oblek. A whole suit.

Pravda, bude dobré koupit oblek. True, it will be well to buy a suit.

Myslím že sestra půjde taky. I think that sister will go, too.

Ano, půjde s tetou. Yes, she will go with auntie.

*) **Do večera**, instead of **do večeru**. — **Večer** has the same endings in the singular as the animate noun **syn**, excepting **-ovi** in the dative and locative.

Půjdeme všichni polromadě. We will all go together.

Jdi se podívat zdali jsou hotovi. Go (thou) and see if they are ready.

My zde nebudeme stát a čekat. We shall not stand here and wait.

Jděte se tam zase podívat. Go (you) there and see again.

Už jdou; tu jsou. They are coming already; here they are.

Půjdou všichni najednou. They will all go together.

Ten dům chci prodat. That house I want to sell.

A proč to? And why?

Je malý; musím ho prodat. It is small, I must sell it.

Myslím že je trochu malý. I think it is somewhat small.

Ten starý dům byl dost velký. The old house was large enough.

Škoda že museli sme ho prodat. It is a pity we had to sell it.

Náš nový dům nebude na prodej.

Our new house will not be for sale.

Není dobré prodávat nový dům. It is not well to sell (to be selling) a new house.

Budeme mít u domu kus země. We shall have by (our) house a piece of land.

Note 3. The changes of endings of feminine nouns, excepting the vocative case, are shown in the following exhibit:

1. **Žena** *ženă*, the woman;
 ženy *ženy*, of the woman;
 ženu *ženă*, the woman, (accusative);
 ženě *ženē*, to the woman, (**v ženě**, in the woman, etc.);
 ženou *ženoň*, (or **se ženou**) with the woman.

2. **Země** *zemyě* the earth, of the earth;
 zemi *zemi*, to the earth, (**v zemi**, in the earth, etc.);
 zemí *zemeē*, (or **se zemí**) with the earth.

3. **Kost** *kost*, the bone;
 kosti *kost̄i*, of the bone, to the bone, (**v kosti** *f kost̄i*, in the bone, etc.);
 kostí *kost̄ee* (or **s kostí** *skost̄ee*) with the bone.

Nouns ending in e (like růže *roože*, the rose) agree with země.

Nouns ending in **ka** change the hard consonant **k** into **c** *ts*, when the final **a** changes into **e**:

matka, **služka,** *mätkä*, *slüşka*, the mother, the servant girl
matee, **služee,** *mätsë*, *slüşhtsë*, to the mother, to the servant girl

Nouns ending in **st**, like **kost'**, are **ALWAYS** of the feminine gender.

Note 4. The verb *jiti* is irregular. Its future tense is formed by the prefix *pū*, and not by the auxiliary *budu*. The formation of the future by means of prefixes occurs quite often, as will be seen hereafter.

Note 5. The verbs **prodávati**, **kupovati** (to be selling, to be buying) are in fact reiterative forms of **prodati** (to sell, to make a sale) and **koupiti** (to buy, to make a purchase).

Common indefinite verbs, denoting a continuous action, may, as a rule, be changed into REITERATIVES, denoting a repeated action, by inserting **va** before the final syllable **ti** (or the final **t**) and lengthening the preceding vowel, if it be short. For instance:

dělati,	to make;	dělávati, <i>dělāvātī</i> or <i>dělāvāt</i> ,	to use to make, to be in the habit of making;
platiti,	to pay;	platívati, <i>plātēvāt</i> ,	to use to pay;
spáti,	to sleep;	spávati, <i>spāvāt</i> ,	to use to sleep;
jísti,	to eat;	jídávati, <i>yeedāvāt</i> ,	to use to eat; (irregular verb).

Note 6. In English, verbs are sometimes formed by prefixes joined to other verbs, to vary their signification; for instance:

to deck — to bedeck | to judge — to prejudge | to sell — to undersell
to grow — to outgrow | to stand — to withstand | to turn — to overturn.

The same rule finds application in Bohemian in a much higher degree. Prefixes may be joined to most of the verbs in order to modify or change their meaning; and it is astonishing how many new verbs are sometimes derived from the original verb by that process. As an example, let us take the verb **jíti**, to go:

dojiti,	<i>dō-yet̪i</i> ,	to go (get, reach) somewhere; to make an errand;
najiti,	<i>nā-yet̪i</i> ,	to find;
nadejiti,	<i>nādē-yet̪i</i> ,	to gain, to get ahead, to head off;
obejiti,	<i>obē-yet̪i</i> ,	to go round;
odejiti,	<i>odē-yet̪i</i> ,	to go away, to leave;
pojiti,	<i>pō-yet̪i</i> ,	to perish, to die;
podejiti,	<i>podē-yet̪i</i> ,	to deceive, to cheat;
přejiti,	<i>prshē-yet̪i</i> ,	to pass over, to pass by;
předejiti,	<i>prshēdē-yet̪i</i> ,	to come before, to get ahead, to anticipate;
přijiti,	<i>prshi-yet̪i</i> ,	to come;
projiti,	<i>pro-yet̪i</i> ,	to pass through;
rozejiti se,	<i>rōzē-yet̪i sē</i> ,	to part, to disperse;
ujiti,	<i>ū-yet̪i</i> ,	to escape;
vejiti,	<i>vē-yet̪i</i> ,	to go in, to come in;
vyjiti,	<i>vy-yet̪i</i> ,	to go out, to come out;
zajiti,	<i>ză-yet̪i</i> ,	to go down, to set, to pass behind;
zajiti si,	<i>ză-yet̪i si</i> ,	to go out of one's way.

This shows the immense adaptability of the Bohemian verb, and certainly looks somewhat perplexing at first sight; but it is only necessary to fix in one's mind the meaning of a dozen of prefixes, which recur in all such cases, in order to have a key to the whole system. The same is true in English; a knowledge of the signification of the prefixes used in connection with verbs explains the modified meaning. Verbs formed by prefixes are in most cases contained separately in Bohemian dictionaries, the same as in English.

Note 7. An indefinite verb like **jíti**, *to go*, denotes a continuous action. When a new verb is formed by means of a prefix, it is definite, denoting a completed action: **dojiti**, to go (get, reach) somewhere; **najiti**, to find; etc. The present form of these verbs denotes, in fact, a *future* action: **dojdu**, I shall go or get somewhere; **najdu**, I shall find. Hence it is actually the future tense, there being no present, and the

auxiliary **budu** can never be used. Such compound verbs have therefore only a past with the auxiliary **jsem**, and a simple future:

došel jsem , <i>dōshell sem</i> , I went (got, reached) somewhere;	dojdu , <i>doydū</i> , I shall go (get, reach) somewhere;
našel jsem , <i>nāshell sem</i> , I found;	najdu , <i>nāydū</i> , I shall find.

LESSON XIV.

Slovo , n.	<i>slovō</i>	word	teprv	<i>tep'erf</i>	only, not before
horko , n.	<i>horkō</i>	heat; hot	vedle	<i>čedlē</i>	beside, next to
teplo , n.	<i>tepłō</i>	warmth; warm	nebe , n.	<i>něbō</i>	heaven, sky
chladno , n.	<i>khlădnō</i>	cool	slunce , n.	<i>slǔntsē</i>	sun
blato , n.	<i>blătō</i>	mud	měsíc , m.	<i>myě-seets</i>	moon, month
město , n.	<i>myěs-tō</i>	city	počasí , n.	<i>pōčħassee</i>	weather
pšenice , f.	<i>pshě-ñitsē</i>	wheat	znamení , n.	<i>znămeñee</i>	sign
pole , n.	<i>polē</i>	field	dešt , m.	<i>deshť</i>	rain
poupě , n.	<i>poúpye</i>	bud	stín , m.	<i>słeen</i>	shade, shadow
dítě , n.	<i>d'eeče</i>	child	vítr , m.	<i>vee-t'er</i>	wind
den , m.	<i>den</i>	day	pěkný, á, é	<i>pyěk-nee</i>	nice, fine
noc , f.	<i>nots</i>	night	jasný, á, é	<i>yăss-nee</i>	clear, bright
týden , m.	<i>teeden</i>	week	hezky ,	<i>hessky</i>	nice
odpoledne	<i>čdpolednē</i>	afternoon	zle	<i>zlē</i>	bad, badly
půlnoc , f.	<i>poolnots</i>	midnight	posud	<i>pōsūd</i>	till now, still
dnes v noci	<i>dness vnotsi</i>	to-night	okolo	<i>čkolō</i>	about
západ slunce	<i>zápăd slǔntsē</i>	sunset	na	<i>nă</i>	on, in
cesta , f.	<i>tsestā</i>	way, road	s tím	<i>słeem</i>	with that
radost	<i>rădost</i>	pleasure	za	<i>ză</i>	behind, beyond
les	<i>less</i>	forest, timber	zase, zas	<i>zăssé, zăss</i>	again
			o	<i>č</i>	at, on.
vidím	<i>vid'eem</i>	I see	svítiti	<i>sweet'it</i>	to shine
pršeti	<i>pershět'i</i>	to rain	svítí	<i>sweet'ee</i>	shines
prší	<i>pershee</i>	it rains	už není	<i>ušh neyñee</i>	is no more

choditi	<i>khōd̄it</i>	to walk	dej mu	<i>dey m̄u</i> give (thou) him
chodím	<i>khōd̄eem</i>	I walk	dejte mu	<i>deytē m̄u</i> give (you) him
chodí	<i>khōd̄ee</i>	he (she, it) walks		

Note 1. **Pršeti, pršet,** *pershefi, pershet.* to rain; **vítr,** *veeter;* *e* is silent and placed there simply to elucidate the pronunciation. See Sec. 4, Part I.

EXERCISES.

Včera byl špatný den. Yesterday
was a bad day.

Dnes je hezky. To-day is nice.
Opravdu, je pěkné počasí. Truly,
it is fine weather.

Myslím že bude tak celý den. I
think it will be so all day.

Bude teplo celý den. It will be
warm all day.

Odpoledne bude horko. In the after-
noon it will be hot.

Rád jsem venku za tepla. I like to
be out when (it is) warm.

V horku nerad jdu do města. In the
heat I do not like to go to town.

Já také ne. Neither do I.

Je nebe jasné? Is the sky clear?
Bylo, ale už není. It was, but is no
more.

Vidím na nebi znamení deště. I see
in the sky a sign of rain.

Ale slunce ještě svítí. But the sun
is still shining.

Po slunce západu snad bude pršet.
After sunset perhaps it will rain.

Je silný vítr. There is a strong wind.

Nebude tak zle s tím horkem. It
won't be so bad with the heat.

Cesta je pěkná. The road is fine.

Není žádné blato. There is no mud.

Včera bylo ještě dost blata. Yester-
day there was still enough mud.

Nerad chodím v blatě. I do not like
to walk in mud.

Náš hoch rád chodí blatem. Our
boy likes to walk through mud.

To snad každé dítě. Perhaps every
child (likes that).

To je radost dítěte. That is a child's
pleasure.

Ano, to dělá radost dítěti. Yes, it
makes pleasure to a child.

Je skoro chladno ve stínu. It is al-
most cool in the shade.

No slunce je posud horko. In the
sun it is still hot.

Dnes v noci svítí měsíc. To-night
the moon shines.

Teprv o půlnoci. Only at (i. e. not
before) midnight.

Ano, okolo půlnoci. Yes, about
midnight.

Zde je náš dům. Here is our house.

Vedle domu je stodola. Beside the house there is a barn.

Za stodolou máme pole. Behind the barn we have a field.

Na tom poli je pšenice. On that field there is wheat.

Za tím polem máme kus lesa. Beyond that field we have a piece of timber.

Je to dobrý kus lesa. It is a good piece of timber.

Pak je zase kus pole s obilím. Then there is again a piece of a grain-field (*literally:* of a field with grain).

Jděte na pole. Go to (on) the field.

Jdi s tím dítětem. Go (thou) with the child.

Dej dítěti poupě růže. Give (thou) the child a rose-bud (*literally:* a bud from the rose).

Otec je na poli. The father is in the field.

Note 2. The following little scheme shows the changes of the endings of *neutre* nouns, which in the nominative always end in **o, e, ě or í:**

slovo,	<i>slōvō,</i>	the word;	ve slovu,	<i>vě slōvū</i>	in the word; (o ,, slově, <i>vě slōvyě</i> } slovu, about slovu, <i>slōvū,</i> the word);
slova,	<i>slōvā,</i>	of the word;	slovem,	<i>slōvem,</i> (or se slovem) by or with the word.	
poupě,	<i>poǔpyč,</i>	the bud;	poupěti,	<i>poǔpyčti,</i> to the bud; (v poupěti, in the bud; etc.)	poupětem, <i>pōupyčtēm</i> (or s poupě- tem) with the bud.
poupěte,	<i>poǔpyetě,</i>	of the bud;			
pole,	<i>pōlě,</i> the field; of the field;		polem,	<i>pōlem,</i> (or s polem) with the field.	znamení, <i>znāmeñee,</i> the sign; of the sign; (ve znamení, in the sign; etc.);
poli,	<i>pōli,</i> to the field; (v poli, in the field; etc.)		znamením,	<i>znāměñeem</i> (or se zna- mením, with the sign.	

LESSON XV.

Jeden	<i>yěden</i>	one	můj , m.	<i>mooy</i>	my, mine
jedna, f.	<i>yědnă</i>	„	moji , pl.	<i>moye</i>	my, mine, pl.
dva	<i>dvoă</i>	two	mých , pl.	<i>meekh</i>	of my
dvě, f. & n.	<i>dvyč</i>	„	mým , pl.	<i>meem</i>	to my
tři	<i>trshi</i>	three	mými , pl.	<i>meemi</i>	with my
čtyry	<i>sh̄tiri</i>	four	ty	<i>ty</i>	those
pět	<i>pyēt</i>	five	k těm	<i>k̄tem</i>	to those
šest	<i>sh̄est</i>	six	těch	<i>t̄ekh</i>	{ of those, from
sedm	<i>sed̄um</i>	seven	z těch	<i>st̄ekh</i>	{ those
osm	<i>os̄um</i>	eight	v těch	<i>f̄ekh</i>	in those
devět	<i>dev-yet</i>	nine	od nás	<i>od náss</i>	from us, from our place
deset	<i>desset</i>	ten			
oba, m.	<i>obă</i>	{ both	jaký, á, é	<i>yăkee</i>	what, what kind
obě, f. & n.	<i>obyē</i>		tamhle	<i>támlě</i>	there, over there
pár	<i>pár</i>	{ some, a few	hned	<i>hn̄ed</i>	right away
několik	<i>ñekolik</i>		a sice	<i>ă sitsě</i>	that is, namely
mnoho	<i>mnohō</i>	a good deal	možná	<i>mōžná</i>	perhaps, possibly
mnoho-li	<i>mnohō-li</i>	how much	dokonce	<i>dōkontsě</i>	perhaps even
kolik	<i>kōlik</i>	how many	ještě něco?	<i>yeshtě ñetso</i>	anything else?
asi tak	<i>ăsi tăk</i>	about			
tolik	<i>tōlik</i>	so many, so much	nejmíň	<i>neymeeñ</i>	at least, least of all
k, ke, ku	<i>kă, kū</i>	to, unto	mu, jemu,	<i>mă, yěmă,</i>	to him
i	<i>e</i>	oh! well	v, ve	<i>vĕ</i>	in
s, se	<i>sĕ</i>	with	z, ze	<i>zĕ</i>	from, of

Mluviti	<i>mluvit</i>	to speak	utratil	<i>útráťil</i>	spent
mluvil *)	<i>mluvil</i>	spoke	prodati	<i>prodăt</i>	to sell
utratiti	<i>útráťit</i>	to spend	prodal	<i>prodăl</i>	sold

*) See Lesson XIII, Note 2.

koupiti	<i>koüpít</i>	to buy	hospoda, f. <i>höspodă</i>	saloon, tavern
koupil	<i>koüpil</i>	bought	mouka, f. <i>moükă</i>	flour
koupím	<i>koüpem</i>	I shall buy	cena, f. <i>tsěnă</i>	price, value
rozuměti	<i>rozüm̄yet</i>	to understand	podpora, f. <i>pödporă</i>	support
rozuměl	<i>rozüm̄'yell</i>	understood	drobné, pl. <i>dröbné</i>	change
rozumím	<i>rozüm̄meem</i>	understand	výběr, m. <i>veeb-yer</i>	choice
jezditi	<i>yezd'it</i>	to drive, to ride	tucet, m. <i>tütset</i>	dozen
jezdil	<i>yezd'il</i>	drove, rode	domu	home
jezdím	<i>yezd'eem</i>	I drive, I ride	na venku	<i>nă venkă</i> in the country
znám	<i>znám</i>	I know, I am acquainted	spokojen	<i>spököyen</i> satisfied
vím to	<i>veem tō</i>	I know it	můžete	<i>moožëtë</i> you can, you may
dělá	<i>đelá</i>	makes	počítejme	<i>pocheeteymë</i> let us count
člověk, m.	<i>chlö-vyék</i>	man	sto	<i>stō</i> a hundred
pán	<i>pán</i>	gentleman	víc, více	<i>veets, veetsë</i> more
farma, f.	<i>farmä</i>	farm	stojí	<i>stöyee</i> costs

EXERCISES.

Tady jsme zas. Here we are again.

Jaký pěkný den! What a nice day!

Máte ještě peníze? Have you still (some) money?

I ještě něco mám. Well, I have still something.

Mnoho-li asi máte? About how much have you?

Ne mnoho. Not much.

Mám ještě dva dollarů. I have still two dollars.

Já taky mám pár dollarů. I also have a few dollars.

Kolik dollarů? How many dollars?

Asi tak čtyry dollarů. About four dollars.

Žádné drobné? No change?

Mám také pár centů. I have also a few cents.

Utratil jsem mnoho. I have spent a good deal.

Jak mnoho asi? About how much?

Nejmíň pět nebo šest dollarů. At least five or six dollars.

Já také utratil několik dollarů. I also spent a few dollars.

Víc než já? More than I?

Možná asi sedm dollarů. Perhaps about seven dollars.

Nebo dokonce osm. Or perhaps even eight.

K dollarům počítejme čas. To the dollars let us count the time.

Ten má taky cenu v dollarech. It also has a price (value) in dollars.

To dělá mnoho. That makes much.

Devět nebo deset dollarů je pryč.

Nine or ten dollars are gone.

Co stojí ten vůz? How much is that wagon? (*literally*: what costs that wagon?).

Sto dollarů. A hundred dollars.

Za sto dollarů můžete koupit dva vozy. For a hundred dollars you can buy two wagons.

Dost možná. Very likely.

Já rozumím vozům. I understand wagons.

Je velký rozdíl ve vozech. There is a great difference in wagons.

Já jezdím s vozy už dávno. I drive wagons a long time already.

Zde je můj syn. Here is my son.

Oba моji synové jsou tu. Both my sons are here.

Ano, myslím že jsou. Yes, I think (that) they are.

Jeden z mých synů právě šel ven.

One of my sons has just gone out.

Dejte mým synům oběd; a sice hned. Give (to) my sons a dinner; I mean right away.

Ano, dáme pánum dobrý oběd.

Yes, we shall give to the gentlemen a good dinner.

V synech (mých) mám nyní podporu. In my sons I have now a support.

To je dobře. That is well.

Jsem spokojen se syny. I am satisfied with (my) sons.

Jsme všichni na farmě. We are all on the farm.

Synové jsou rádi na farmě. My sons like it on the farm.

Jsme všichni rádi na venku. We all like it in the country.

Koupil jsem mouku. I bought (some) flour.

Chcete koupit ještě něco? Do you want to buy anything else?

Půjdu a koupím dva nože. I shall go and buy two knives.

Já půjdu taky a koupím tucet nožů. I shall go, too, and buy a dozen knives.

Ale k nožům také vidličky. But to the knives also forks.

Tamhle mají velký výběr v nožích.

Over there they have a large choice in knives.

Ano, vím to; mají tuze dobré nože.

Yes, I know it; they have very good knives.

Máte pravdu. You are right (*literally*: you have right).

Tamhle v hospodě jsou tři muži.

Over there in the saloon there are three men.

Znám ty muže. I know those men.

Jeden z těch mužů je od nás. One of those men is from our place.

Prodal jsem mu koně. I sold (to) him a horse.

Jaký je to člověk? What kind of a man is that?

Je dobrý muž. He is a good man.

Jděte k těm mužům. Go to those men.

Půjdu; chei mluvit s těmi muži. I will go; I want to speak with those men.

Myslím že ti mužové půjdou brzy domu. I think that those men will soon go home.

Note 1. The formation of the *plural* of masculine inanimate and animate nouns, and the changes of their endings in different cases, are seen in the following table:

dollar, *dollär*, the dollar; **vůz,** *vooz*, the wagon; **syn,** *syn*, the son; **muž,** *moož*, the man;

dollary	<i>dolläry</i>	the dollars
vozy	<i>võzy</i>	the wagons
syni	<i>syñi</i>	{ the sons
—ové	<i>synõrvé</i>	
muži	<i>mooži</i>	{ the men;
—ové	<i>moožové</i>	

REMARK. The long termination *ové* belongs to animate nouns; only in poetic language or solemn expression does it sometimes appear connected with inanimates.—

In the accusative or objective case animate nouns have **syny**, **muže**: **Mám syny zde**, I have my sons here; **vidím ty muže**, I see those men.—

S dollar, s vozy, se syny, s muži; *sdolläry, svõzy, së syny, smooži*; with the dollars, with the wagons, with the sons, with the men.

dollarů	<i>dolläroo</i>	{ of the dollars
—ův	<i>dolläroof</i>	
vozů	<i>võzoo</i>	{ of the wagons
—ův	<i>—f</i>	
synů	<i>synoo</i>	{ of the sons
—ův	<i>—f</i>	
mužů	<i>moožoo</i>	{ of the men
—ův	<i>—f</i>	

REMARK. Both animate and inanimate nouns use the long termination *ův*, — but never in ordinary discourse and seldom in the spoken language generally.

dollarům	<i>dollärōom</i>	to the dollars	synům	<i>synoom</i>	to the sons
vozům	<i>võzoom</i>	to the wagons	mužům	<i>mûžoom</i>	to the men;

v dollarech	<i>vdolläreh</i>	in the dollars	REMARK. Also with other prepositions:		
ve vozech	<i>vě vřzéch</i>	in the wagons	o dollarech,	about the dollars;	
v synech	<i>vsyněkh</i>	in the sons	po dollarech,	after the dollars	
v mužích	<i>vmužéekh</i>	in the men.	(or dollar by dollar); etc.		

Note 2. The prepositions **k**, **s**, **v**, **z**, consisting of a single consonant, are simply abbreviations of **ke**, **ku**, **se**, **ve**, **ze**, as before explained. Their use is almost arbitrary, in cases where they can easily be connected and pronounced with the succeeding syllable; hence they are nearly always used when the following word begins with a vowel or with a consonant followed by a vowel: **v obleku**, *vř-blě-kü*, in the suit of clothes; **v dollarech**, *vdol-lä-rékh*, in the dollars; **v synech**, *vsy-někh*, in the sons; — **s oblekem**, *sř-blě-kem*, with the suit of clothes; **s dollarem**, *sdol-lä-rem*, with the dollar; **s mužem**, *smoo-žem*, with the man; — **k obleku**, *kř-blě-kü*, to the suit of clothes; **k vozu**, *kvř-zü*, to the wagon; etc.

We can never say **v vozu**, **s synem**, **k koni** (in the wagon, with the son, to the horse), because it could not be pronounced; the letter **e** has to be retained and it is ridiculous to leave it out in writing as a silent letter, as it can never be silent. We speak and write: **ve vozu** (or **ve voze**), *vě vřzü* (*vřzé*), in the wagon; **se synem**, *sě syněm*, with the son (or with my son); **ke koni**, *kě křní*, to the horse.

On the other hand, the long form **ke**, **ku**, **ve**, **ze** may nearly always be employed, when the following word begins with a consonant; we can say and write **ve dollarech**, **ve synech**; but it is not customary. The sound of **v** connects easily with every other consonant without the help of an **e**. However, the short prepositions **k**, **s**, **z** are being limited in their use and the proper long form **ke**, **ku**, **se**, **ze** is employed wherever practicable.

Note 3. The letters **h**, **ch**, **k**, **r** are called *hard* consonants “par excellence”. When they occur in a MASCULINE ANIMATE noun, or

in its ultimate syllable, they are changed or softened in the nominative plural after the following manner:

h	changes	into	z		k	changes	into	c
ch	„	„	š		r	„	„	ř

The following examples will explain it:

soudruh ,	<i>soúdrúh</i> (<i>soúdrúkh</i>),	a comrade;	soudruzi ,	<i>soúdrúzi</i> ,	comrades;
hoch ,	<i>hókh</i> ,	a boy;	hoši ,	<i>hó-she</i> ,	boys;
kluk ,	<i>klúk</i> ,	a boy, an urchin;	kluci ,	<i>klútsi</i> ,	boys, urchins;
bratr ,	<i>bráter</i> ,	a brother;	bratři ,	<i>brát-rshi</i> ,	brothers;

But whenever the long form of the nominative plural (**ové**) is employed, the hard consonant remains unchanged: **soudruhové**, the comrades; **bratrové**, the brothers. In the other cases (excepting the vocative, which is like the nominative: *o soudruzi!* o comrades!) the hard consonant also retains its place: **soudruhů**, **hochů**, **kluků**, **bratrů**, of the comrades (boys, brothers); **soudruhům**, and so forth.

LESSON XVI.

Líbí se mi	<i>leebee sě me</i>	I like it (him, her, etc)	dejte	<i>deytě</i>	give, put
néstí	<i>nesťi</i>	to bring, to yield	posázím	<i>posázeem</i>	I shall set out
nesou	<i>nessoū</i>	they bring, they yield (or pay)	povídá	<i>poveedá</i>	says
přines	<i>prshi-ness</i>	bring (thou)	letos	<i>letoss</i>	this year
přinesu	<i>prshi-nessü</i>	I shall bring	v loni	<i>vloñi</i>	last year
vede se	<i>vědě sě</i>	thrives	hodně	<i>hodně</i>	{ much, many, (the same as mnoho)
čítám	<i>cheetám</i>	I read (i. e. I use to read)	třeba	<i>trshě-bă</i>	{ a good deal it needs, need- ed, necessary
rád čítám	<i>rád cheetám</i>	I like to read	i třeba	<i>e trshě-bă</i>	I don't care
sednu	<i>sednū</i>	I sit down	všeho druhu	<i>vshěhō drúhū</i>	of all kinds
bavím se	<i>bäveem sě</i>	I amuse myself	krajina , f.	<i>kráyină</i>	country

soused , m.	<i>sořed</i>	neighbor	půda , f.	<i>poodă</i>	land, soil
užitek , m.	<i>užitek</i>	profit	prairie , f.	<i>praariě</i>	prairie
kukuřice , f.	<i>kukurshitsě</i>	{ corn	bahno , n.	<i>băhnō</i>	swamp
korna , f.	<i>kornă</i>		řezník , m.	<i>rshěz-ñeek</i>	butcher
brambory , pl.	<i>brămbory</i>	potatoes	kniha , f.	<i>kñihă</i>	book
oves , m.	<i>ovess</i>	oats	knihovna , f.	<i>kñihovnă</i>	library
ječmen , m.	<i>yěchmen</i>	barley	milovník , m.	<i>milov-ñeek</i>	lover
sklizeň , f.	<i>sklizeň</i>	crop	záliba , f.	<i>zálibă</i>	pleasure
slad , m.	<i>slăd</i>	malt	růže , f.	<i>roože</i>	rose
trh , m.	<i>terh</i>	market	pivouka , f.	<i>pivonkă</i>	piony
u cesty	<i>u tsěsty</i>	{ by the road	okno , n.	<i>oknō</i>	window
		{ near the road	poklad , m.	<i>poklăd</i>	treasure

samý , á, é	<i>sřmee</i>	nothing but
úrodný , á, é	<i>oo-rodnee</i>	fertile
obzvláště	<i>ob-zlášk'ě</i>	{ especially,
obzvlášť	<i>ob-zlášk'ě</i>	particularly
zvláštní	<i>zlášt-ñee</i>	special,
		particular
zpátky	<i>spátke</i>	back

kdykoli	<i>gdi-koli</i>	whenever
ještě jeden	<i>yesh'te yěden</i>	one more,
		another
před	<i>prshěd</i>	before
bez	<i>běz</i> or <i>bess</i>	without
za	<i>ză</i>	beyond, behind

EXERCISES.

Zde se mi líbí. I like it here.

Zde je pěkná krajina. This is (here is) a nice country.

Každý to povídá. Everybody says so.

My máme zde farmu. We have a farm here.

Stryje je náš soused. Uncle is our neighbor.

On má zde dvě farmy. He has two farms here.

Má velký užitek z těch farem? Has he a large profit from those farms?

Myslím že má. I think (that) he has.

Myslím že nesou mu hodně. I think (that) they yield (i. e. pay) him a good deal.

Vloni měl mnoho sklizně (skliz-ñe, of the c.) všeho druhu. Last year he had a large crop of all kinds.

Je to tuze úrodná farma. It is a very fertile farm.

Měl mnoho sena, pšenice, kukuřice i brambor. He had a great deal of hay, wheat, corn and potatoes.

Letos bude míti také oves, ječmen a žito. This year he will also have oats, barley and rye.

Ječmen na slad má vždycky (dycky, dit-ski) dobrý trh. Barley for malt has always a good market.

Knihy jsou poklad. Books are a treasure.

Rád čítám knihy. I like to read books.

Obzvláště když jsem doma. Especially when I am at home.

Jste teda milovník knih. You are then a lover of books.

To je pravda. That is true.

Máte mnoho knih? Have you many books?

Má knihovna je veliká. My library is large.

Máte růže před oknem. You have roses before the window.

Máme tam hodně růží. We have many roses there.

K růžím dejte pionky. To the roses put pionies.

Na farmách zde ječmen vede se dobrě. On the farms here barley thrives well.

Za farmami u cesty je kus špatné půdy. Beyond the farms by the road there is a piece of bad land.

Já myslel, že je to úrodná prairie. I thought (that) it was a fertile prairie.

Není; je to skoro samé bahno. It is not; it is almost nothing but swamp.

Jaké knihy máte? What books have you?

Mám knihy všeho druhu. I have books of all kinds.

Sednu ke knihám kdykoli mám čas. I sit down to the books whenever I have time.

Teda máte zálibu ve knihách. Then you have (you find) pleasure in books.

Ano, tuze rád bavím se s knihami. Yes, I like very much to amuse myself with books.

V růžích mám zvláštní zálibu. In roses I have (I take) particular pleasure.

Posázím ještě jeden záhon růžemi. I shall plant another bed with roses.

Byl jsem u řezníka. I was at the butcher's.

Koupil jsem maso od řezníka. I bought (some) meat from the butcher.

Tu je to maso. Here is that meat.

To je samá kost. That is nothing but bone.

Jsou tu nějaké kosti. There are some bones here.

Ano, kostí je dost. Yes, there are bones enough.

K těm kostím třeba více masa. To the bones (besides the b.) we need more meat.

Na těch kostech není ho mnoho. On these bones there is not much of it.

Co s kostmi? What (can we do) with the bones?

Nechceme taklik kostí. We do not want so many bones.

Přines maso bez kostí. Bring meat without bones.

Půjdu zpátky a přinesu ho. I shall go back and bring it.

Note 1. The formation of the plural of feminine nouns, and the changes of their endings in different cases, are shown in the following table:

cena, tsěnă, the price; **růže, roožĕ,** the rose; **kost, kōst,** the bone;

ceny *tsěny* the prices

růže *roožĕ* the roses

kosti *kostī* the bones;

cen *tsěn* of the prices

růží *roožee* of the roses

kostí *kostēe* of the bones;

REMARK. When two consonants terminate the noun in the genitive, an e is interpolated: **farmy,** the farms; **farem** (instead of **farm**), of the farms;—**matky,** the mothers; **matek** (instead of **matk**), of the mothers.

cenám *tsěnám* to the prices

růžím *roožeem* to the roses

kostem *kostem* to the bones;

v cenách *ftsě-nák̥h* in the prices

v růžích *vroo-žeekh* in the roses

v kostech *fkos-těkh* in the bones;

REMARK. Also with other prepositions: **o cenách,** about prices; **při cenách,** at the prices; etc.

cenami	<i>tsěnámi</i>	with the prices	REMARK. Usually with the proposition s (with): s cenami , <i>stsě-námi</i> ;
růžemi	<i>roožemí</i>	with the roses	
kostmi	<i>kostmi</i>	with the bones.	

LESSON XVII.

Vám	<i>vám</i>	to you	bohactví , n. <i>bōhăts-tvee</i> richness
jim	<i>yim</i>	to them	štěstí , n. <i>shťess-tí</i> happiness, luck, good fortune
mi, mé	<i>me, myě</i>	to me	
moje, mé	<i>moyě, mé</i>	mine, my	moudrost , f. <i>mořdrost</i> wisdom
naše	<i>năshě</i>	our, ours	váha , f. <i>váhă</i> weight
vaše	<i>văshě</i>	your, yours	poupě , n. <i>poüpýě</i> bud
s těmi	<i>sťemi</i>	with those	poupata <i>poüpătă</i> buds
tohle	<i>tōhlě</i>	this here	plot , m. <i>plöt</i> fence
tam ty	<i>tăm ty</i>	those over there	obtíž , f. <i>ob-těež</i> trouble
tuze	<i>toozě</i>	very much	mýlka , f. <i>meelkă</i> mistake
blíže	<i>bleežě</i>	nearer	máte pravdu <i>máte prăvdă</i> you are right (<i>literally</i> : you have right;)
nikoli	<i>ňikoli</i>	no, not at all	
kolem	<i>kōlem</i>	round	
pojd'me	<i>pod'mě</i>	let us go	není třeba <i>neňi trshě-bă</i> it is not necessary
jde	<i>dě</i>	comes	
hled'te	<i>hled'tě</i>	see, look	obalený, á, é <i>obălĕnee</i> covered
vidím	<i>viđ'eem</i>	I see	drátěný, á, é <i>drá-těenee</i> of wire
vidíte	<i>viđ'eetě</i>	you see	hluboký, á, é <i>hlübökée</i> deep, pro- found.
znám	<i>znám</i>	I know	
znáte	<i>znátě</i>	you know	zdravý, á, é <i>zdrăvēe</i> healthy, well,
přidám	<i>prshi-dám</i>	I shall add	sound
řeknu	<i>rshek-nǔ</i>	I shall tell	
slyšet	<i>slíshet</i>	to hear	děvče <i>děf-chě</i> girl
postačí	<i>postač-chee</i>	is sufficient	děvčata <i>děf-chătă</i> girls
roste	<i>rostě</i>	grows	dobře <i>dobrshě</i> well, all right
			slovem <i>slăvem</i> in a word

EXERCISES.

Já vám něco řeknu. I will tell you something.

Bohatví není štěstí. Riches are not happiness.

To jsou slova moudrosti. These are words of wisdom.

Znáte váhu těch slov? Do you know the weight of those words?

K těm slovům nic více není třeba. To those words nothing more is needed.

V těch slovech je hluboká pravda. In those words there is a profound truth.

Cheete slyšetí více? Do you want to hear more?

Nikoli; ta slova postačí. Not at all; those words suffice.

Jsem spokojen s těmi slovy. I am satisfied with those words.

Slovem: máte pravdu! In a word: you are right!

Tam ty růže už mají poupatá. The roses over there already have buds.

Ano, mají mnoho poupat. Yes, they have many buds.

Letos jsou obalený poupaty. This year they are covered with buds.

Vloni byly skoro bez poupat. Last year they were almost without buds.

Pojďme blíže k těm poupatům. Let us go nearer to those buds.

Vidím něco na těch poupatech. I see something on the buds.

To není nic. That is nothing.

Máte pravdu; poupatá jsou zdravá. You are right; the buds are sound.

Ano, jsou; yes, they are.

Aha, zde je moje děvče! Ah, here is my girl!

Jsou vaše děvčata zdravá? Are your girls well?

Obě naše děvčata jsou zdravá. Both our girls are well.

Přinес děvčeti poupe. Bring (thou) to the girl a bud.

Jsou zde dvě děvčata. There are two girls here.

Přineste jim několik poupat. Bring (you to) them some buds.

Tady jde s těmi poupaty. Here he comes with the buds.

Tu je pár poupat. Here are some buds.

Dobře. All right.

Hleďte !

See !

Ty pole co vidíte jsou moje. The fields you see are mine.

Kolem těch polí je nový plot. Around those fields there is a new fence.

Je to drátěný plot. It is a wire fence.

K těm polím je dobrá cesta. To those fields there is a good road.

Co bude na těch polích? What will there be on those fields?

Na těch polích bude obilí a kukurice. On those fields there will be grain and corn.

Co je tohle? What is this here?

Nějaká znamení. Some signs.

To jsou moje znamení. These are my signs.

Já něco přidám k těm znamením.

I shall add something to those signs.

Jste spokojen s těmi polemi? Are you satisfied with those fields?

Jsem tuze spokojen. I am very much satisfied.

Všechno dobře roste na těch polích. Everything grows well on those fields.

Není mýlka v těch znameních? Is there no mistake in those signs?

S těmi znameními je někdy obtíž. With those signs there is sometimes trouble.

Pravda, je někdy obtíž. True, there is sometimes trouble.

Note. The formation of the plural of neutre nouns, and the changes of their endings in different cases, will appear from the following table:

slovo	<i>slōvō</i>	the word	pole	<i>polē</i>	the field
poupě	<i>poǔpyč</i>	the bud	znamení	<i>znāměñee</i>	the sign;

slova	<i>slōvō</i>	the words	pole	<i>pōlē</i>	the fields
poupata	<i>poǔpătă</i>	the buds	znamení	<i>znāměñee</i>	the signs;

slov	<i>slōf</i>	of the words	polí	<i>pōlee</i>	of the fields
poupat	<i>poǔpăt</i>	of the buds	znamení	<i>znāměñee</i>	of the signs;

slovům	<i>slōvoom</i>	to the words	polím	<i>pōleem</i>	to the fields
poupatům	<i>poǔpătoom</i>	to the buds	znamením	<i>znāměñeem</i>	to the signs;

ve sloveh *vě slōvěkh* in the words

v poupatech *fpoǔpătěkh* in the buds

v polích *fpoleekh* in the fields

ve znameních *vě znāměñeekh* in the signs;

REMARK. Also with other prepositions: **o polích**, about the fields; **na polích**, on the fields.

slový *slövy* with the words
poupaty *poüpäty* with the buds
polí (-emi) *poli (-ěmi)* with the fields
znamenímí *známěñneemi* with the signs.

REMARK. Also with the preposition **se**, **s:** **se slový**, **se slövy**; **s poupaty**, **spoüpäty**; **s polemi**, **spolëmi**; **se znamenímí**, **sě známěñneemi**.—Instead of **polemi**, the short forms **polmi** and **poli** (*polmi*, *polli*) are also used.

LESSON XVIII.

Mrak, m.	<i>mräk</i>	cloud	já pravil	<i>yá prävil</i>	I said
mráček, m.	<i>mrá-chek</i>	little cloud	jářku	<i>yá-rshkú</i>	I said, I say
žena	<i>žená</i>	wife		(like the colloq. ‘says I’.)	
míle*), f.	<i>meelë</i>	mile	jeti	<i>yet'i</i> , yet to drive, to ride	
hodina*), f.	<i>höd'inä</i>	hour, o'clock	pojedem	<i>pøyëdem</i>	we shall drive,
jízda , f.	<i>yeezdä</i>	drive, ride			we shall ride
k večeru	<i>kwěchérü</i>	toward evening	pojed'me	<i>poyëd'më</i>	let us drive,
za světla	<i>ză swyët-lă</i>	by daylight			let us ride
tma	<i>tmä</i>	dark, darkness	vyjeti	<i>ve-yet'i</i> , <i>ve-yet</i>	to drive
pozdě	<i>pözd'e</i>	late			out, to ride out, to start
dobrá !	<i>dobrá</i>	very well!	vyjeli jsme	<i>ve-yelli smë</i>	we started
krásný, á, é	<i>krássnee</i>	beautiful	vrátíme se	<i>vráťeemë së</i>	we shall re-
s námi	<i>snámi</i>	with us			turn, we shall come back
brzy	<i>ber-zy</i>	soon	vrátil mi	<i>vráťil me</i>	he returned
po svém	<i>pö swém</i>	after one's			to me (something);
		business	půjčené peníze	<i>püychéné peñeezë</i>	the money loaned;
ještě	<i>yesh'te</i>	still, yet.			

*) **Jedna, dvě, tři, čtyry míle**, *yednä, dwyë, tršti, shtiri* *meelë*, one, two, three, four miles; **pět mil**, *pyët mill*, five miles; **šest mil**, *shëst mill*, six miles; and so forth.

Jedna hodina, *yednä hod'inä*, one hour, one o'clock; **dvě, tři, čtyry hodiny**, *dwyë, trshi, shtiri hod'iny*, two, three, four hours; two, three, four o'clock; **pět hodin**, *pyët hod'in*, five hours; five o'clock; **šest hodin**, *shëst hod'in*, six hours, six o'clock; — and so forth.

EXERCISES.

Včera byl krásný den; — nebe bylo jasné, — ani mráčku nikde.

Járu, ženo! dnes pojedem do města.

Ano, pojedme! pravila žena; — je den tak krásný!

Máme deset mil do města.

Brzy po snídani vyjeli jsme; — bylo právě osm hodin.

Soused pan Rohan byl s námi.

Já pravil: sousede, jak brzy bude me ve městě?

V deset hodin jsme tam! pravil pan Rohan.

A byli jsme.

Je to as dvě hodiny jízdy, když cesta je dobrá.

Ve městě soused šel kupovat něco a my také šli po svém.

Půjčil jsem mu pět dollarů.

Járu, sousede! kdy se vrátíme?

Myslím pozdě odpoledne, nebo k večeru; — to bude dost času.

Dobrá; vrátíme se asi v sedm hodin večer, — ještě za světla.

Ale bylo už tma, když jsme se vrátili.

Yesterday was a beautiful day; — the sky was clear, — not a cloud anywhere.

I said: wife, to-day we will drive to town.

Yes, let us drive! said (my) wife; — the day is so beautiful!

It is ten miles to town (*literally*: we have ten miles to town).

Soon after breakfast we drove out (we started); — it was just eight o'clock.

(Our) neighbor Mr. Rohan was with us.

I said: neighbor, how soon shall we be in the city?

At ten o'clock we are there! said Mr. Rohan.

And we were.

It is about a two hours' ride, when the road is good.

In the city, the neighbor went to buy something, and we also went after our business.

I loaned to him five dollars.

I said: neighbor, when shall we return?

I think late in the afternoon or towards evening; — that will be time enough.

Very well; we shall return about seven o'clock in the evening, — still by daylight.

But it was already dark, when we returned.

Soused šel domu a vrátil mi půjče-
né peníze.

The neighbor went home and re-
turned to me the money I loaned
him.

Note 1. The noun **mráček** is a diminutive of **mrak**. In English only a few nouns have their proper diminutives; for instance: man, *manikin*; eagle, *eaglet*; river, *rivulet*; goose, *gosling*.

In Bohemian, diminutives are exceedingly numerous; and very often a noun has two, sometimes three diminutives, differing in degree. For example:

dům, m. *dům*, a house; **domek**, *dőměk*, a small house; **domeček**, *dőměchek*, a very small house.

hoch, *hókh*, a boy; **hošík**, *hőshee-k*, a small boy; **hošíček**, *hőshee-chek*, a very small boy.

ruka, f. *rükă*, a hand; **ručka**, *rúchkă*, a small hand; **ručička**, *rúchich-kă*, a very small hand.

oko, n. *ókō*, an eye; **očko**, *óch-kō*, a small eye; **očičko**, *óchich-kō*, a very small eye.

Diminutives, however, are often used simply as expressions of fondness and endearment, apart from any relation of size or degree.

Note 2. The genitive or possessive case of **mráček** is **mráčku**, not **mráčeku**. All nouns ending in **ek** drop the letter **e** in their declension. They are all of the masculine gender (as observed in Lesson I, Note 5), and the animate have **ka**, the inanimate **ku** in the genitive:

ptáček, *ptáček* (colloq. *stáček*), a small bird; **ptáčka**, *ptáčkă* (*stáčkă*), a small bird's;

svátek, *svátek*, a holiday; **svátku**, *swát-kă*, a holiday's.

Note 3. Reflexive verbs in English are followed by reflexive pronouns; for instance: to forswear *one's self*; I forswore *myself*; he forswore *himself*; they forswore *themselves*; etc.

In Bohemian, the reflexive pronoun is always *se*, without any variation. But many verbs, which are reflexive in Bohemian, are not so in English; and vice versa.

Vrátití se, vrátit sě (to return, to come back), is a reflexive verb; we say: **vrátím se, vráťeem sě**, I shall return; **vrátíme se, vráťeemě sě**, we shall return; **vrátíte se, vráťeetě sě**, you will return; **vrátí se, vráťee sě**, they will return.

Note 4. In the foregoing exercises, **sousedé, ženo**, are the vocative cases of **soused** (neighbor), **žena** (wife). The noun is put in the vocative case, when the person or thing is addressed: o Lord! o heavens!

In Bohemian, the vocative case in the singular is very often, in the plural *always* like the nominative, as will be seen from the following comparison :

Nominative.

soused,	<i>sořsed,</i>	the neighbor
muž,	<i>moož,</i>	the man
žena,	<i>ženă,</i>	the woman
kost, f.	<i>kōst,</i>	the bone
růže, f.	<i>roožę,</i>	the rose
slovo, n.	<i>slōvō,</i>	the word
pole, n.	<i>pōlę,</i>	the field
znamení,	<i>znămeñee,</i>	the sign

Vocative.

sousedé!	<i>sořsedě,</i>	o neighbor!
muži!	<i>mooži,</i>	o man!
ženo!	<i>ženō,</i>	o woman!
kosti!	<i>kōst̄i,</i>	o bone!
růže!	<i>roožę,</i>	o rose!
slovo!	<i>slōvō,</i>	o word!
pole!	<i>pōlę,</i>	o field!
znamení!	<i>znămeñee,</i>	o sign!

In the plural number, the nominative and vocative always agree :

sousedí*),	<i>sořsed'i,</i>	the neighbors; o neighbors!
muži (-ové),	<i>mooži,</i>	the men; o men!
ženy,	<i>ženy,</i>	the women; o women!
kosti,	<i>kōst̄i,</i>	the bones; o bones!
růže,	<i>roožę,</i>	the roses; o roses!
slova,	<i>slōvā,</i>	the words; o words!
pole,	<i>pōlę,</i>	the fields; o fields!
znamení,	<i>znămeñee,</i>	the signs; o signs!

* **Sousedé**, *sořsedé*, is the proper grammatical form, this noun forming an exception; but **sousedí** is the common usage.

Note 5. The Latin noun has six cases; the Bohemian noun has six cases corresponding perfectly with the Latin, and an additional case called "instrumental", because it denotes by whom, with whom or through whom (by means of what or through what) something happens or is done: **mužem**, **s mužem**, by the man, with the man; **dollarem**, **s dollarem**, with the dollar.

The nature of the six cases of the Bohemian noun apart from the vocative will appear more distinctly by stating the questions to which they respond.

The *nominative* case, of course, responds to the question **kdo?** **co?** **gdř**, **tsř**; who? what?

dollar, **muž**, **žena**, **slovo**; the dollar, the man, the woman, the word;—
dollary, **muži**, **ženy**, **slova**; the dollars, the men, the women, the words.

The *genitive* or *possessive* case responds to the question **čí?** **čeho?** **chee**, **chěhř**; whose? of what?

dollaru, **muže**, **ženy**, **slova**; of the dollar, the man's, the woman's, of the word;—**dollarů** (-ův), **mužů** (-ův), **žen**, **slov**; of the dollars, the men's, the women's, of the words.

The *dative* case responds to the question **komu?** **čemu?** **kōmř**, **chěmř**; to whom? to what?

dollaru, **muži**, **ženě**, **slovu**; to the dollar, to the man, to the woman, to the word;—**dollarům**, **mužům**, **ženám**, **slovům**; to the dollars, to the men, to the women, to the words.

The *accusative* or *objective* case responds to the question **koho?** **co?** **kōhř**, **tsř**; whom? what?

dollar, **muže**, **ženu**, **slovo**; the dollar, the man, the woman, the word;—**dollary**, **muže**, **ženy**, **slova**; the dollars, the men, the women, the words.

The *locative* case responds to the question **v kom?** **v čem?** (**na kom?** **na čem?**—**o kom?** **o čem?**), **fkōm**, **fchěm**; in whom? in what? (on whom—what? about whom—what?)

v dollaru, **v muži**, **v ženě**, **ve slovu (-ě)**; in the dollar, in the man,

in the woman, in the word; — **v dollarech**, **v mužích**, **v ženách**, **ve slovech**; in the dollars, in the men, in the women, in the words.

The *instrumental* case responds to the question **kým?** **čím?** — **s kým?** **s čím?** *keem, cheem, skeem, scheem;* by whom? by what? with whom? with what?

dôllarem, **mužem**, **ženou**, **slovem**; with the dollar, with the man, with the woman, with the word; — **dollary**, **muži**, **ženami**, **slovy**; with the dollars, with the men, with the women, with the words.

LESSON XIX.

Pan	pán	Mr. (mister)	blízký, á, é	bleeskee	near
pán	pán	gentleman	hodný, á, é	hodnee	nice, good
paní	páñee	Mrs. (missis); lady	jiný, á, é	ye-nee	another
člověk	chlövyék	man; one;	letný, á, é	letnee	aged
Karel	kärell	Charles	bohatý, á, é	böhätee	rich
Anna	änä	Anna	chudý, á, é	khüdee	poor
Marie	marië	Mary	poctivý, á, é	pots-tivee	honest
deceruška	tseruškă	little daughter	mladý, á, é	mlädee	young
hošík	hösheek	little boy	četný, á, é	chetnee	numerous
sousedka	sořesedkă	female neighbor	pillný, á, é	pillnee	industrious
vđova	vđovă	widow	poslušný, á, é	poslůshnee	obedient
vđovec	vđo-věts	widower	ještě tři	yesh'te trshi	three other
domov, m.	dōmof	home			three more
rok, m.	rök	year	usazen	üssäzen	settled
leta	letă	years*)	jmenuje se	menüyě sč	is called
let	let		v skutku	fsküt-kü	indeed, in
náklonnost, f.	náklonost	inclination	opravdu	oprävdü	fact, really
několik	ñekolik	several, some,	má být	má beet	ought to be
		a few	máte rád	mátě rád	you like

*) **Dvě leta**, *dvycě letă*, two years; **tři leta**, *trshi letă*, three years; **čtyry leta**, *shtiri letă*, four years; **pět let**, *pyět let*, five years; **šest let**, *shěst let*, six years; **sedm let**, *sěděm let*, seven years; and so forth.

Máte to rád?	<i>mátětō rád?</i>	do you like it?	nesklame se,	<i>nessklāměsě,</i>	will not be disappointed;
mám vždycky rád,	<i>mám dit-ski rád,</i>	I always like;	jednám,	<i>yed-nám,</i>	I deal;
dávno,	<i>dávnō,</i>	a long time;	jedná,	<i>yed-ná,</i>	deals;
jak dávno,	<i>yák dávnō</i>	how long;	váš,	<i>vásh,</i>	your, yours;
			její,	<i>yěyee,</i>	her, hers.

EXERCISES.

Tak zde je váš domov!

Kdo je váš soused?

Pan Hodan je můj soused.

On je náš blízký soused.

Je pan Hodan hodný muž?

Ano, je hodný muž; a paní Hodanova je hodná žena.

Mají děti?

Mají jednu deerušku.

Jak se jmenuje?

Myslím že jmenuje se Marie; je to hodně dítě.

Jiný soused náš je pan Braun.

Jak dávno je zde usazen?

Je zde usazen asi rok nebo dvě leta.

Je pan Braun bohatý?

Není; on je chudý člověk.

Je chudý a tuze poctivý.

Je letní muž?

Ne, pan Braun je mladý muž a paní Braunová je mladá žena.

Ale rodina je už četná.

Mají několik dětí.

So here is your home!

Who is your neighbor?

Mr. Hodan is my neighbor.

He is our near neighbor.

Is Mr. Hodan a nice man?

Yes, he is a nice man; and Mrs. Hodan is a nice woman.

Have they children?

They have one little daughter.

What is her name?

I think she is called Mary; she is a nice child.

Another neighbor of ours is Mr. Brown.

How long is he (has he been) settled here?

He has been settled here about a year or two (years).

Is Mr. Brown rich?

He is not; he is a poor man.

He is poor and very honest.

Is he an aged man?

No; Mr. Brown is a young man, and Mrs. Brown is a young woman.

But the family is already numerous.

They have several children.

**Karel je asi deset let a pak mají
ještě tři děti.**

Karel je poslušný a pilný hoch.

Anna je také poslušná a pilná.

Je jí asi osm let.

Dítě má být poslušné a pilné.

Ano, má být; ale někdy není.

**Vdova Borošová je také naše blízká
sousedka.**

**Její bratr, pan Bloch, je také
vdovec.**

Charles is about ten years, and then
they have three more children.

Charles is an obedient and indus-
trious boy.

Anna is also obedient and indus-
trious.

She is (*literally*: it is to her) about
eight years.

A child should be obedient and in-
dustrious.

Yes, it ought to be; but sometimes
it is not.

The widow Borosh is also our near
neighbor.

Her brother, Mr. Bloch, is also a
widower.

**Teda máte rád pana Hodana? (pánă
hodăň,—accusative).**

**Mám vždycky rád hodného muže, a
hodnou ženu také.**

**K hodnému muži a k hodné ženě
máme vždy náklonnost.**

**A je také pravda, že v hodném mu-
ži a v hodné ženě se člověk nikdy
nesklame.**

**S hodným mužem a hodnou ženou
každý rád jedná.**

Též rád jednám s hodným dítětem.

**Pana Brauna hošík je v skutku
hodné dítě.**

So you like Mr. Hodan?

I always like a nice man, and a nice
woman too.

Toward a nice man and a nice wo-
man we always have an inclination.
And it is also true, that in a good
man and in a good woman one is
never disappointed.

With a nice man and a nice woman
everybody likes to deal.

I also like to deal with a nice child.
Mr. Brown's little boy is really a
good child.

Note 1. In Lesson VI, Note 2, it was explained that the termina-
tion of adjectives changes according to the gender of the nouns which
they qualify:

hodný muž,	<i>hodnee moož,</i>	a nice man;
hodná žena,	<i>hodná ženă,</i>	a nice woman;
hodné dítě,	<i>hodné d'eeťe,</i>	a nice child (in ordinary discourse hodný dítě , like the masculine).

Adjectives, also, are declined and agree in number and case with the nouns. The changes of termination in the singular number appear in the following table:

hodný muž,	<i>hodnee moož,</i>	a nice man;
hodné dítě,	<i>hodné d'eeťe,</i>	a nice child;
hodného muže,	<i>hodněhō moožē,</i>	of a nice man,
,, dítěte,	,, d'eeťetē,	of a nice child;

REMARK. The accusative or objective agrees with the possessive in the masculine, and with the nominative in the neutre gender:
vidím hodného muže, *vid'eeem hodněhō moožē*, I see a nice man;
vidím hodné dítě, *vid'eeem hodné d'eeťe*, I see a nice child.

hodnému muži,	<i>hodnémū mooži,</i>	to a nice man,
,, dítěti,	,, d'eeťeti,	to a nice child;
v hodném muži,	<i>vhodném mooži,</i>	in a nice man,
,, ,, dítěti,	,, d'eeťeti,	in a nice child;
s hodným mužem,	<i>shodneem moožem,</i>	with a nice man,
,, ,, dítětem,	,, d'eeťetem,	with a nice child.

hodná žena,	<i>hodná ženă,</i>	a nice woman;
hodné ženy,	<i>hodnē ženy,</i>	of a nice woman;
,, ženě,	,, žeňe,	to a nice woman;
v ,, ženě,	v ,, , ,	in a nice woman;
hodnou ženu,	<i>hodnoū ženū,</i>	a nice woman (<i>accusative</i>);
s hodnou ženou,	<i>shodnoū ženoū,</i>	with a nice woman.

Note 2. In common discourse no distinction whatever is made between the masculine and neutre gender, and the terminal *ý* does not change. We hear :

hodný muž,	hodný dítě;	a nice man,	a nice child;
hodnýho muže,	hodnýho dítěte;	of a nice man,	of a nice child;
hodnýmu muži,	hodnýmu dítěti;	to a nice man,	to a nice child;
hodnýho muže,	hodný dítě; (<i>accusative</i>);	a nice man,	a nice child;
v hodným muži,	v hodným dítěti;	in a nice man,	in a nice child;
s hodným mužem,	s hodným dítětem;	with a nice man,	with a nice child.

In the feminine gender, we hear : **hodná žena, hodnou ženu** (*accus.*)..
s hodnou ženou; but in the other cases :

hodný ženy,	of a good woman;
hodný ženě,	to a good woman;
v hodný ženě,	in a good woman.

The ordinary usage of the people evidently rejects all artificial, and unnecessary grammatical distinctions, always tending to simplicity; and it will be noticed that there is much more consistency in this common rule as applied to the declension of adjectives, when we come to treat of their plural number.

Note 3. In Bohemian, the adjective may be placed either before or after the noun, according to the speaker's pleasure :

pan Hodan je hodný muž;	{	Mr. Hodan is a nice man;
pan Hodan je muž hodný;		
je to letný muž;	{	he is (<i>literally, it is</i>) an aged man.
je to muž letný;		

It is usually placed after the noun when the speaker wishes to lay particular stress upon the adjective (*hodný, letný*) qualifying the noun.

LESSON XX.

Sousedstvo, n.	<i>soúsedstvō</i>	neighbor-
		hood
celý, á, é	<i>tsellee</i>	whole, all
milý, á, é	<i>millee</i>	pleasant, please-
		ing, dear
příjemno, f.	<i>prshee-yěmnō</i>	agreea-
		ble, pleasant
nehodný	<i>něhodnee</i>	naughty
bydleti	<i>bidlet</i>	to live, to reside
vše	<i>fshě</i>	{ everything,
všechno	<i>fshekh-nō</i>	all
však	<i>fshák</i>	but
však je	<i>fshák yě</i>	but there is (there are)
nad	<i>năd</i>	over
není nad	<i>něñi năd</i>	there is nothing better than; nothing like;
velmi	<i>velmi</i>	very
jich	<i>yikh</i>	of them
nám	<i>nám</i>	to us
vám	<i>vám</i>	to you

vejde	<i>veydě</i>	enters, calls
rád vejde,	<i>rád veydě,</i>	likes to call
rád promluví,	<i>rád promlūvē,</i>	likes to talk (to have a chat)
má rád	<i>má rád</i>	he likes
má ráda	<i>má rádā</i>	she likes
doufám	<i>doúfám</i>	I hope
ba právě	<i>bă právyě</i>	that is so; to be sure;
ba věru	<i>bă vyěrū</i>	certainly; no doubt of it;
v pořádku	<i>fpo-rshád-kü</i>	right; all right;
dobrá vůle	<i>dobrá voolě</i>	good will
na štěstí	<i>nă shťestí</i>	happily, fortunately;
je na to čas, <i>yě nă tō chăss,</i>		there is time for it.
že ne?	<i>žě ně?</i>	{ isn't it so? is it not? are they not?
to víš	<i>tō veesh</i>	thou knowest
to víte	<i>tō veetě</i>	you know

REMARK. When standing alone and used as a rejoinder, **to víš** and **to víte** signify: *To f course; to be sure.*

EXERCISES.

Myslím že všichni vaši sousedi jsou hodní.

Pravda; celé sousedstvo je hodné.

Pak je příjemno bydleti zde.

Opravdu, velmi příjemno.

A jaké je sousedstvo vaše?

My také máme pár hodných sousedů.

Myslím že je vám to také milé.

Je nám to tuze milé.

Člověk rád vejde k hodným sousedům.

Každý má rád hodné sousedy.

Ba právě; a v hodných sousedech vždycky (*dit-ski*) má podporu.

Když je na to čas, člověk rád promluví s hodnými sousedy.

Není nad hodné sousedy!

I think that all your neighbors are nice.

True; the whole neighborhood is nice.

Then it is agreeable to live here.

Truly, very agreeable.

And what kind is *your* neighborhood?

We also have some nice neighbors (i. e. some *of* the nice neighbors).

I think (that) it is also agreeable to you.

It is very agreeable to us.

One likes to call on nice neighbors; (*literally*: one likes to enter to nice neighbors).

Everybody likes good neighbors.

To be sure; and in good neighbors one always has (finds) a support.

When there is time for it, one likes to have a chat with good neighbors.

There is nothing like good neighbors!

Má žena je zde velmi spokojena.

Vaše sousedky jsou všechny hodné, že ne?

Naše sousedky jsou hodné.

To víte, že mezi hodnými sousedkami je dobrá vůle.

Není nad dobrou vůlí v sousedstvu.

To víte.

Když sousedi také mají hodné děti, všechno je v pořádku.

My wife is very much satisfied here. Your female neighbors are all nice, are they not?

Our female neighbors are nice.

You know that among nice female neighbors there is good will.

There is nothing like good will in a neighborhood.

Of course (i. e. you know).

When the neighbors also have nice children, everything is all right.

Máme opravdu mnoho hodných dětí v sousedstvu.

We have indeed many nice children in the neighborhood (i. e. many of the nice children)*).

Však je také několik nehodných.

But there are also a few naughty (ones).

Doufám že není jich mnoho.

I hope (that) there are not many of them.

Na štěstí není jich mnoho.

Fortunately there are not many of them.

Je jich jen pár; ale je to dost.

There are only a few; but it is enough.

Ba věru.

No doubt of it.

Note 1. In the plural, the masculine gender of an adjective changes the terminal ý into an í:

hodný muž, *hodnee moož*, a nice man; **hodní muži, *hodñee mooži*,** nice men.

The feminine gender changes the terminal á into an é:

hodná žena, *hodná ženă*, a nice woman; **hodné ženy, *hodné ženy*,** nice women.

The neutre gender changes the terminal é into an á:

hodné děcko, *hodné děcko*, a nice child; **hodná děčka, *hodná děčka*,** nice children.

Dítě, *děetë*, (child,) follows the feminine in the plural: **hodné děti, *hodné děti*, nice children.**

Note 2. Adjectives containing in their last syllable the hard consonants **h, ch, k, r,** change these consonants in the plural of the masculine animate gender into **z, š, c, ř,** in the same manner as stated in Lesson XV, Note 3. For example:

*) **Mnoho, málo, pár, kolik, několik,** (many, few, a few, how many, some), as well as all numbers after ‘four’ (see foot-notes in Lessons XVIII and XXIX) govern the *genitive or possessive* case; hence the noun, or pronoun, adjective, which follows them, must always appear in that case.

dlouhý had, *dloúhee hăd*, a long snake; **dlouzí hadi,** *dloúzee hăd'i*, long snakes;
hluchý muž, *hlükhee moož*, a deaf man; **hluší muži,** *hlüshee mooži*, deaf men;
velký hoch, *velkee hōkh*, a big boy; **velcí hoši,** *veltsee hō-she*, big boys;
dobrý soused, *dobree soüsed*, a good neighbor; **dobří sousedi,** *dob-rshee soüsed'i*, good neighbors.

Note 3. The following table presents a complete view of the plural number of adjectives ending in **ý** (**á**, **é**).

The *nominative* and *accusative* cases:

hodní muži (*accus.* **hodné muže**), *hodñee mooži*, (*hodné moožč*), nice men;
hodné ženy, *hodné ženy*, nice women;
hodná děcka, *hodná dětskā*, nice children.

The *genitive* or *possessive* case:

hodných mužů, žen, děcek, *hodneekh moožoo, žen, dětsk*, of the nice men, women, children.

The *locative* case:

o hodných mužích, ženách, děckách, *o hodneekh moožekh, ženákh, dětskákh*, about the nice men, women, children.

The *instrumental* case:

s hodnými muži, ženami, děcky, *shodneemi mooži, ženámi, dětski*, with the nice men, women, children.

Note 4. In common discourse, however, the grammatical distinction of gender in the nominative plural of this class of adjectives is treated as perfectly useless, which in fact it is. The Bohemian language, as it lives in the daily intercourse of millions, employs the masculine singular form of the adjective in all three genders of the plural, recognizing only one form of declension:

hodný muži, hodný ženy, hodný děti (or **děcka**); the nice men, women, children;
hodných mužů, žen, dětí; of the nice men, women, children;
 and so forth.

LESSON XXI.

Sousedův , m. <i>soúsedoof</i>	}	the	denní	<i>děñee</i>	daily
sousedova , f. <i>soúsedová</i>		neigh-	týdenní	<i>teeděñee</i>	weekly
sousedovo , n. <i>soúsedovō</i>		bor's.	denník , m. <i>děñek</i> ,	daily paper	
sousedovi , pl. <i>soúsedovři</i>			týdenník , m. <i>teeděñek</i>	weekly	,
bratrův , m. <i>brätroof</i> , the brother's			dnešní	<i>dnesh-née</i>	to-day's
plný, á, é <i>pl-nee</i>		full	včerejší	<i>fchëreyshee</i>	yesterday's
nový, á, é <i>nöree</i>		new	poslední	<i>pösledñee</i>	last
falešný, á, é <i>fäleshnee</i>		false	volba , f.	<i>volbă</i>	election
co nového? <i>tsö növéhō</i> , what is			zpráva , f.	<i>správă</i>	advice
		the news?	den co den , <i>den tsö den</i>	day by day	
noviny , pl. <i>növiny</i> news, news-		paper	co, něco	<i>tsö, ñetsö</i>	something
			brzo hotovi , <i>berzo hotövi</i> , soon done		
tiskárna , f. <i>tiskárnă</i> printing office			přinesl	<i>prshi-nessl</i>	he brought
list <i>list</i> paper, sheet, leaf			dopadnouti , <i>döpädnouť</i>	to come	
hlas , m. <i>hläss</i> voice					out, to result
sloupec , m. <i>sloūpet̄s</i> column			podívej se , <i>pöd'eevey sě</i> , look (thou)		
sloupce <i>sloūp-tsě</i> columns			podívejte se , <i>pöd'eeveyt̄ sě</i> , look		
čísti <i>cheest̄i</i> , <i>cheest</i> , to read					(you)
čteme <i>chtěmě</i> we read			pokaždé , <i>pökäždē</i> , every time		
v tom , m. & n. <i>ftōm</i>	}	in that	též	<i>též</i>	also
v té , f. <i>fté</i>			věřiti , <i>vyě-rshiti</i> , <i>vyě-rshit</i> , to be-		
proto <i>protō</i> hence, therefore					lieve
proto ale přece , <i>protō ālě prshě-tsě</i> ,			nesmíte	<i>nësmeet̄</i>	you must not
in spite of that, notwithstanding			pracovati	<i>prätsövät̄</i>	to work
			pracuje	<i>prätsüyě</i>	works

EXERCISES.

Kdo to byl?	Who was it?
To byl sousedův syn.	That was (our) neighbor's son.
Přinesl něco?	Has he brought something?
Přinesl nám noviny.	He brought (to) us a newspaper.
Sousedovy noviny?	Our neighbor's newspaper?
Ano, sousedovy noviny.	Yes, our neighbor's paper.
Jsou to denní nebo týdenní noviny?	Is it a daily or a weekly newspaper?
Je to denník.	It is a daily.
Jaký je to denník?	What daily is it?
Je to Denní Hlas.	It is the Daily Voice.
Bratrův hoch pracuje v té tiskárně, myslím.	My brother's boy works in that printing-office, I think.
Ano, a sousedova dcera též.	Yes, and (our) neighbor's daughter also.
Bratrova dcera chce tam pracovat též.	My brother's daughter wants to work there also.
A Hodanova Marie také.	And Mary Hodan too.
<hr/>	
Je to dnešní list?	Is it to-day's paper?
Je dnešní; ale sousedův Jan také přinesl včerejší list.	It is to-day's; but (neighbor's) John also brought yesterday's paper.
Co je nového? Podívej se do dnešního listu.	What is the news? Look (thou) into to-day's paper.
Ve dnešním listu není mnoho nového; — jen něco o poslední volbě.	In to-day's paper there is not much news; only something about the last election.
Jak dopadla poslední volba?	How did the last election come out?
Hned to budu čísti.	I shall read it right away.
Budeme brzy hotovi s dnešním listem.	We shall soon be done with to-day's paper.
<hr/>	
Denní listy vždycky (<i>dit-ski</i>) mají něco nového.	Daily papers always have something new.
Pravda, v denních listech je po každé co čísti.	To be sure, in daily papers there is every time something to read.

Ale nesmíte vždy věřiti denním listům.

S denními listy je to tak: sloupce musí být plné den co den.

Proto jsou někdy falešné zprávy v denních listech.

Proto ale přece rádi čteme denní listy.

Ctěme několik denních listů (*genit. case*, — “of the daily papers”).

But you must not always believe the daily papers.

With the daily papers it is so: the columns must be full day by day. Hence there are sometimes false advices in daily papers.

In spite of that we like to read the daily papers.

We read several daily papers.

Note 1. Adjectives ending in **í**, like **denní**, **dnešní**, **poslední**, **včerejší**, have the same termination in all genders and both numbers; and in the singular of the feminine gender they remain unchanged in all cases; in the masculine and neutre gender the genitive case is characterized by the termination **ího**, the dative by **ímu**, the locative and instrumental by **ím**, — corresponding with **ého**, **ému**, **ém** & **ým** of the main order of adjectives.

In the plural, their declension is the same in all three genders, showing the termination **ích** in the genitive and locative, **ím** in the dative, and **ími** in the instrumental case.

Note 2. There is also a class of adjectives derived from nouns denoting persons or animals, by means of the suffixes **ův**, **ova**, **ovo**, according to gender. They are called “possessive adjectives”, and their sense is rendered in English by the “possessive case” of the noun :

sousedův syn,	<i>soúsedooaf</i> <i>syn</i> ,	the neighbor's son;
sousedova dcera,	<i>soúsedová</i> <i>tsěrā</i> ,	the neighbor's daughter;
sousedovo dítě,	<i>soúsedová</i> <i>děet'ě</i> ,	the neighbor's child;
sousedovi synové,	<i>soúsedoví</i> <i>synořé</i> ,	the neighbor's sons;
sousedovy dcery (děti),	<i>soúsedoví</i> <i>tsěry</i> (<i>dět'i</i>),	the neighbor's daughters (children).

From feminine nouns they are derived by the suffixes **in**, **ina**, **ino** (**iny** in the plural, in colloquial usage):

ženin klobouk, *žeñin kloboúk*, the woman's (or wife's) bonnet;
ženiny šaty, pl. *žeñiny sháty*, the woman's (or wife's) clothes or dress.

Grammatically, these adjectives have their own mode of declension; but colloquially, they are declined just like adjectives of the main order : **hodný, á, é.**

Note 3. A few more examples of such possessive adjectives as are commonly in use, in connection with nouns of different gender, will make the student sufficiently familiar with them:

Otec, *øtøts*, the father :

otečův klobouk, m.	<i>øtsoof kloboúk</i> ,	the father's hat;
otecova čepice, f.	<i>øtsová chěpitsë</i> ,	the father's cap;
otecovo místo, n.	<i>øtsovõ meestõ</i> ,	the father's place;

Matka, *mätkă*, the mother;

matčin pokoj, m.	<i>mätchin pøkoy</i> ,	the mother's room;
matčina stolice, f.	<i>mätchinä stolitsë</i> ,	the mother's chair;
matčino slovo, n.	<i>mätchinõ slovõ</i> ,	the mother's word.

Sestra, *sestră*, the sister :

sestrín šál, m.	<i>sest-rshin shawl</i> ,	the sister's shawl;
sestrina taška, f.	<i>sest-rshinä tăshkă</i> ,	the sister's satchel;
sestrino piano, n.	<i>sest-rshinõ piãno</i> ,	the sister's piano.

Hoch, *hökh*, the boy :

hochův míč, m.	<i>hökhooof meeč</i> ,	the boy's ball;
hochova mapa, f.	<i>hökhová măpă</i> ,	the boy's map;
hochovo pero, n.	<i>hökhovõ perõ</i> ,	the boy's pen;

Holka, *holkă*, the girl :

holčin kufr, m.	<i>holchin küffer</i> ,	the girl's trunk;
holčina postel, f.	<i>holchinä postell</i> ,	the girl's bed;
holčino prádlo, n.	<i>holchinõ prádlõ</i> ,	the girl's linen.

REMARK. It will be noticed that in the derivatives from feminine nouns ending in *ka*, *ra*, the hard consonants *k*, *r*, change into the soft consonants *č*, *ř*: *matka*, *matčin*; *sestra*, *sestrin*.

LESSON XXII.

Mladý, á, é	<i>mlădee</i>	young	přítel, m.	<i>prshee-tel</i>	friend
mladší	<i>mlăd-shee</i>	younger	obchod, m.	<i>ob-khōd</i>	business
nejmladší	<i>ney-mlăd-shee</i>	youngest	obchodník, m.	<i>ob-khōd-nee-kh</i>	mer-
starý, á, é	<i>stăree</i>	old			chant, business man;
starší	<i>stăr-shee</i>	older	krám, m.	<i>krám</i>	store
nejstarší	<i>ney-stăr-shee</i>	oldest	sklad, m.	<i>sklăd</i>	warehouse
bohatší	<i>bohăt-shee</i>	richer	zboží, n.	<i>zbožee</i>	goods, stock
nejbohatší	<i>ney-bohăt-shee</i>	richest			of goods;
chudší	<i>khăd-shee</i>	poorer	železný, á, é	<i>želěznee,</i>	of iron;
nejehudší	<i>ney-khăd-shee</i>	poorest	železné zboží,	<i>želězné zbožee,</i>	hard-
nejposlednější	<i>ney-posled-nee-shee</i>				ware;
last of all, the very last			konkurent, m.	<i>concūrent,</i>	compet-
jak se jmeneuje?	<i>yák sě meněyě,</i>				itor;
what is his name?			lidi, lidé,	<i>lid'i, lidé,</i>	people
bud' jak bud',	<i>băd' yák băd',</i>	be it	jeden z (ze),	<i>yéden z (zě),</i>	one of
as it may; no matter how it is;			jeho	<i>yéhō</i>	his
není-li pravda?	<i>neyñi-li prăvda,</i>		zatím	<i>záteem</i>	} on the contrary
isn't it so?			naopak	<i>nă-opák</i>	
je-li možná!	<i>yelli móžná,</i>	is it pos-	mezi	<i>mězi</i>	among
sible!			přes	<i>prshěs</i>	over, across
já myslel,	<i>yá mis-lel,</i>	I thought	skoupý, á, é	<i>skoúpee</i>	miserly
oni myslí,	<i>oñi mislee,</i>	they think	štědrý, á, é	<i>shťedree</i>	liberal
bydlíte	<i>bidleetě</i>	you live (reside)	patří	<i>pătrshee</i>	belongs.
známý, á, é	<i>známee,</i>	known; (used as a noun) acquaintance;			
půl leta,	<i>pool letă,</i>	half a year;	ze všech,	<i>zě fshěkh,</i>	of all.

EXERCISES.

Jsem rád že jste tu.

Vy bydlíte teda v B.?

Ano; už přes rok.

Já mám přítele*) v B.

Je bohatý obchodník; — má veliký sklad — a krám plný zboží na Washington ulici.

Jaký má obchod?

Železné zboží. (Obchod v železném zboží).

Jak se jmenejte?

Jmenejte se Josef Baldwin; — znáte ho?

Znám ho; — je bohatý, — ale jeho konkurent p. Adams je bohatší, — a pan Fleming je nejbohatší.

Buď jak buď, pan Baldwin patří mezi nejbohatší obchodníky ve městě B.

Ano, jest jeden z nejbohatších obchodníků, — to je pravda.

Ale není pravda, že je skoupý; — naopak, — on je tuze štědrý.

Jeho soused přes ulici, pan Wild, je také můj známý; — myslím že je posud chudý muž.

Ano, je prý chudší než lidi myslí; — však není ten nejhudší obchodník ve městě.

I am glad that you are here.

You live, then, in B.?

Yes; already over a year.

I have a friend in B.

He is a rich merchant; — he has a large warehouse — and a store full of goods on Washington street.

What business has he?

Hardware. (A hardware business).

What is his name?

His name is Joseph Baldwin; — do you know him?

I know him; — he is rich, — but his competitor Mr. Adams is richer, — and Mr. Fleming is the richest.

Be it as it may, Mr. Baldwin belongs among the richest businessmen in the city of B.

Yes, he is one of the richest merchants, — that is true.

But it is not true, that he is miserly; — on the contrary, — he is very liberal.

His neighbor across the street, Mr. Wild, is also my acquaintance; — I think that he is still a poor man.

Yes, he is said to be poorer than people think ; — but he is not the poorest business man in town.

*) The noun **přítel** is somewhat irregular in its declension: **příteli**, *prshhee-telē*, in the genitive and accusative case (of a friend; a friend); **příteli**, the dative, also the vocative (to a friend; friend!). The plural is **přátelé**, *prshá-telé*, the friends; **přátel**, *prshá-tel*, of the friends.

Váš Robert je klerkem*), není-li pravda?

Ano, je) klerkem už půl leta.**

Myslím že Robert bude dobrý obchodník (or dobrým obchodníkem).

Robert je pilný hoch, — ale Frank je pilnější, — a Edward je nejpilnější ze všech.

Není Frank starší než Robert?

Ne; Robert je starší a Edward je nejstarší.

Je-li možná! — Já myslel, že Robert je mladší než Frank, — a Frank zatím je nejmladší.

Your Robert is a clerk, is he not?

Yes, he has been a clerk for half-a-year.

I think that Robert will be a good business man.

Robert is an industrious boy, — but Frank is more industrious, — and Edward is the most industrious of all.

Is not Frank older than Robert?

No, Robert is older, and Edward is the oldest.

Is it possible! — I thought that Robert was younger than Frank, — and Frank, on the contrary, is the youngest.

*) The noun **klerk** is here used in the instrumental case, answering the question **čím je?** *cheem yě*, what is he?

This is a common construction. — We may ask: **Co je váš syn?** *co je vash syn?* what is your son? — The answer would be: **On je klerk,** *he is a clerk.*

We may also ask: **Čím je váš syn?** (which, in English, is identical with the first question;) the answer would be: **On je klerkem,** *he is a clerk.*

In a similar manner we say in Bohemian, using the instrumental case:

Jsem farmerem,	I am a farmer;
on je farmerem,	he is a farmer;
on je obchodníkem,	he is a merchant;
je generalem,	he is a general; etc.

) **Je, on je, on jest, *he is*, the simple present tense of **býti**, to be, is also used in Bohemian for the perfect tense *he has been*. (See Lesson IX, Note 1.) Similarly we say:

jsem tu rok, I have been here a year;

já jsem tu rok, “ “ “ “ “ “

jsem farmerem deset let, I have been a farmer for ten years;

jsme doma týden, we have been at home a week;

jsme sami přes rok, we have been alone over a year; etc.

Máte také dcery?	Have you also daughters?
Mám dceru; je ještě mladší než hoch Frank.	I have a daughter; she is still younger than the boy Frank.
To je nejposlednější dítě.	That is the very last child.
To je má celá rodina.	That is my whole family.

Note 1. In the English language, the comparative degree of adjectives is formed either by adding **er**, or by placing **more** before them: *young, younger; industrious, more industrious.*

The superlative degree is formed either by adding **est (st)**, or by placing **most** before the adjective: *youngest; most industrious.*

In Bohemian, the comparative degree is formed by adding **ší** or **ejší** (sometimes **ejší**) in place of the final **ý (á, é)**:

mladý, á, é *mlădee*, young; **mlad-ší,** *mlădshee*, younger;
pilný, á, é *pillnee*, industrious; **piln-ější,** *pilln̄eyshee*, more industrious.

The superlative degree is always formed by prefixing **nej, ney**, to the comparative degree:

nej-mladší,	<i>neymlădshee.</i>	youngest;
nej-pilnější,	<i>neypilln̄eyshee,</i>	most industrious.

Note 2. Some adjectives, in Bohemian as well as in English, have an irregular comparison. The most common of them are the following:

dobrý,	<i>dobree,</i>	good;	lepší,	<i>lepshee,</i>	better;
zlý,	<i>zlee,</i>	bad;	horší,	<i>horshee,</i>	worse;
malý,	<i>mălee,</i>	small;	menší,	<i>menshee,</i>	smaller;
velký,	<i>velkee,</i>	large;	větší,	<i>vyětshee,</i>	larger;
dłouhý,	<i>dloňhee,</i>	long;	delší,	<i>delshee,</i>	longer;
vysoký,	<i>visōkee,</i>	high;	vyšší,	<i>vishee,</i>	higher;
hluboký,	<i>hlūbokee,</i>	deep;	hlubší,	<i>hlūbshee,</i>	deeper;
široký,	<i>shirokee,</i>	wide;	širší,	<i>shirshee,</i>	wider;
daleký,	<i>dălekee,</i>	far;	další,	<i>dălshee,</i>	farther;

blízký,	<i>bleeskee,</i>	near;	bližší,	<i>blishee,</i>	nearer;
hezký,	<i>hesskee,</i>	pretty,(nice);	hezčí,	<i>hess-chee,</i>	prettier;
lehký,	<i>lēhkee,</i>	light;	lehčí,	<i>lēh-chee,</i>	lighter;
měkký,	<i>myēkee,</i>	soft;	měkčí,	<i>myēk-chee,</i>	softer.

The superlative is formed without exception by prefixing **nej** to the comparative.

LESSON XXIII.

Já jel,	<i>yá yell,</i>	I rode, I went;	domov, m.	<i>dōmof,</i>	a home;
čekal,	<i>chekāl,</i>	(he) waited;	obydlí, f.	<i>ōbidlee,</i>	dwelling;
pravil,	<i>prāvil,</i>	(he) said;	světnice, f.	<i>swyētñitsě</i>	} room;
vešel,	<i>věshell</i>	went in;	sednice, f.	<i>sedñitsě</i>	}
psala,	<i>psālā,</i>	(she) wrote;	ložnice, f.	<i>lož-ñitsě,</i>	bedroom;
neviděl jsem,	<i>něvid'el sem,</i>	I did not see;	dráha, f.	<i>dráhă,</i>	road, railroad;
milujem se,	<i>milūyem se,</i>	we love each other;	po dráze,	<i>pō drázě,</i>	by railroad;
postavím si,	<i>postāveem si,</i>	I shall build for myself;	nádraží, n.	<i>nádrá-žee,</i>	depot;
ať to stojí,	<i>at' tō stoyee,</i>	let it cost;	pohodlí, n.	<i>pōhodlee,</i>	comfort;
řka,	<i>rshkă,</i>	saying;	pohodlný, á, é,	<i>pōhod'elnee,</i>	com- fortable;
řekl jsem,	<i>rshěkl sem,</i>	I said, I told; I have said (told);	švagrová,	<i>shwāgrová,</i>	sister-in-law;
mluvil jsem,	<i>mlūvil sem,</i>	I have spoken; I spoke;	dítko, n.	<i>d'ēetkō,</i>	child, baby;
slyšel jsem,	<i>slishell sem:</i>	I have heard; I heard;	nemoc, f.	<i>němots,</i>	sickness;
sednouti si,	<i>sednoūt si,</i>	to sit down;	všelico,	<i>fshellitsō,</i>	different things;
tázati se,	<i>tázāt sě,</i>	to ask, to in- quire;	dlouhlo,	<i>dloūhō,</i>	long, a long time;
			onehdy,	<i>ōněh-de,</i>	the other day;
			zdráv, a, o,	<i>zdráv,</i>	well, healthy;
			unaven, a, o,	<i>ūnăven,</i>	tired;
			takový, á, é,	<i>tākovee,</i>	such;
			vedle,	<i>vě-dlě,</i>	next to; side by side;
			věru,	<i>vyěrū,</i>	indeed;

zůstati, <i>zoostāt</i> , to stay, to remain;	pro,	<i>prō,</i>	for.
svlékni se, <i>svlékñi sě</i> , undress;	napřed,	<i>näprshed,</i>	first, ahead;
lehl jsem si, <i>lē-hl sem si</i> , I lied down;			
se, sebe, <i>sě, sěbě</i> , oneself; myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself;			
			ourselves, yourselves, themselves;
si, sobě, <i>si, sōbyč</i> , to oneself; to myself, etc. etc.			
sebou, <i>sěboú</i> , by or with oneself; etc. etc.			

EXERCISES.

Já **jel***) onehdy do Chicago; — mám tam bratra; — chtěl jsem ho vidět, — též jeho obydlí; — on čekal na mě v nádraží. — Já přijel po dráze C. & NW.

Pravil mi: “Rád tě vidím, bratrě! — Čekal jsem tebe; — ukážu ti můj domov. — Dáme tobě naši největší ložnici.

Musíš zůstat u mě aspoň týden; — tak teda pojď se mnou.”

Řekl jsem mu, že já také rád ho vidím. — Jsi zdráv? tázal jsem se ho.

“Ano, jsem tuze zdráv”, pravil on; “má žena je také zdráva

I went the other day to Chicago; — I have a brother there; — I wanted to see him, — also his dwelling; — he waited for me at the depot. — I came by the C. & NW. railroad.

He said to me: “I am glad to see thee, brother! — I have been expecting thee; — I will show to thee my home. — We shall give (to) thee our largest bedroom.

Thou must stay with me (i. e. at my house) at least a week; — so, then, come with me.”

I told him that I also was glad to see him? — Are you well? I asked him.

“Yes, I am very well”, said he; “my wife is also well and the baby

*) *Jeti, yeti* (commonly *yet*), to ride, to go by railroad or otherwise. *Já jsem jel, já sem yell*, I rode, I went, — I have gone; *já jel, já yell*, is the past tense with the auxilliary *jsem* left out, as explained in Lesson X. The same applies to *já přijel, já prshí-yell*, I came (by train or other means of conveyance). From the verb *jeti, yeti* (or *yet*), to ride, or to go by some conveyance, about as many new verbs can be derived by prefixes as from *jítí, yeetí* (or *yeet*) to go. See Lesson XIII, Note 6.

a dítko je také zdrávo. — Jsme spokojeni a milujem se.”

A věru, na něm neviděl jsem žádnou nemoc. — Švagrová psala pravdu o něm, že je zdráv.

Šel jsem s nim. — Za půl hodiny byli jsme u něho. — Já šel napřed, on za mnou. — Jeho žena též ráda mě viděla; — ona také mě čekala.

Přinesl jsem jí všelico; — něco pro ní, něco pro její dítko. — Mluvil jsem s ní dlouho o všeličem, — a slyšel jsem od ní mnoho nového. — Ono bylo skoro všecko nové pro mě.

Myslil jsem si: Mají pěkný dům, — pohodlný domov. — Tolik světnic! — Já si postavím takový dům; — malou ložnici pro sebe a dvě veliké ložnice pro rodinu. — Postavím sobě též vedle písárnu.

Ať to stojí něco; — postavím to pro sebe. — Anebo koupím si pěkný dům.

Sedl jsem si na sofa, řka: Jsem unaven!

“Udělej si pohedlí, — svlékni se,” — pravil bratr.

Já se svlékl a lehl jsem si.

is well, too.—We are contented and we love each other.”

And indeed, on him I didn't see any sickness.—Sister-in-law wrote the truth about him that he was well.

I went with him.—In half an hour we were at his house.—I went in first, he (followed) after me. — His wife also was glad to see me; — she also expected me.

I brought to her different things; —something for her, something for her baby.—I spoke with her long about different things, — and I heard from her many news.—It was nearly all news to me.

I thought to myself: They have a nice house,—a comfortable home. —So many rooms!—I shall build me such a house;—a small bedroom for myself, and two large bedrooms for the family. — I shall build myself also next to it an office.

Let it cost something; — I shall build it for myself.—Or, I shall buy me a nice house.

I sat down on the sofa, saying: I am tired!

“Make thyself comfortable,—undress (thyself),” — said my brother.

I undressed and lay (myself) down.

Note 1. The personal pronouns **já, ty, on (oma, ono)**, show the following variation :

Já,	<i>yá,</i>	I;	ty,	<i>te,</i>	thou;
mě,	<i>myě,</i>	me;	tě, tebe,	<i>tě, těbě,</i>	thee;
mi, mně,	<i>me, mňe,</i>	to me;	ti, tobě,	<i>tí, tōbyě,</i>	to thee;
se mnou,	<i>sě mnoů,</i>	with me;	s tebou,	<i>stěboů,</i>	with thee;
on, ono,	<i>ón, ónč,</i>	he, it;	ona,	<i>ónč,</i>	she;
ho,	<i>hō,</i>	him, it;	ji, jí,	<i>ye, yee,</i>	her, to her;
jeho,	<i>yěhō,</i>	his, its;	její,	<i>yěyee,</i>	her, hers;
mu, jemu, němu,	<i>mū, yěmū, němū,</i>	to him, to it;			
v něm,	<i>v něm,</i>	in him, in it;	v ní,	<i>v nīee,</i>	in her;
s nim,	<i>s nīim,</i>	with him, with it;	s ní,	<i>s nīee,</i>	with her.

Note 2. Adjectives sometimes take an indefinite form:

on je zdráv, *ón yě zdráv,* he is well (or healthy);
ona je zdráva, *ónča yě zdrávā,* she is well;
ono je zdrávo, *ónčo yě zdrávō,* it is well;

but when placed before a noun, the adjective must always have its definite form: **zdravý muž,** *zdrávee moož,* a healthy man; **zdravá žena,** *zdrává ženā,* a healthy woman; **zdravé dítě,** *zdrávē d'eeťe,* a healthy child.

The following indefinite adjectives are of common occurrence:

nemocen,	<i>němotsen,</i>	instead of	nemoený,	<i>němotsnee,</i>	sick;
mrtev,	<i>mertev,</i>	" "	mrtvý,	<i>mertvee,</i>	dead;
stár,	<i>stár,</i>	" "	starý,	<i>stāree,</i>	old;
moeen,	<i>mōtsen,</i>	" "	moený,	<i>motsnee,</i>	capable;
znám,	<i>znám,</i>	" "	známý,	<i>známee,</i>	known;
vesel,	<i>vě-sell,</i>	" "	veselý,	<i>vesselee,</i>	cheerful;
práv,	<i>práv,</i>	" "	pravý,	<i>prăvee,</i>	just;
bos,	<i>bōs,</i>	" "	bosý,	<i>bosee,</i>	barefoot.

Adjectives ending in **vý** and **ny** frequently take the indefinite form in the nominative case, changing their termination into **v** and **en** (**va**, **na** in the feminine, **vo**, **no** in the neutre gender).

Note 3. As observed in Note 2, Lesson XIII, the past tense of regular Bohemian verbs is formed from the infinitive by an **I** in place of the usual termination **ti**:

jeti,	<i>yet̄i or yet,</i>	to ride;	jel,	<i>yell,</i>	rode;
čekati,	<i>chekāt,</i>	to wait;	čekal,	<i>chekāl,</i>	waited;
mluviti,	<i>mlūvit,</i>	to speak;	mluvil,	<i>mlūvil,</i>	spoke;

But some verbs ending in **outi** show a slight deviation from this rule, changing **outi** into **ul**, and having besides a short form of the past tense, in which the letter **I** is substituted for the whole termination **nouti**, being attached immediately to the stem of the verb:

lehnouti,	<i>leh-noúťi</i> (or <i>leh-noúťt</i>),	to lie down;	lehnul,	lehl,	<i>leh-nůl,</i>
					<i>lē-hl,</i> lay down;
sednouti,	<i>sednoúťt,</i>	to sit down;	sednul,	sedl,	<i>sednůl, sedl,</i> sat down;
svléknouti,	<i>svlék-noúťt,</i>	to undress;	svléknul,	svlékl,	<i>svléknůl, svlékl,</i> undressed.

The verb **svléknouti** has also an irregular form of the infinitive: **svléci,** *svlé-tsi.* In common conversation we hear **slíknout,** **slíkl,** **slečený,** *sleeknoúťt,* (to undress), *sleekl,* *slěchňee* (undressed, — as past participle and adjective).

LESSON XXIV.

Ať jde,	<i>ăt̄ dě,</i>	let him (her, it)	to je škoda,	<i>tō yě shkodă,</i>	that is a
		come, or go;			pity;
zůstanem,	<i>zoostānem,</i>	we shall stay;	pohostění,	<i>pohostěñee,</i>	hospitality;
zůstaň,	<i>zoostāň,</i>	stay (thou);	návštěva,	<i>náfshťevă,</i>	visit;
ukaž,	<i>ükăšh,</i>	show (thou), let see;	často,	<i>chăstō,</i>	often;
přijeti,	<i>prshi-yet,</i>	to come (by rail-	bud...nebo,	<i>břd...nebō,</i>	either...or;
		way, etc.);	nemám co,	<i>nemám tsō,</i>	I have no-
přijedem,	<i>prshi-yědem,</i>	we shall			thing (to....);
		come (by some conveyance);			

lím se mi, *leebee sě me*, I like it
 (him, her); it pleases me;
bude se jim líbit, *břdě sě yim leebit*,
 they will like it; it will please them;
bude jim milé, *břdě yim milé*, it will
 please them:
doufám, *dořfám*, I hope;
v Chicago*), *fchicago*, in Chicago.

přijedou, *prshi-yědoň*, they will
 come;
povídá jsem, *poveeděl sem*, I said;
slíbiti, *sleebit*, to promise;
tajiti, *täyit*, to hide;
ukrývati, *ükreevět*, to cover up,
 to hide, to conceal;
nemůžem, *nemoožem*, we can not;

EXERCISES.

My zůs anem v Chicago, — pravil bratr; — pro nás je to dobré místo; — ukaž nám lepší! — Ať rodina jde sem, — a zůstaň zde s námi.

Já pravil: Vy máte zde pěkný domov; — líbí se mi u vás; — myslím že často přijedem k vám, —

We shall stay in Chicago, — said (my) brother; — for us it is a good place; — show (to) us a better one! — Let (your) family come here, — and stay here with us.

I said: You have here a nice home; — I like it here (i. e. at your house, with you, — *u vás*); — I think that we

*) If we insist upon declining **Chicago** like a Bohemian noun of the neutre gender (ending in *o*), we should say in the locative case: **v Chicagu**, *fchicagū*. However, this is rather an exception among the Bohemians in America, names of places of foreign origin being usually left unchanged, the same as in English. This may not exactly satisfy unyielding grammarians, but it is a rule dictated by common sense, the inflection of such proper names being not only useless, but in many cases perfectly absurd, and often impossible. Hence we say: **do Milwaukee**, *v Milwaukee*, **za Milwaukee** (to Milwaukee, in M., beyond M.); **do Kewaunee**, **do Spring Valley**, **do Dubuque**, **do Des Moines**, etc. To attempt an inflection of such names, according to the rules of some declension of Bohemian nouns, would be an intolerable absurdity. The name of **Chicago**, indeed, yields easily to the Bohemian declension, and hence it is now and then declined; the same is true of some other names. There are also a few names of places well known throughout the world, which are always declined in Bohemian, presenting no difficulty to such a process; such are for instance: **New York**, — **v New Yorku**, **do New Yorku**, **za New Yorkem** (in New York, to N. Y., beyond N. Y.); **Boston**, — **v Bostonu**, **do Bostonu**, **za Bostonem**; **Washington**, **do Washingtonu**; and some others. — These names are masculine, by force of their termination.

bud' já, nebo jeden z nás. — Ale zůstat s vámi nemůžem. — Náš domov je na venku.

Oni oba pravili: To je škoda!

Tázal jsem se jich, kdy přijedou k nám na návštěvu; — povídal jsem, že dáme jim také hezkou světnici; — že se jim bude líbit u nás, — jako se mně líbí u nich.

Slíbili přijeti na návštěvu. — Doufám že pohostění od nás bude milé jim, jako je milé mně od nich.

Ten den mluvil jsem s nimi dlouho; — nemám co tajiti před nimi; — nemám co ukryvati. — Tak mluvili jsme, až nebylo už co mluviti.

Note. The personal pronouns **my, vy, oni** (**ony f., ona, n.**) show the following variation, which has already become somewhat familiar to the student from the preceding lessons :

my,	<i>me,</i>	we;	vy,	<i>ve,</i>	you;
nás,	<i>nás,</i>	us;	vás,	<i>vás,</i>	you;
nám,	<i>nám,</i>	to us;	vám,	<i>vám,</i>	to you;
s námi,	<i>snámi,</i>	with us;	s vámi,	<i>svámi,</i>	with you;

oni, (ony, ona),	<i>ðñi, (ðne, ðnă),</i>	they;
jich,	<i>yikh,</i>	of them, them;
jim,	<i>yim,</i>	to them;
je,	<i>yě,</i>	them;
v nich,	<i>vñikh,</i>	in them, (o nich, about them; od nich, from them; etc.)
s nimi,	<i>sñime,</i>	with them; (za nimi, behind or after them. etc.)

shall often come to you, — either I, or one of us.—But to stay with you we can not. — Our home is in the country.

They both said: That is a pity!

I asked them, when they would come to us on a visit; — I said, that we should give (to) them also a nice room; — that they will like it at our place (**u nás**), — as I like it at their house (**u nich**).

They promised to come on a visit. — I hope that hospitality from us will be pleasing *to them*, as it is pleasing *to me from them*.

That day I spoke with them a long time; — I have nothing to hide from them; — I have nothing to conceal.— So we spoke, until there was nothing further to speak about.

LESSON XXV.

Státi,	<i>stát'i (stát)</i> , to stand; to cost;	tisíc, m.	<i>tiseets</i> ,	thousand;
stojí,	<i>stoyee</i> , stands; costs;	stát, m.	<i>stát</i> ,	state;
stál,	<i>stál</i> ,	úcta, f.	<i>ootstă̄</i> ,	respect;
mluví,	<i>mlüvee</i> ,	rozprávka, f. <i>ros-práfkă</i>	<i>talk, conversation,</i>	
půjčil,	<i>püyčhil</i> (colloquially: <i>püchil</i>), lent, loaned;	hovor, m.		<i>discourse;</i>
snáší se,	<i>snáshee sě</i> ,	zoubek, m.	<i>zoūbek</i> ,	little tooth;
smál se,	<i>smál sě</i> ,	něco,	<i>ñetsō̄</i> ,	some;
podívej se,	<i>pod'eevey sě</i> , look (thou);	než,	<i>nesh</i> ,	than;
podívejte se,	<i>pod'eeveytě sě</i> , look (you);	rozen, a, o	<i>rōzen</i>	<i>born</i>
sezde se,	<i>seydě sě</i> , (he, she, it) will meet;	narozen, a, o	<i>närōzen</i>	
		právě jako,	<i>právyě yákō̄</i> ,	same as;
		nebyla u nás,	<i>nebillă ūnáss</i> ,	she was not at our house; she has not been to see us.

EXERCISES.

Můj bratr je posud mladý; — je mladší než já. — Já jsem o dvě leta starší než on.

Dům mého bratra stojí teprv rok; — stál pět tisíc*) dollarů; — sou-sed půjčil něco peněz mému bra-tru.

On má rád mého bratra; — on mluví o mému bratru s úctou. — S mým bratrem každý se snáší dobře.

My brother is still young; — he is younger than I. — I am (by) two years older than he.

The house of my brother stands only a year; — it cost five thousand dollars; — the neighbor loaned some money to my brother.

He likes my brother; — he speaks of my brother with respect. — With my brother everybody agrees well.

*) Jeden tisíc, *yeden tiseets*, one thousand; dva, *tři*, *čtyry tisíce*, *dvă*, *trši*, *štíri tiseets*, two, three, four thousand; pět tisíc, *pyět tiseets*, five thousand; šest tisíc, *shěst tiseets*, six thousand; and so forth.

Moje švagrová je ze státu Indiana*), — rozena v Terre Haute; — má žena je z Ohio.

Mojí švagrové) líbí se v Chicago tuze; — mé ženě líbí se více na venku.**

Rozprávka neb hovor s mojí švagrovou jest milý, — velmi milý, — právě jako s mojí ženou. — Nevím kdy sejde se s mou ženou zas; — nebyla u nás dávno.

Podívejte se na moje dítko, — má už zoubek! — pravila švagrová a smála se. — Hošík také smál se na mě. — To je mé dobré dítko!
pravila matka.

My sister-in-law is from the state of Indiana, — born in Terre Haute; my wife is from Ohio.

My sister-in-law likes it in Chicago very much; — my wife likes it more in the country.

A conversation or discourse with my sister-in-law is pleasant, — very pleasant,—the same as with my wife. —I don't know when she will meet (with) my wife again; — she has not been to see us a long time.

Look at my baby,—he has already a tooth!— said my sister-in-law and laughed.—The little boy also smiled at me.—That is my good baby! said (his) mother.

N o t e 1. The so-called possessive pronoun **můj, můy** (my, mine), takes in the feminine gender the form **moje, má**, and in the neutre gender **moje, mé**. Hence we say: **můj bratr**, my brother; **moje sestra** or **má sestra**, my sister; **moje dítě** or **mé dítě**, my child. — The variation of this pronoun is shown in the following table :

můj, m.	můy;	moje, f.	má, f.	moyč,	má;	my, mine;
mého,	měhō;	mojí,	mé,	moyee,	mé;	of my;
mému,	mémü;	mojí,	mé,	"	" ;	to my;
v mé,	vmém;	v mojí,	v mé,	v "	v " ;	in my;
s mým,	smeem;	s mojí,	s mou,	smoyee,	smoū,	with my.

*) Or **Indiany.** See foot note in Lesson XXIV.

) **Mojí švagrové, mé ženě, is the dative case, responding to the question **komu?** (to whom?) **Komu se líbí?** to whom is it pleasing? (whom does it please?) — **Líbí se mé švagrové;** — **líbí se mé ženě;** — it pleases (to) my sister-in-law; it pleases (to) my wife.

The neutre gender **moje**, **mé**, shows in the other cases the same variation as the masculine **můj**, excepting the accusative (or objective) and the vocative case, which are like the nominative: **to je mé dítě**, this is my child; **vidím mé dítě**, I see my child; **ó mé dítě!** oh my child!

Note 2. The possessive pronoun **tvůj**, m., **tvůry** (**tvoje** or **tvá**, f., **tvůry**, **tvá**; **tvoje** or **tvé**, n., **tvé**), thy, thine, — agrees in its declension perfectly with **můj** (**moje**, **má**, **mé**).

The same is true of the possessive pronoun **svůj** (**svoje**, **svá**, f.; **svoje**, **své**, n.), **svůry** (**swoye**, **svá**, **swé**), which means “one’s own”, but frequently stands for **můj**, **tvůj**, **jeho**, **její** (my, thy, his, her), **náš**, **váš**, **jich** (our, your, their).

Moji lidé ,	<i>moye lidé</i> ,	my folks;
půda , f.	<i>poodă</i> ,	ground, soil;
krov , m.	<i>krof</i> ,	roof;
příbuzný , á,	<i>prshee-búznee</i> ,	relative, kinsman, relation;
vlastní ,	<i>vlăst-níe</i> ,	own;
šťasten ,	<i>shťásten</i> ,	happy;
nazpět ,	<i>năspyět</i> ,	back;
spěchám ,	<i>spyě-khám</i> ,	I hasten, I hurry;

radší jsem ,	<i>răchi sem</i> , I like better to be;
nejradší jsem ,	<i>neyrăchi sem</i> , I like best to be;
nerad jsem ,	<i>nerăd sem</i> , I do not like to be;
sejdu se ,	<i>seydŭ sě</i> , I meet;
kolem sebe ,	<i>kolem sěbě</i> , around me (him, her, us, etc.)

EXERCISES.

Mí přátelé*) v Chicagu všichni rádi mě viděli; — škoda že moji lidé nebyli se mnou.

Nerad jsem pryč od mých lidí; — pokaždé spěchám nazpět k mým lidem.

Rád vidím své přátele; — rád se sejdu se svými příbuznými; — ale

My friends in Chicago all liked (were glad) to see me; — it is a pity that my folks were not with me.

I do not like to be away from my folks; — every time I hasten back to my folks.

I like to see my friends; — I like to meet (with) my relatives; — but I like

*) See foot-note in Lesson XXII.

radši jsem doma. — **Opravdu, nej-**
radši jsem doma s mými lidmi.

Nejradši vidím kolem sebe své
lidi. — **Jsem šťasten se svými lid-**
mí ve svém vlastním domově, — **na**
své vlastní půdě, — **pod svým vlast-**
ním krovem.

Note 2. The plural of **můj** m., **moje** or **má** f., and **moje** or **mé** n., is as follows : **moji, mí, moye, mee, m.**

moje, mé, moyč, mé, f.

moje, má, moyč, má, n.

In common discourse **moje, mé** is used in the neutre as well as in the feminine gender. In English, we invariably employ *my* and *mine*.

In the plural number the following variation takes place :

moji, mí; moje mé; moyi, mee; moyč, mé; — my, mine;
mých, meekh, of my (**od mých**, from my; **v mých**, in my; etc.), of mine;
mým, meem, to my, to mine;
s mými, smeeme, with my, with mine; (**za mými**, after or behind mine, etc.)

The plural of **tvůj** m., **tvoje, tvá** f., **tvoje, tvé** n. (thy, thine) is perfectly analogous: **tvoji, tví** m., **twoyi, twee;** **tvoje, tvé** f. & n. **twoyč, twé** (thy, thine); **tvých, tweekh,** of thine; **tvým, tweem,** to thine; **s tvými, stweemi,** with thine.

LESSON XXVI.

Základ, -m. <i>základ</i> ,	foundation;
kolik světnic, <i>kolik swyčet-nits</i> ,	how
	many rooms;
kuchyně, f. <i>kukhiñe</i> ,	kitchen
sklep, m. <i>sklep</i> ,	cellar

zahrada, f. <i>zahrădă</i> ,	garden
zahrádka, f. <i>zahrădka</i> ,	small garden
strom, m. <i>strom</i> ,	tree
stromy, pl. <i>stromy</i> ,	{ trees
stromoví, n. <i>stromovée</i> ,	

patro, n.	<i>pătrō,</i>	story	ovoce, n.	<i>ōvotsě,</i>	fruit
studně, f.	<i>stūdñe,</i>	well	ovočné,	<i>ōvotsnē,</i>	fruit-bearing
cisterna, f.	<i>tsisternā,</i>	cistern	nesou,	<i>nesoū,</i>	they bear
altán, m.	<i>ältán,</i>	bower	mírva, f.	<i>mervă,</i>	manure
plot, m.	<i>plot,</i>	fence	v letě,	<i>vleťe,</i>	in summer
docela,	<i>dotselđ,</i>	quite	v zimě,	<i>vzimyě,</i>	in winter
úplně,	<i>oopelňe,</i>	perfectly	z jara,	<i>zyă-ră,</i>	in the spring
dříve, <i>drshee-vě</i> (or <i>drsheef</i>)		before	půda, f.	<i>poodă,</i>	land
prve, <i>pervě,</i>		fore	akr, m.	<i>äker,</i>	acre
je-li pravda? <i>yelli prăvdă</i>		isn't it	zbytek, m.	<i>zby-tek,</i>	remainder
že ne?	<i>žě ně?</i>	so?	je, jest, <i>yě, yest,</i>	there is, there are;	
			pouze,	<i>poüzě,</i>	only.

EXERCISES.

Váš dům je nový, je-li pravda?
 Ano, náš dům je docela nový.
 Základ našeho domu je dobrý.

Ten velký lot patří k vašemu domu, že ne?

Ten lot patří k našemu domu; — je to zbytek akru půdy co jsme měli dříve.

Co je ve vašem domě? kolik světnic máte?

V našem domě je kuchyně, pět světnic a dobrý sklep, — studený v letě, teplý v zimě.

Doufám že jste spokojeni s vaším domem (or se svým domem).

Ano, jsme úplně spokojeni s naším domem.

Váš dům má dvě patra, že ne?

Ne; pouze jedno patro.

Your house is new, isn't it?
 Yes, our house is quite new.
 The foundation of our house is good.

That large lot belongs to your house, does it not?

That lot belongs to our house; — it is a remainder of the acre of land (what) we had before.

What is in your house? how many rooms have you?

In our house there is a kitchen, five rooms and a good cellar, — cold in summer, warm in winter.

I hope that you are satisfied with your house.

Yes, we are perfectly satisfied with our house.

Your house has two stories, hasn't it?

No; only one story.

Myslím že máte u vašeho domu malou zahradu a za vaším domem studni, též cisternu.

Ano, naše místo je pěkné; — na naší zahradě máme altán; — kolem naší zahrady je vysoký plot. — Je to příjemná zahrádka.

I think that you have by your house a small garden and back of your house a well, also a cistern.

Yes, our place is nice; — in our garden we have a bower; — around our garden there is a high fence. — It is a pleasant little garden.

Naši lidé mají rádi stromoví*). — Naše stromy jsou ovocné. — Z jara dáváme**) mrvu k našim ovocným stromům. — Rád sedám**) s našimi lidmi ve stínu našich stromů.

Our folks like trees. — Our trees are fruit-bearing. — In the spring we put manure to our fruit-trees. — I like to sit with our folks in the shadow of our trees.

Note 1. The possessive pronoun **náš**, (naše, f. and n.) shows the following variation:

(*Masculine and neutre gender.*)

náš , m.	naše , n.	<i>násh, náshč, náshčhō, náshčhōr, náshčhōm, vnáshčhō</i> ,	our, (ours); of our; our (in the accus. or objective case); to our; in our, (o našem , about our; etc);
našeho ,			
našemu ,			
v našem ,			

(*Feminine gender.*)

naše ,	<i>náshč,</i>	our, ours;
naši ,	<i>náshi,</i>	our (in the accus. or objective case);
naší ,	<i>náshee,</i>	of our, to our; (v naší , in our; s naší , with our; etc.)

*) Stromoví, *stromovée*, is a collective noun and means trees (*stromy*) in general.

**) Dáti, *dáti*, to give; dávati, *dáváti*, to give repeatedly, to use to give; dáváme, *dávámě*, we use to give; we are giving. See Lesson XIII., Note 5. — Seděti, *seděti*, to sit; sedaťl, *sedáťl*, to sit repeatedly, to use to sit; sedám, I use to sit.

(Plural of all genders.)

naši, m. **naše**, f. & n. *năshī, năshē*, our, ours;

našich, *năshikh*, of our; (**v našich**, in our; etc.)

našim, *năshim*, to our;

s našimi, *snăshimi*, with our; (**za našimi**, beyond or back of our; etc.)

Note 2. The pronoun **váš** (**vaše**, f. and n.) is perfectly analogous with **náš** in its declension. (Instrumental case m. & n. gender singular, omitted above: **s našim**, **s vašim**, *snăsheem*, *svăsheem*, with ours, with yours.)

The English words *their* and *theirs* are both expressed by **jich**, — in common discourse nearly always **jejich**; *yikh, yĕyikh*. This is in fact the genitive of the personal pronoun **oni** (**ony, ona**), *they*, and naturally remains unchanged. For instance:

Jich dům, jich domy, or **jejich dům, jejich domy**; *yikh dūm, dōmi; yĕyikh dūm, dōmi*; their house, their houses.

Ten dům jest jejich, ten dům yest yĕyikh, that house is theirs. — **Ty domy jsou jejich, ty dōmi soū yĕyikh**, those houses are theirs.

LESSON XXVII.

The student is already somewhat acquainted with the indicative pronouns **ten**, **ta**, **to**, this *or* that; plural: **ti**, **ty**, **ta**, **tí**, **ty**, **tú**, these *or* those (in common discourse **ty** for all genders). Hence, in a short practical review of their variations he will only meet old acquaintances.

Lidé,	<i>lidé</i>	people	kuželná,	<i>kūželnă</i> , bowling-alley;
lidi,	<i>lidí</i>		zábava,	<i>zábavă</i> , amusement;
stavěti,	<i>stăvyět</i>	to build	bydlí,	<i>bidlee</i> , lives; they live;
stavení,	<i>stăvěnīe</i>	building	co bydlí,	<i>tsō bidlee</i> , who lives (lit. what lives);
zděný dům,	<i>zděnēe dūm</i>	{ brick	nic nechybí,	<i>ñits někhibee</i> , nothing
cihelný dům,	<i>tsihelnee dūm</i>	{ house		is wanting;
střecha,	<i>strshē-khă</i> ,	roof		

šindel,	<i>shindell,</i>	shingle	může,	<i>moožě,</i>	can, may;
učitel,	<i>üchitell,</i>	teacher	býti za dobré,	<i>beet'i ză dobré,</i>	to be on good terms;
pokojný, á, é,	<i>pokoynee,</i>	quiet	na pravo,	<i>nă prăvăd,</i>	to the right;
prázny, á, é,	<i>práznee,</i>	vacant	na levo,	<i>nă lăvăd,</i>	to the left.
jistě,	<i>yist'ě,</i>	surely, certainly;			

EXERCISES.

Ten dům je věru pěkný; — je to zděný dům.

Střecha toho domu je ze šindele, není?

Myslím že je. — Nic nechybí tomu domu; — jest příjemno bydleti v tom domě; — s tím domem každý může býti spokojen.

Ta zahrada má velkou cenu. — V té zahradě je mnoho ovoeného stromoví.

Tu zahradu mám radši než park. — Máme také kuželnu v té zahradě, pro naši (or pro svou) zábavu.

To místo s tím stavením a s touto zahradou má vysokou cenu.

Ti lidé co bydlí vedle nás, jsou pokojní sousedé; — žádný z těch lidí není zlý; — se všemi těmi lidmi jsme za dobré.

Viděl jsem doktora jít k těm lidem na pravo od nás; — jistě někdo je nemocen.

That house is indeed nice; — it is a brick house.

The roof of that house is of shingle (i. e. covered with shingles), is it not?

I think it is.—Nothing is wanting to that house; — it is agreeable to live in that house;—with that house everybody can be satisfied.

That garden has a large value. — In that garden there are many fruit-trees.

That garden I like better than a park.—We have also a bowling-alley in that garden, for our amusement.

That place with the building and garden has a high value.

The people who live next to us, are quiet neighbors; — nobody (not one) of those people is bad;—with all those people we are on good terms.

I saw the doctor go to those people to the right of us;—surely somebody is sick.

Kdo jsou ti lidé na levo? — Na levo od nás bydlí učitel, pan Stanton, se svou (i. e. s jeho) rodinou.

Ty loty za námi jsou prázné; — ale budou prý stavět na těch loktech.

Kolik těch lotů je? — Myslím že je šest těch lotů.

Who are those people to the left?
— To the left of us lives a teacher,
Mr. Stanton, with his family.

Those lots back of us are vacant;
— but, it is said, they will build on
those lots.

How many of those lots are there?
— I think that there are six of those
lots.

Note 1. The variation of the indicative pronouns employed in the foregoing is shown to be as follows :

ten, m. to, n. těn, tō, this, that;
toho, *tōhō*, of this, of that;
tomu, *tōmū*, to this, to that;
v tom, *ftōm*, in this, in that;
· · · · · (**o tom**, about that; etc)
s tím, *sťeem*, with this, with
that; (**za tím**, beyond that; etc.)

ta, f. *tă*, this, that;
tu, *tă*, this, that (accus.
or objec. case);
té, *té*, to this, to that; **v té,** in
that; **o té,** about that; etc.
s tou, *stoū*, with this, with that;
za tou, behind that; etc.

Plural :

ti, ty, ta, these, those;
těch, *těkh*, of those; **v těch,**
fěkh, in those; etc.
těm, *těm*, to those;
s těmi, *sťemi*, with those;
za těmi, behind those; etc.

These indicative pronouns often occur in a compound form: **tento**, **tato**, **toto**, always meaning "this one"; in the plural: **tito**, **tyto**, **tato**, "these ones". Their inflection remains the same, with the suffix **to** attached to the original pronoun in every case: **tohoto**, to this one; **tomuto**, of this one; and so forth.

Note 2. The numeral **jeden** (f. and n. **jedna**, **jedno**), *yěden*, *yědná*, *yědnō*, one, — agrees perfectly with **ten**, (**ta**, **to**) in its inflection:

jeden člověk tam byl, one man was there;

viděl jsem jen jednoho (accus. or objective case), I saw only one;

dal jsem to jednomu z nich (*zníkh*), I gave it to one of them;

v jednom z nich se mejlím*), in one of them I am mistaken;

šel jsem s jedním z nich, I went with one of them.

Jedna žena je zde, one woman is here; — **vidím jednu ženu**, I see one woman; — **mám to od jedné z nich**, I have it from one of them (f.); — **mluvil jsem s jednou**, I spoke with one (f.).

LESSON XXVIII.

Sem,	<i>sěm</i> ,	hither, here;	lék, m.	<i>lék</i> ,	medicine;
sám,	<i>sám</i> ,	alone;	lahev, f.	<i>láhev</i> ,	bottle;
čekáte,	<i>chěkáte</i> ,	you expect, you await (or you wait);	v lahvi,	<i>vlăh-vi</i> ,	in the bottle;
nečekám,	<i>něchekám</i> ,	I do not ex- pect;	dávka, f.	<i>dáfkă</i> ,	dose;
že přijde,	<i>žě prshiy-dě</i> ,	that he will (or would) come;	po dávkách,	<i>pо dáfkákh</i> ,	in doses;
na ulici,	<i>nă ūlitsi</i> ,	on the street;	nastuzen,	<i>năstúzen</i> ,	having a cold;
že jste?	<i>žě stě?</i>	you say you are?	jste nastuzen,	<i>stě năstúzen</i> ,	you have a cold;
že s nikým?	<i>žě s ūnikeem</i> ,	(literally: that with nobody?) you say with nobody?	nastuzení, n.	<i>năstúzeñee</i> ,	a cold;
			kašel, m.	<i>kăshell</i> ,	cough;
			dáti vinu,	<i>dáti vină</i> ,	to charge to; to blame (for);
			mysliti,	<i>myslit̄i</i> ,	to think;

*) **Mejliti se**, **mýliti se**, *meylit sě*, *meelit sě*, to be mistaken; **mejlím se**, *meyleem sě*, I am mistaken. — **Zmejliti se**, **zmýliti se**, *zmeylit sě*, *zmeelit sě*, to make a mistake; **zmejlil jsem se**, *zmeylil sem sě*, I made a mistake.

neotevru,	<i>něo-tev-rū,</i>	I shall not open;	mazati se,	<i>mǎzǎt'i sě,</i> to rub oneself;
jindy,	<i>yindy,</i>	before; at other times;	užívat,	<i>úžeevát,</i> to take medicine, (otherwise: to use);
tohle,	<i>tōhlē,</i>	this here;	mazat se,	<i>mǎzǎt sě,</i> to rub one's self.

EXERCISES.

Myslím že někdo jde sem; — kdo je to?

Nevím; — koho čekáte?

Nečekám nikoho; — dnes chci býti sám; — nechci viděti nikoho.

Komu poslal jste to pozvání? — Nikomu.

O kom myslil jste včera, že přijde? — O nikom.

S kým mluvil jste dnes ráno na ulici? — S nikým.

Že s nikým? — Vy se mejlíte. — Viděl jsem vás státi s někým na ulici.

Pravda; ale dnes nečekám nikoho. — Je někdo zde, opravdu?

I ne; žádný tu není. — Nevidím žádného a neotevru žádnému. — Já vím, že dnes nechcete mluvit se žádným.

I think that somebody is coming here; — who is it?

I do not know; — whom do you expect?

I do not expect anybody; — to-day I want to be alone; — I do not want to see anybody.

To whom did you send that invitation? — To nobody.

Of whom did you think yesterday, that he would come? — Of nobody.

With whom did you speak this morning on the street? — With nobody.

You say, with nobody? — You are mistaken. — I saw you standing with somebody on the street.

That is true; but to-day I do not expect anybody. — Is somebody here, really?

O no; nobody is here. — I do not see anybody, and I shall not open to anybody. — I know that to-day you do not want to speak with anybody.

Zde něco máte; — co to je?

To je lék.

Jste nemocen?

Mám nastuzení a zlý kašel.

Že jste nastuzen? — od čeho to je?

Nevím čemu dáti vinu.

K čemu je ten lék?

Budu ho užívat po dávkách.

A co je v tom? — V čem? — V té malé lahvi. — To je liniment.

Co s tím budete dělat? — S čím? — S tím linimentem.

Tím se budu mazat.

Čím jste se jindy mazal? — Ničím.

Here you have something;—what is it?

That is medicine.

Are you sick? .

I have a cold and a bad cough.

You say you have a cold?—what is it from?

I do not know, to what I should charge it.

What is that medicine for?

I shall take it in doses.

And what is in that?—In what?—In that small bottle. — That is a liniment.

What will you do with that?—With what?—With that liniment.

With that I shall rub myself.

With what did you rub yourself before? — With nothing.

Note. The student is, by this time, quite familiar with the interrogative pronouns **kdo**, **co**, **gdő**, **tső**, (who, what). This lesson is designed simply to serve as a review of their variation, already shown in Note 5, Lesson XVIII.

Kdo, co, *gdő, tső*, who, what;

koho, čeho, *kőhő, chěhő*, whose, whom; of what; **od koho, (čeho),** from whom (what);

komu, čemu, *kőmű, chěmű*, to whom, to what; **k čemu,** *kchěmű* what for;

v kom, v čem, *fkom, fchem*, in whom, in what; **o kom, o čem,** about whom (what); etc.

kým, čím, *keem, cheem*, by whom, by what; **s kým, s čím,** with whom, with what.

LESSON XXIX.

Číslo, n.	<i>cheesslō</i> ,	number;	zdálo se,	<i>zdálō sě</i> ,	it seemed;
pověra, f.	<i>povyérā</i> ,	superstition;	stěhovat se,	<i>stěhovát sě</i> ,	to move;
u stolu,	<i>ústolū</i> ,	at (<i>or</i> by) the table;	vystěhovat se,	<i>vy-stěhovát sě</i> ,	to emi-
roku,	<i>rökū</i> ,	in the year;			grate;
po roce,	<i>př rotsě</i> ,	after a year,			
		in a year;			
všecko,	<i>fshětsko</i> ,	everything, all;	usadit se,	<i>ússǎdít sě</i> ,	to settle;
nynější,	<i>nyñeyshē</i> ,	present;	odtud,	<i>otčđd</i>	{ from here,
sousední,	<i>soúsedñee</i> ,	neighboring;	odsud,	<i>otsúd</i>	{ from there;
společně,	<i>spolechñe</i> ,	jointly,	odtamtuď,	<i>otčamtúd</i> ,	from there;
		together;	kolik je,	<i>kǒlik yě</i> ,	how many
přes,	<i>prshěs</i> ,	over;			are; how much is;
před,	<i>prshěd</i> ,	before, ago;	vám je,	<i>vám yě</i> ,	you are;
teda,	<i>tědă</i> ,	therefore;	že je,	<i>žě yě</i> ,	(that) there is,
o to více,	<i>o tō veetsě</i> ,	so much more;			(that) there were;
pouhý, á, é,	<i>poúhee</i> ,	pure, mere;	to prý je,	<i>tō pree yě</i> ,	that is said
nešťastný, á, é	<i>něshťastnee</i> ,	un-			to be.
		lucky, unfortunate;			

Jedenáct,	<i>yědenátst,</i>	eleven	čtyrycet,	<i>shtiritset,</i>	forty
dvanáct,	<i>dvǎnátst,</i>	twelve	padesát,	<i>pǎděsát,</i>	fifty
třináct,	<i>trshinátst,</i>	thirteen	šedesát,	<i>shěděsát,</i>	sixty
čtrnáct,	<i>shternátst</i>	fourteen	sedmdesát,	<i>seděmděsát,</i>	seventy
patnáct,	<i>pătnátst,</i>	fifteen	osmdesát,	<i>osěmděsát,</i>	eighty
šestnáct,	<i>shěstnátst,</i>	sixteen	devadesát,	<i>děvěděsát,</i>	ninety
sedmnáct,	<i>seděmnátst,</i>	seventeen	sto jeden,	<i>stō yěden,</i>	one hundred
osmnáct,	<i>osěmnátst,</i>	eighteen			and one

devatenáct, *děvátěnádtst,* nineteen
dvacet, *dwátset,* twenty
dvacet jeden, *dwátset yěden,* twenty one
dvacet dva, *dwátset dwă,* twenty two
tricet, *trshítset,* thirty
tricet jeden, *trshítset yěden,* thirty one
třicet dva, *trshitset dwă,* thirty two

sto dva, *stō dwă,* one hundred and two
sto dvacet, *stō dwátset,* one hundred and twenty
dvě stě, *dwyě stě,* two hundred
tři sta, *trshi stă,* three hundred
čtyry sta, *shtiri stă,* four hundred
pět set, *pyět set,* five hundred;
šest set, *shest set,* six hundred; etc.

tisíc, *tiseets,* a thousand
tisíc jedno sto, *tiseets yednō stō,* one thousand one hundred;
tisíc pět set, *tiseets pyět set,* one thousand five hundred;
dva tisíce, *dwă tiseetsě,* two thousand;
tři tisíce, *trshi tiseetsě,* three thousand;
čtyry tisíce, *shtiri tiseetsě,* four thousand;
pět tisíce, *pyět tiseets,* five thousand; etc.
tisíc osm set devadesát, *tiseets osüm set děvěděsát,* one thousand eight hundred and ninety;
milion, *million,* a million;
dva miliony, *dwă milliōny,* two millions;
tři miliony, *trshi milliōny,* three millions;

čtyry miliony, *shtiri milliōny,* four millions;
pět milionů, *pyět milliōnoo,* five millions;
šest milionů, *shest milliōnoo,* six millions; etc.

Jednotka, *yědnokă,* a unit;
dvojka, *dwoykă,* a two; the figure two;
trojka, *troykă,* a three;
čtyrka, čtverka, *shtirkă, shtverka,* a four;
pětka, *pyětkă,* a five;
desítka, *děseet-kă,* a ten;
dvacítka, *dwátseetkă,* a twenty;
třicítka, *trshitseetkă,* a thirty;
čtyrycítka, *shtiritseetkă,* a forty;
padesátka, *păděsátkă,* a fifty; etc.
stovka, *stofkă,* a hundred;
tisícovka, *tiseetsokă,* a thousand.

EXERCISES.

Kolik je nás u stolu? — Je nás dvanáct. — To je dobré; já myslí že je nás třináct a to prý je neštastné číslo.

I, to je pouhá pověra!

Kolik akrů má vaše farma? — Sto šedesát akrů. — A farma vaše-ho otce? — Otec má tři čtyrycítky; já mám o čtyryecet akrů více.

Moje farma stála o tisíc dollarů více, nežli farma otcova.

Oba máte dobré farmy; — obě farmy jsou dobré. — To jsou dvě pěkué farmy.

Jaká je asi nynější cena těch dvou farem? — Asi devět tisíc dolarů.

Nám dvoum*) také patří osmdesátka lesa v sousedním townshipu.

Vám oboum*)? — Ano, nám dvoum*) společně.

Kdy jste se tu usadili?

Otec usadil se tu před čtyrmi lety; — já též; strýc před dvouma*) nebo třemi lety.

How many are we at the table?— There are twelve of us. — That is right; I thought there were thirteen of us, and that is said to be an unlucky number.

O, that is a mere superstition.

How many acres has your farm?— One hundred and sixty acres.—And the farm of your father? — Father has three forties; I have forty acres more.

My farm cost one thousand dollars more than my father's farm.

Both of you have good farms; — both farms are good. — Those are two nice farms.

What is about the present price of those two farms?—About nine thousand dollars.

To us two also belongs an eighty of forest in the neighboring township.

To both of you?—Yes, to us two jointly.

When did you settle here?

Father settled here four years ago;— I also; uncle two or three years ago.

*) In ordinary discourse always: **dvoum, oboum, dvoum, obořm,** to the two, to both; **před dvouma, před obouma, prshěd dvoumā, prshěd obořmā,** before two, before both. — The precise grammatical form is: **dvěma, oběma, dvěmā, oběmā;** **před dvěma, před oběma.**

Nám třem zdálo se, že musíme bydleti pohromadě.

My vystěhovali se z Evropy²⁾ do Ameriky²⁾, — usadili se v Ohio, — po roce přestěhovali jsme se do státu Illinois, odtud po dvou nebo třech letech do Nebrasky²⁾, a odtud po pěti letech do Kansasu.

Kdy jste narozen? — Roku tisíc osm set padesát dva. — Teda je vám třicet osm let.

Jak starý je váš otec? — Můj otec je přes šedesát; — můj strýc je skoro sedmdesát let stár; — je o pět let starší než můj otec.

Já jsem jen o rok starší než má sestra a o tři leta starší než můj bratr.

To us three it seemed that we must live together.

We emigrated from Europe to America, — settled in Ohio, — after a year we removed to the state of Illinois, from there after two or three years to Nebraska, and from there after five years to Kansas.

When were you ("are you") born? — In the year one thousand eight hundred fifty two. — Then you are thirty eight years.

How old is your father? — My father is over sixty; — my uncle is nearly seventy years old; — he is five years older than my father.

I am only one year older than my sister and three years older than my brother.

Note 1. We have seen that the numeral **jeden** is declined (Note 2, Lesson XXVII). The same is true of the numerals **dva**, **tři**, **čtyry** and **oba**. The feminine and neutre gender of **dva** and **oba** is **dvě**, **obě**; but the inflected cases are the same in all three genders. **Čtyry** is used in the feminine and neutre gender, and in connection with *inanimate* nouns of the masculine gender: **čtyřy ženy**, **čtyřy děti**, **čtyřy domy** (four women, four children, four houses); whereas the masculine animate use **čtyři**; for instance: **čtyři muži**, **čtyři hoši** (four men, four boys). Colloquially, however, **čtyry** is used without any discrimination.

²⁾ **Evropa**, **Amerika**, **evropě**, **amerikě**; **z Evropy do Ameriky**, **z evropy dō ameriky**, from Europe to America. **Nebraska**, **do Nebrasky**, to Nebraska. **Kansas**, **do Kansasu**, to Kansas. — **Evropa**, **Amerika**, **Nebraska**, are feminine, **Kansas** is masculine, by reason of their termination. See also foot-note in Lesson XXIV.

The variation of these numerals is set forth in the following exposé:
dva, oba m., dvě, obě, (f. & n.) *dvǎ, obǎ, dvě, obě*, two, both;
dvou, obou, *dvoǔ, oboǔ*, of two, of both;
dvěma, oběma, (colloq. **dvoum, oboum**), *dvěma, oběma* (*dvoǔm, oboǔm*),
 to two, to both; **se dvěma, s oběma,** (se **dvouma, s obouma**) with two, with both; etc.

tři, čtyři (čtyry), *trši, shtirshi* (*shtiri*), three, four;
tří, třech; čtyr, čtyrech; *trshee, trshek; shtir, shtirekh*; of three, of
 four; **ve třech, ve čtyrech,** in three, in four; etc.
třem, čtyrem, *trshem, shtirem*, to three, to four;
se třemi, se čtyrmi, *s̄e trsh̄emi, s̄e shtirmi* (colloq. **se třema, se čtyrma**),
 with three, with four.

Note 2. The adverbial numerals *once, twice, three times, four times*, etc., are formed in Bohemian by adding the suffix **krát** to the cardinal number: **jedenkrát, dvakrát, třikrát, čtyrykrát**, etc.

In place of **jedenkrát**, *yědenkrát* (once), the shorter form **jednou**, *yědnoǔ*, is generally employed:

Kolikrát jste tam byl? how many times have you been there? —
Jen jednou; only once.

Kolikrát se to stalo? how many times has it happened? — **Myslím že dvakrát;** I think (that) twice.

Note 3. The ordinal numbers are as follows:

první,	<i>pervnee,</i>	first	šestý,	<i>shestee,</i>	sixth
druhý,	<i>drūhee,</i>	second	sedmý,	<i>sedmee,</i>	seventh
třetí,	<i>trshēt̄ee,</i>	third	osmý,	<i>osmee,</i>	eighth
čtvrtý,	<i>shtvertee,</i>	fourth	devátý,	<i>děvátee,</i>	ninth
pátý,	<i>pátee,</i>	fifth	desátý,	<i>desátee,</i>	tenth

From eleven to nineteen they are formed by appending **ý** to the cardinal number (corresponding with the English *th*): **jedenáctý**, *yěde-nátstee*, eleventh; etc.

Dvacet, **třicet**, **čtyrycet** have **dvacátý**, **třicátý**, **čtyrycátý**, *dvátsá-tee*, *trshitsátee*, *shtiritsátee* (twentieth, thirtieth, fourtieth). The rest of the tens are regular: **padesátý**, *páděsátee* fiftieth), etc. — **Stý**, *stee*, one hundredth; **tisící**, *tiseetsee*, one thousandth.

Dvacátý první, twenty first; **dvacátý druhý**, twenty second; etc. Both tens and units take the ordinal form.

There is also a distinction of gender, the feminine terminating in **á** and the neutre in **é** (in place of the masculine **ý**), corresponding exactly with the adjectives: **dobrý**, **á**, **é** (see Note 2, Lesson VI).

Hence we say: **druhý muž**, **druhá žena**, **druhé dítě**, the second man, the second woman, the second child.

The plural form **druží**, **druhé**, *drůzée*, *drůhē*, means “the others”.

První, **třetí**, have the same termination in every gender, like adjectives ending in **í**. (See Note 1, Lesson XXI.)

Ordinal numbers are declined like adjectives of a corresponding termination: **prvního muže**, of the first man; **druhého dne**, of the second day (or: on the next day); **druhé ženy**, of the second woman (or wife); **druhého dítěte**, of the second child; **druhému**, to the second; **v druhém**, in the second; **s druhým**, with the second.

Note 4. The adverbs formed from cardinal numbers by means of the suffix **fold**, denoting multiplication, are in Bohemian called special numerals and formed as follows:

dvojí ,	<i>dvooyee</i> ,	twofold	paterý ,	<i>pătĕree</i> ,	fivefold
trojí ,	<i>troyee</i> ,	threefold	šesterý ,	<i>shĕstĕree</i> ,	sixfold
čtvverý ,	<i>shtvĕree</i> ,	fourfold	sedmerý ,	<i>sedmĕree</i> ,	sevenfold;

and so forth, always appending **erý** to the cardinal number (in the feminine gender **erá**, in the neutre **eré**).

From these there is derived a distinct class of multiplicative numerals by changing **erý** into **ero** and appending **násobný** (which in English also means *fold*), only the first three forming an exception:

dvojnásobný,	<i>dwoy-násobnee,</i>	twofold	(double);
trojnásobný,	<i>troy-násobnee,</i>	threefold	(treble);
čtvernásobný,	<i>shwer-násobnee,</i>	fourfold	(quadruple);
pateronásobný,	<i>pátero-násobnee,</i>	fivefold	(quintuple); etc.

LESSON XXX.

Všeek,	<i>fshětsek</i> , m.	all, f. <i>fshětskă</i> , f. (whole)	silný,	<i>silnee,</i>	strong
všeeka,	<i>fshětskă</i> , f.		silně,	<i>silñe,</i>	strongly
všecko, vše,	<i>fshětsko, fshě, n.</i>		silněji,	<i>silñeyi,</i>	more strongly
prodej, m.	<i>proděy,</i>	sale	nejsilněji,	<i>neysilñeyi,</i>	most strongly
výprodej, m.	<i>veepronoděy,</i>	selling out;	pěkně,	<i>pyékñe,</i>	nicely
zásoba, f.	<i>zásobă,</i>	stock	hluboký,	<i>hlübokee,</i>	deep
látka, f.	<i>látkă,</i>	stuff	hluboko,	<i>hlübökō</i>	deeply
látka na šaty,	<i>látkă nă shăte,</i>	dress-	hluboce,	<i>hlübotsë</i>	
		goods;	velice,	<i>vélitsë,</i>	greatly
známka, f.	<i>známkă,</i>	label	hezký,	<i>hesskee,</i>	nice, pretty, fine;
kupec, m.	<i>küpets,</i>	buyer, purchaser;	hezky,	<i>hesske,</i>	nicely, prettily, finely
(kupci , pl.)	<i>küpsti</i>		český,	<i>chesskee,</i>	Bohemian
odkupník, m.	<i>odkùpñek,</i>	customer	česky (adv.),	<i>chesske,</i>	"
věc, f.	<i>vyèts,</i>	thing, article;	po česku,	<i>pö chesskū,</i>	in Bohemian
výdělek, m.	<i>veed'elek,</i>	profit	anglicky (adv.),	<i>ängliitske,</i>	English
vůle, f.	<i>voolë,</i>	will	francousky,	<i>frántsoüske,</i>	French
základ, m.	<i>záklăd,</i>	foundation	španělsky,	<i>shpäñelske,</i>	Spanish
základní,	<i>záklădñee,</i>	fundamental	německy,	<i>ñemetske,</i>	German
kámen, m.	<i>kámen,</i>	stone	pozdě,	<i>pozd'e,</i>	late
zármutek, m.	<i>zármütek,</i>	sorrow	později,	<i>pozd'eyi,</i>	later

psáti,	<i>psáťi, psát,</i>	to write	dal jsem,	<i>dāl sěm,</i>	I gave, I put;
učiti se,	<i>účít sě,</i>	to learn	ručím (za),	<i>růčím,</i>	I warrant;
vyprodán, a, o,	<i>veprodán, ā, ō,</i>	sold	dojat,	<i>doyăt,</i>	moved
		out	trápilo*),	<i>trápilō,</i>	it grieved
kladli jsme,	<i>klădli smě,</i>	we were	zbylo*),	<i>zbylō,</i>	remained, was left
		laying;	zemřel,	<i>zemrshel,</i>	died
položili jsme,	<i>pōložili smě,</i>	we laid	vál,	<i>vál,</i>	blew

EXERCISES.

Měl jsem výprodej. — Můj krám je všecek vyprodán; — všecka zásoba je vyprodána; — prodal jsem všecko zboží lacino. — Vyprodal jsem všecko za hotové.

Ze všeho zboží zbylo jen něco látky na šaty.

Ke všemu zboží dal jsem ceny; — známky byly na všem. — Jsem teď hotov se vším.

Všichni kupci, doufám, budou spokojeni; — všecky věci byly dobré; — na všech věcech měl jsem jen malý výdělek.

Všem svým odkupníkům ručím za zboží; — chci mítí se všemi dobrou vůli.

I had a selling out. — My store is all sold out; — the whole stock is sold out; — I sold all goods cheaply. — I sold out every thing for cash.

Of all the goods there only remained some dress-goods.

To all the goods I put (i. e. attached) prices;—labels were on every thing.—I have now done with everything.

All the buyers, I hope, will be satisfied; — all articles were good; — on all articles I had only a small profit.

To all my customers I warrant my goods; — I want to have with all a good will.

***) Trápiti, *trápiťi, (trápit),* to grieve, to trouble, to torment; trápil, a, o, (he, she, it) grieved, troubled, etc.**

Zbýti, *zbeetji (zbeet),* to remain, to be left; zbyl, a, o, (he, she, it) remained, was left; zbylo, there remained. — See Note 2, Lesson IX.

Dnes je hezký den. — Ano, dnes je hezky; — slunce svítí hezky.

Doufám že zítra bude také pěkný den a že slunce bude pěkně svítit.

Včera byl silný vítr. — Ráno vítr vál silně, odpoledne ještě silněji a nejsilněji k večeru.

Váš dům má hluboký základ. — Ano, položili jsme základy hluboko.

Když jsme kladli základní kámen, nás hošik zemřel a byl jsem hluboce dojat.

Byl to veliký zármutek; — trápilo nás to velice.

Kolik let mu bylo?*) — Bylo mu dvanact let.

Mluvil anglicky i česky, — také psal po anglicku i po česku.

Později chtěl učiti se též francouzsky, španělsky i německy, — aspoň čísti a psátí trochu.

To-day is a fine day.—Yes, to-day it is nice;—the sun is shining nicely.

I hope that to-morrow will be also a nice day, and that the sun will shine nicely.

Yesterday there was a strong wind. — In the morning the wind blew strongly, in the afternoon more strongly yet, and most strongly toward evening.

Your house has a deep foundation.—Yes, we laid the foundations deep.

When we were laying the foundation stone, our little boy died, and I was deeply moved.

It was a great sorrow;—it grieved us greatly.

How old was he?—He was twelve years.

He spoke English and Bohemian,—he also wrote in English and in Bohemian.

Later he wanted to learn also French, Spanish and German,—at least to read and write a little.

Note 1. Grammarians call *všecek* (all) an indefinite numeral; it also takes the form of *všechen* or *všecken* (feminine, *všechna*, *všeckna*; neutre, *všechno*, *všeckno*). The plural is *všickni*, *všecky*, *všecka*, *všitskni*, *vshětski*, *vshětskă*. In common discourse *všecky* or *všeći* is used in the plural in all three genders.

*) *Kolik let mu bylo?* (*literally*: how many years was it to him?), the same as: *jak byl stár?* how old was he? *Bylo mu*, the same as *byl*, he was.

This numeral is also declined and presents the following variation of form :

Singular:

všeho, m. & n. *fshěhō* (**vší**, f. *fshee*) of all (of the whole, of everything);
všemu, *fshěmū*, to all; **ve všem**, *vě fshěm*, in all; **se vším**, *sě fsheem*,
with all.

Plural:

všech, *fshěkh*, of all; **ve všech**, *vě fshěkh*, in all; **všem**, *fshěm*, to all;
se všemi, *sě fshěmi* with all.

Note 2. Adverbs (qualifying verbs) are often derived from adjectives, qualifying nouns. This rule obtains in Bohemian as well as in English.

Such adverbs are formed in English by adding *ly* to the adjective: *strong*, *strongly*; *nice*, *nicely*. In Bohemian, the terminal *ý* of the adjective is changed into an *ě*:

silný, silně; pěkný, pěkně.

In some cases, however, the final *ý* changes into an *o*, or the final syllable *ký* into *ce*: **hluboký**, *hluboko*, **hluboce**, *deep, deeply*; **veliký**, **velice**, *great, greatly*. In a few cases the formation of adverbs is wholly irregular: **dobrý**, *good*; **dobře**, *well*.

Sometimes the long *ý* simply changes into a short *y*: **hezký**, **hezky**, *nice, nicely*. This is generally the case, when the adjective is derived from the name of a nation: **anglický národ**, *the English nation*; **mluvím anglicky**, *I speak English*; — **český jazyk**, *the Bohemian tongue*; **mluvím česky**, *I speak Bohemian*. In these cases we can also use the form: **po anglicku**, **po česku**.

In common discourse, the distinction between such adjectives and adverbs as **hezký — hezky**, **český — česky**, etc., is obliterated, their pronunciation being the same.

Note 3. Many adverbs of quality have a comparison, like adjectives, in order to express various degrees of quality. In regular com-

parison, the second degree is formed by adding **ji** to the adverb, and the third degree by prefixing **nej** to the second degree: **silně**, *strongly*; **silněji**, *more strongly*; **nejsilněji**, *most strongly*. Some adverbs have an irregular comparison, which must be learned and remembered. The following are mostly in use:

dobře, *dobrshě*, well; **lépe**, *lépě*, better; **nejlépe**, *neylépě*, best;
líp, *leep*, “ ; **nejlíp**, *neyleep*, “ ;

zle, *zle*, badly; **hůře**, *hoorshě*, worse; **nejhůře**, *neyhoorshě*, worst;
hůř, *hoorsh*, “ ; **nejhůř**, *neyhoorsh*, “ ;

brzo, *berzō*, soon; **dříve**, *drsheevě*, sooner; **nejdříve**, *neydrsheevě*, soonest;
dřív, *drsheef*, “ ; **nejdřív**, *neydrsheef*, “ ;

dłouho, *dloúhō*, long; **déle**, *délē*, longer; **nejdéle**, *neydélē*, longest;
dýl, *deel*, “ ; **nejdýl**, *neydeel*, “ ;

blízko, *bleeskō*, near; **blíže**, *bleežē*, nearer; **nejblíže**, *neybleežē*, nearest;
blíž, *bleež*, “ ; **nejblíž**, *neybleež*, “ ;

daleko, *dălēkō*, far; **dál**, *dál*, farther; **nejdál**, *neydál*, farthest;

vysoko, *vysökō*, high; **výše**, *veeshē*, higher; **nejvýše**, *neyveeshē*, highest;

hluboko, *hlübökō*, deep, deeply; **hloub**, *hloúb*, deeper; **nejhloub**, *neyhloúb*,
deepest;

snadno, *snădnō*, easily; **snáz**, *snáz*, more easily; **nejsnáz**, *neysnáz*, most
easily;

mnoho, *mnóhō*, much; **víc**, *více*, *veets*, *veetsē*, more; **nejvíc**, *nejvíce*, *ney-*
veets, *neyveetsē*, most;

málo, *málō*, little; **méně**, *míñ*, *méñe*, *meen*, less; **nejméně**, *nejmíñ*, *ney-*
méñe, *neymeeñ*, least;

draho, *draze*, *drähō*, *drázē*, dear, dearly; **dráže**, *drážē*, dearer; **nejdráže**,
neydrážē, dearest.

LESSON XXXI.*)

Nesti (or **néstí**), *to carry, to bear*, is a verb denoting a **CONTINUOUS** action.

By means of prefixes numerous other verbs are derived from it (see Note 6, Lesson XIII), denoting a FINITE or finished action, or a solitary act of that nature :

přinesti,	<i>prshinest'i</i> ,	or <i>prshinest</i> , to bring, to fetch;
přenesti,	<i>prshě-nest</i> ,	to carry over; to transplace;
nanesti,	<i>nänest</i> ,	to bring a heap; to pile on;
odnesti,	<i>ödnest</i> ,	to carry away; to take away;
donesti,	<i>dönest</i> ,	to carry to a place; to carry to somebody;
podnesti,	<i>pödnest</i> ,	to carry under;
přednesti,	<i>prshed-nest</i> ,	to carry before; (hence: to lay before, to submit, to deliver);
pronesti,	<i>prönest</i> ,	to carry through; pronesti se , to grow heavy, to tire out (said of a burden which is carried);
roznesti,	<i>röznest</i> ,	to carry round; to scatter or spread; to deliver;
unesti,	<i>ünest</i> ,	to carry off, to kidnap; (also: to be able to carry);
vynesti,	<i>vinest</i> ,	to carry out;
zanesti,	<i>zänest</i> ,	to carry behind, away, i. e. out of sight; (also: to enter in a book or list).

*) We bespeak the student's particular attention for this Lesson, designed as a systematic but easy and popular introduction to a complete mastery of the Bohemian verb, which is the most important and the most complicated part of the language. To a great extent, this introduction will only appear as a review of what has already been learned about the verb in the preceding lessons, and hence will be the more readily mastered by the student. There being only a few hundred verbs used in the ordinary intercourse in any language, their acquisition for practical every-day purposes is, after all, only a matter of a few weeks' application.

As before observed, the meaning of these derivatives becomes in most cases self-evident, when we bear in mind the signification of the prefixes, which constantly recur in this process of formation of new verbs:

do , <i>dō</i> , to;	pře , <i>prshě</i> , over;	pod , <i>pōd</i> , under;
od , <i>ōd</i> , from, off;	při , <i>prshi</i> , to, by, at;	nad , <i>nād</i> , over, up, above;
na , <i>nā</i> , on;	před , <i>prshed</i> , before;	pro , <i>prō</i> , through;
ve , <i>vē</i> , in;	ob , <i>ōb</i> { round,	roz , <i>rōz</i> , apart, asunder;
vy , <i>ve</i> , out;	o , <i>o</i> { about;	za , <i>zā</i> , behind, away, into.

The prefix **za** very often denotes a solitary action or sudden manifestation; for example:

pěti, *zpívati*, *pyětī*, *speevatī*, to sing; **zapěti**, *zazpívati*, *zăpyět*, *zăspeevat*, to sing a song;
zvoniti, *zwōñit*, to ring; **zazvoniti**, *zăzwōñit*, to give a ring; to pull the bell once.

The prefix **u** denotes: 1. an action separating a part from the whole: **seknoti**, *seknoūtī*, to make a cut; **useknouti**, *ūseknoūtī*, to cut off; — 2. a diminutive, momentary, or solitary action: **šklebiti se**, *shkľebitī se*, to frown; — **ušklebiti se**, to make a frown; 3. a progressive destruction or disappearance: **páliti**, *páliūtī*, to burn; **upáliti**, to burn up, to burn at the stake; — 4. a completion or carrying out of something: **dělati**, *dělātī*, to do, to make, to work; **udělati**, to make or finish something; to do a certain act.

These are the main modifications due to the prefix **u**, connected with verbs; there are, besides, two or three minor or incidental ones, which it is not necessary to mention.

The principal parts of a Bohemian verb, from which the entire conjugation may easily be formed by means of the proper endings, are the following:

The infinitive: **nesti**, to carry; | the perfect indicative: **nesl**, carried; the present indicative: **nesu**, I carry; | the imperative: **nes**, carry (thou).

Nesu,	<i>nessū</i> ,	I carry,	nesl*) jsem , <i>nessl sem</i> ,	I carried,
neseš,	<i>nessesh</i> ,	thou carriest,	nesl jsi , <i>nessl si</i> ,	thou carriest,
nese,	<i>nessč</i> ,	(he, she, it) carries,	nesl,	<i>nessl</i> ,
neseme,	<i>nessémě</i> ,	we carry,	nesli**) jsme , <i>nessli smě</i> ,	we carried,
nesete,	<i>nessítě</i> ,	you carry,	nesli jste , <i>nessli stě</i> ,	you carried,
nesou,	<i>nessoū</i> ,	they carry;	nesli,	<i>nessli</i> they carried;
nes,	<i>ness</i> ,			carry (thou),
ať nese,	ăť <i>nessě</i> ,			let him (her, it) carry,
nesme,	<i>nessmě</i> ,			let us carry,
neste,	<i>nestí</i> ,			carry (you),
ať nesou,	ăť <i>nessoū</i> ,			let them carry.

Note 1. The future tense of **nesti** is usually not formed by means of the auxiliary **býti** (to be) in connection with the infinitive: **budu nesti**, **budeš nesti**, etc.; but by means of the prefix **po**, connected with the present tense: **ponesu**, *pōnessū*, I shall carry; **poneseš**, *pōnessesh*, thou wilt carry; and so forth.

The derivatives mentioned above, formed by means of prefixes, have in fact no present, but only a past and a simple future tense; for example: **přinesti**, to bring; **přinesl jsem**, I brought; **přinesu**, I shall bring; — **odnesti**, to carry away; **odnesl jsem**, I carried away; **odnesu**, I shall carry away. (See Notes 4 and 7, Lesson XIII.)

*) Feminine **nesla**, *nesslā*; neutre **neslo**; — see Note 2, Lesson IX. — **Já jsem nesl**, **já nesl**, I carried; **ty jsi nesl**, **ty's nesl**, thou carriedst; **vy jste nesli**, you carried. See Lesson X.

As already mentioned in Note 1, Lesson IX, the distinction between the perfect tense, so difficult and puzzling for the student of the English language, does not exist in Bohemian. **Nesl jsem** means both *I carried* and *I have carried*; it also means *I did carry*, and *I was carrying*, — when the latter relates to a separate action.

Likewise the present, **nesu**, means not only *I carry*, but also: *I am carrying*, *I do carry*; or, if used interrogatively: **nesu?** *do I carry?*

The same observations apply to all other verbs, there being *only one form* of the present tense, and of the past tense, in Bohemian.

) Feminine **nesly; neutre **nesla**; see Note 2, Lesson IX.

The verbs **lezu**, I crawl; **vezu**, I carry; **jedu**, I ride; **kvetu**, I blossom; **rostu**, I grow, — and some others, usually form their future in the same way as **nesu**, I carry. Hence we do not say **budu lezti**, etc; but we say:

polezu, *polčzū*, I shall crawl; **povezu**, *povězū*, I shall carry; **pojedu**, *poyědū*, I shall ride; **pokvetu**, *pokvetū*, I shall blossom; **porostu**, *porostū*, I shall grow.

In the sequel we shall give the principal parts of every verb, from which the student can form the whole conjugation without any difficulty. There being a slight irregularity in the formation of the present tense from the infinitive in some cases, this course will obviate any confusion which might arise therefrom, for a beginner.

Vezti, *věztī, vezt**), to carry (in a vehicle);

vezti se, *věztī sě*, to ride;

vesti, *vesstī*, to lead;

lezti, *lěztī*, to crawl, to climb;

kvesti, *kwestī*, to blossom;

čísti, *cheestī*, to read;

růsti, *roostī* } to grow;

rosti, *rostī* } to grow;

plesti, *plesstī*, to twist, to knit; to confuse, to mix up;

vezu, *vězū*, I carry; **vezl jsem**, *vězl sem*, I carried, or I have carried; **vez**, *věz*, carry (thou)***);

* See Note 1, Lesson XI.

**) This and many other verbs have a variety of significations, which cannot here be explained. We refer the student to the Dictionary of the Bohemian and English languages, by Charles Jonas, *second edition*.

***) The reflexive form of a verb is conjugated in the same way as the ordinary form, with **se** added: **vezu se**, I ride; **vezl jsem se**, I rode; **povezu se**, I shall ride; **vez se**, ride (thou)!

The student is already well aware that negation is always expressed by the prefix **ne**, which stands for the English *do not*, *does not*, *did not*: **nevezu**, I do not carry; **nevezl jsem**, I did not carry; **nepovezu**, I shall not carry; **nevez!** do not carry!

vedu, *vědū*, I lead; **vedl jsem**, *vědl sěm*, I led; **ved', ved'**, lead;
lezu, *lězū*, I crawl; **lezl jsem**, *lězl sem*, I crawled; **lez**, *lěz*, crawl;
kyvete, *květě*, it blooms; **kvetl**, *květl*, it bloomed; **kvet'**, *květ'*, bloom;
čtu, *chtū*, I read; **četl jsem**, *chětl sem*, I read; **čti**, *chtí*, read;
rostu, *rostū*, I grow; **rostl jsem**, *rostl sem*, I grew; **rost'**, *rost'*, grow;
pletu, *pletū*, I knit; (**pletu se**, I get mixed up, etc.); **pletl jsem**, I knitted;
matu, *mătū*, I confuse; **matl jsem**, *mătl sem*, I confused; **mat'**, *măt'*, confuse;
metu, *metū*, I sweep; **metl jsem**, *metl sem*, I swept; **met'**, *met'*, sweep;
kladu, *klădū*, I lay; **kladl jsem**, *klădl sem*, I laid; **klad'**, *klăd'*, lay;
kradu, *krădū*, I steal; **kradl jsem**, *krădl sem*, I stole; **krad'**, *krăd'*, steal;
pasu, *păsū*, I herd; **pasl jsem**, *păsl sem*, I herded; **pas**, *păs*, herd.

Pasák , m.	<i>păssák</i> ,	the cowboy, the herdsman;	datum , n.	<i>dătăm</i> ,	the date
dobyték , m.	<i>dăbytek</i> ,	the cattle	škola , f.	<i>shkolă</i> ,	the school
chodník , m.	<i>khodn�ek</i> ,	the sidewalk	novela , f.	<i>novellă</i>	the novel
zlod�j� , m.	<i>zlod�ey</i> ,	the thief	rom�n , m.	<i>r�m�n</i>	
�erv , m.	<i>cherf</i> ,	the worm	zem , f.	<i>zem</i>	the floor
jablo�n , m.	<i>y��blo�n</i> ,	the apple-tree	podlaha , f.	<i>podl�h�</i>	
pt�ci , pl.	<i>pt�tsi</i> ,	the birds	pastva , f.	<i>p�stv�</i> ,	the pasture
d�jepis , m.	<i>d�ey�pis</i> ,	the history	ruka , f.	<i>r�k�</i> ,	the hand
cestopis , m.	<i>t�est�pis</i> ,	the book of travels;	noha , f.	<i>n�h�</i> ,	the foot
st�do , n.	<i>st�d�</i> ,	the herd	ml�ko , n.	<i>ml�k�</i> ,	the milk
ovce , n. s. & pl.	<i>ofts�</i> ,	the sheep	zeleniny , f. pl.	<i>z��l�n�ny</i> ,	the vege- tables;
sotva ,	<i>sotw�</i> ,	hardly, scarcely;	zam�sti ,	<i>z��m�st�</i> ,	to sweep up;
snadno ,	<i>sn�dn�</i> ,	easily	do�isti ,	<i>d�cheest�</i> ,	to finish reading;
nikam ,	<i>�ik�m�</i> ,	nowhere	m�ze ,	<i>m�o���</i> ,	he (she, it) can
			z��bavn� , �, z��b�vnee,		entertaining.

EXERCISES.

Co neseš? (co to neseš?)

Nesu oběd pro otce*).

Co vezete na trh? — Vezu trochu obilí.

Co veze váš soused? — On veze brambory.

Kam vedete toho chlapce*? — Vedu ho do školy. — Ze školy povedu ho zas domu.

Nelez na strom! — Já nelezu. — Nelezl jsem nikam. — Viděl jsem tě lezti.

Co to zde leze? — Červi zde lezou.

Všecko kvete. — Stromy už kvetou. — Loni náš jabloní kvetl krásně; — nevím jak pokvete letos.

Co to čteš? — Já čtu zábavnou knihu; — a co vy čtete? — Dějepis Spojených Států).**

What doest thou carry? (what is it thou carriest?)

I carry dinner for my father.

What do you carry to market? — I carry some grain.

What does your neighbor carry? — He carries potatoes.

Where do you lead (or "take") that boy? — I lead him to school. — From school I shall lead him home again.

Do not climb (on) the tree! — I do not (climb). — I did not climb anywhere. — I have seen thee climb.

What is that crawling here? — Worms are crawling here.

Everything blossoms. — The trees are blooming already. — Last year our apple-tree blossomed beautifully; — I don't know how it will bloom this year.

What is it thou readest? — I read an entertaining book; — and what do you read? — A history of the United States.

*) The rule stated in Note 2, Lesson XVIII, applies also to nouns ending in *ec* (declined like *muž*), the vowel *e* being dropped in the inflected cases: *otec, oťets*, the father (or "my father"); *otce, oťsče*, of the father; *pro otce*, for the father; *otecové, oťsövé*, the fathers; — *chlapec, khläpets*, the boy; *chlapce, khläptse*, of the boy (or "the boy", in the objective case).

**) *Spojené Státy, spoyěné státy*, the United States; *Spojených Států, spoyěneekh státoo*, of the United States; *ve Spojených Státech, vě spoyěneekh státekh*, in the United States.

Včera četl jsem román; — večer jsem ho dočetl; — zítra budu čísti nějaký cestopis.

**Když je teplo, všecko roste rychle.
— Ty zeleniny rostou rychle; — po dešti porostou ještě rychleji.**

Já často se pletu v datum. — Člověk snadno se plete; — já také často se matu.

Zamet krám. — Zametl jsem ho už; — chodník zametu hněd.

Ptáci nyní kladou vejce.

Zloděj kraje kde může. — Zloději kradou vše.

Pasák pase stádo. — Dobytka se pase. — Ovce se pasou.

Rád pasu krávy, kde je dobrá pastva.

**Bíti, *beet'i*, to beat, to strike;
pít, *peet'i*, to drink;
líti, *leet'i*, to pour;
sít, *seet'i* } to sow, to seed;
seti, *set'i* }
mýti, *meet'i*, to wash;**

Yesterday I read a novel; — in the evening I finished reading it; — to-morrow I shall read some book of travels.

When it is warm, everything grows fast.—Those vegetables grow fast; —after a rain they will grow still faster.

I am often mistaken in the date. — One is easily mistaken; — I also am frequently mistaken.

Sweep the store. — I have swept it already; — the sidewalk I shall sweep presently.

The birds now lay eggs.

The thief steals where he can. — Thieves steal everything.

The cowboy tends the herd. — The cattle are grazing.—The sheep are browsing.

I like to pasture cows where there is a good pasture.

krýti,	<i>kreet'i</i> ,	to cover;
tříti,	<i>trsheat'i</i> ,	to rub;
příti se,	<i>prsheet'i sě</i> ,	to dispute;
šíti,	<i>sheet'i</i> ,	to sew;
žíti,	<i>zeet'i</i> ,	to live*).

*) Notes 1 and 2, Lesson XIII., explain that in common discourse the final *i* of the infinitive is nearly always dropped. Consequently we hear: *beet*, instead of *beet'i*; *peet*, instead of *peet'i*; and so forth. *Mýti* is often pronounced *meyt*, *krýti* — *kreyt*. (See Note 3, Lesson VI.) — There is no difference of pronunciation between *bíti* (to beat), and *býti* (to be), except when the latter is vulgarly pronounced *beyt*.

biju (or **biji**), *biyǔ*, I beat; **bil jsem**, *bill sem*, I beat (have beaten);
bij, *biy* or *be*, beat (thou);
píju (or **píji**), *piyǔ*, I drink; **pil jsem**, *pill sem*, I drank; **pij**, *piy*
(or *pee*), drink;
liju or **leju**, *liyǔ* or *leyǔ*, I pour; **lil jsem**, *lil sem*, I poured; **lij** or
lej, *liy*, *ley*, pour;
siju or **seju**, *siyǔ*, *seyǔ*, I sow; **sil jsem**, *sil sem*, I sowed; **sej**, *sey*, sow;
myju*), *miyǔ*, I wash; **myl jsem**, *mill sem*, I washed; **myj**, *miy*, wash;
kryju*), *kriyǔ*, I cover; **kryl jsem**, *krill sem*, I covered; **kryj**, *kriy*, cover;
tru*), *trǔ*, I rub; **třel jsem**, *trshell sem*, I rubbed; **tři**, *trshi*, rub;
pru se*), *prǔ sě*, I dispute; **přel jsem se**, *prshell sem sě*, I disputed; **při se**,
prshì sě, dispute;
šiju, *she-yǔ*, I sew; **šil jsem**, *shil sem*, I sewed; **šij**, *shiy* (or *she*), sew;
žiju, *žiyǔ*, I live; **žil jsem**, *žil sem*, I lived; **žij**, *žiy* (or *ži*), live;

Note 2. The paradigm of the present indicative of **bíti** would be:
biju, **biješ**, **bije**, **bijeme**, **bijete**, **bijou** (I beat, thou beatest, he beats,
we beat, you beat, they beat). In the written language, the forms **biji** and
bijí (*biyi*, *biyee*) are frequently employed in the first person singular
and third person plural, in place of **biju**, **bijou** (*biyǔ*, *biyoǔ*), which are
always used in conversation. The same is true of the other verbs of this
class.

EXERCISES.

Proč biješ to dítě? — Nebij ho! —	Why do you beat that child? — Do
Já ho nebiju.	not beat him! — I do not beat him.
Hodiny**) bijou deset. — Už bilo	The clock strikes ten. — It has
deset.	already struck ten.

*) Colloquially also **meju**, **kreju**, **třn**, **přu se**, *meyǔ*, *kreyǔ*, *trshǔ*,
prshǔ sě; **mej**, **krej**, *mey*, *krey*, (do) wash, (do) cover.

) **Hodiny (the clock) is a plural noun; the following verb must
therefore be put in the plural: **bijou** or **bijí** (they strike).

Co piješ? — **Piju pivo;** — **co vy pijete?** — **Pijeme víno;** — **děti pijou vodu.** — **Ráno všichni pilí jsme mléko.**

Lijeme mléko do kávy.

Služka myje zem. — **Krýjeme podlahu kobercem.**

Lil jsem liniment na ruku a třel jsem nohu.

Seju pšenici; — **soused sil ječmen.**
— **Sejeme časně.** — **Co jste vy se-li?** — **Nic ještě;** — **budeme sítí oves.**

What doest thou drink? — I drink beer; — what do you drink? — We drink wine; — the children drink water. — In the morning we all drank milk.

We pour milk in coffee.

The servant-girl washes the floor. — We cover the floor with a carpet.

I poured the liniment on (my) hand and rubbed (my) foot.

I sow wheat; — (my) neighbor sowed barley. — We sow early. — What have you sowed? — Nothing as yet; — we shall sow oats.

Note 3. All verbs consisting of a simple *root* or *stem*, to which the termination **ti** is directly attached, belong to the first conjugation.

They may be divided in two leading classes, slightly diverging in their inflection, but following the same general principle, as shown in the preceding two groups of examples; namely, 1. those terminating generally in **sti**, and 2. those terminating generally in **iti**:

1. **nesti**, to carry (**nes** in the root or stem); — **nesu, neseš, nese**, I carry, thou carriest, he carries; **neseme, nesete, nesou**, we carry, you carry, they carry; — **nesl jsem**, I carried; — **nes**, carry;
2. **píti**, to drink (**pí** is the root or stem); — **piju, piješ, pije**, I drink, thou drinkest, he drinks; **pijeme, pijete, pijou**, we drink, you drink, they drink; — **pil jsem**, I drank; — **pij**, drink.

Note 4. A few exceptional verbs of this conjugation, with the grammatical termination of **ei** (but popularly **eti**) in their infinitive, show a slight deviation from the above paradigms. For instance:

peci, *petsi*, to bake; — **peku,** *pečeš, peče, pečeme, pečete, pekou,*
pěkū, pěchesh, pěchě, pěchomě, pěchětě, pěkoū (I bake, thou
 bakes, he bakes, we bake, you bake, they bake); **pekl jsem,**
pěkl sem, I baked; **peč,** *pěch,* bake;
teci, *tetsi*, to flow; **teče,** *tekou, tekł, teč, těchě, tekoū, tekł, těch* (it
 flows, they flow, it flowed, flow).

But colloquially, the forms **peču,** *pečou, tečou* (I bake, they bake,
 they flow) are used in place of **peku,** *pekou, tekou.*

LESSON XXXII.

Minouti, *minoūťti*, to pass by; — **minu,** *minū, I pass by;* (**mineš,** *mine,*
minesh, mině, thou passest by, he passes by; **mineme,** *minete,*
minou, *minemě, minětě, minoū,* we, you, they pass by); —
minul*) *jsem, minul sem*, I passed by or I have passed by; **miñ,**
miñ, pass (thou) by.

hynouti, *hynoūťti*, to perish (or rather: to be perishing); — **hynu,** *hynū,*
 I am perishing; **hynul jsem,** I was perishing; **hyñ,** *hyñ,* perish.

zdvihnouti, *zdvihnoūťti*, to pick up, to raise; — **zdvihnu,** *zdvihnu* (**), I
 shall pick up; I shall raise; **zdvihnul jsem** (also *zdvihl jsem*,
 like the first conjugation), *zdvihnuł sem* (*zdvihl sem*), I picked
 up, I raised; **zdvihni,** *zdvihñi*, pick up, raise.

kopnouti, *kopnoūťti*, to kick; — **kopnu****), I shall kick; **kopnul jsem** (also
kopl jsem), *kopnuł sem*, I kicked; **kopni,** *kopñi*, kick.

Dálka, f.	<i>dálkă,</i>	the distance	osení, n.	<i>osseñee,</i>	growing crops;
planina, f.	<i>pláñină,</i>	the plain	takto,	<i>täktö,</i>	in this way;

*) Feminine **minula,** *minulă*; neutre **minulo,** *minulō*; — see Note
 2, Lesson IX.

) The present tense having a *future* meaning, **zdvihnu, *kopnu*, is
 in fact the simple future tense of these verbs. See Note 7, Lesson XIII.

hruška, f. *hrušhkă*, the pear
jablko, n. *yáblkō* (colloq. *yábkō*), the apple
sucho, n. *súkhō*, drought (as an adverb: dry);

než, *nesh*, before;
hleděti, *hled'et*, to look;
pes, m. *pess*, the dog; **psa**, *psă*, of the dog, the dog (obj. case).

EXERCISES.

Než hodina mine, budu zde, — právila.

Hodina minula, — dvě hodiny minuly, — pět hodin minulo (i. e. it passed), — den minul, — a nebyl zde.

Až mineme ten les, budeme viděti více.

Jak brzy minuli jste les?

Minuli jsme ho za hodinu; — pak viděli jsme celou planinu.

Ti lidé nás brzy minou*). — **Mineš mnoho lidí** (*lid'ee*, gen. case).

Je sucho; — všecko hyne; — osení hyne; — zeleniny hynou.

Bylo sucho a všecko hynulo.

Takto všecko bude hynouti.

Zdvihni to jablko. — Už jsem ho zdvihnul (or *zdvihl*). — **Zdvihnula** (or *zdvihla*) **jsem dvě jablka a hrušku.**

Before an hour passes by, I shall be here, — he said.

An hour passed,—two hours passed, — five hours passed, — the day passed by, — and he was not here.

When we pass that forest, we shall see more.

How soon did you pass the forest? We passed it in an hour; — then we saw the whole plain.

Those people will soon pass us. — Thou wilt pass many people.

It is dry; — everything is perishing; — the crops are perishing; — the vegetables are perishing.

There was a drought, and everything was perishing.

In this way everything will be perishing.

Pick up that apple. — I have picked it up already. — I picked up (*fem.*) two apples and a pear.

*) It is self-evident that this present tense of the verb **minouti** also has a *future* meaning, denoting an action which is expected to take place.

Zdvihli jsme se a hleděli do dálky.

— **Zdvihni se!** — **Zdvihněte se!**

— **Zdvihněte ruku** (plural ruce, *růtsč*).

Kopni toho psa! — **Kopnul jsem ho trochu.**

We raised ourselves and looked into the distance. — Raise thyself! — Raise yourself! — Raise your hand (your hands).

Kick that dog! — I kicked him a little.

Note 1. The root or stem of the verb **minouti** is **min**, to which the termination **outi** is attached. All verbs ending in **outi** belong to the second conjugation.

Some of the verbs of this class are derived from adjectives, and their imperative is always formed like that of **zdvihouti** : **zdvihni**. For example :

bled-ý, *bledee*, pale; **bled-nouti**, *blednoúťi*, to grow pale; (**blednu**, I grow pale; **blednul jsem**, I grew pale; **bledni**, do grow pale);

bohat-ý, *bohátee*, rich; **bohat-nouti**, *bohátnoúťi*, to grow rich;

chud-ý, *khúdee*, poor; **chud-nouti**, *khúdnouúťi*, to grow poor;

mlad-ý, *mládee*, young; **mlad-nouti**, *mládnouúťi*, to grow young;

star-ý, *stáree*, old; **stár-nouti**, *stárnouúťi*, to grow old;

slab-ý, *slábee*, weak; **sláb-nouti**, *slábnoúťi*, to grow weak;

měk-ký, *myékee*, soft; **měk-nouti**, *myěknouúťi*, to grow soft;

tvrd-ý, *twerdee*, hard; **tvrd-nouti**, *twerdnouúťi*, to grow hard.

Viděti, *viďetí*, to see;

seděti, *sedětí*, to sit;

bězeti, *byěžetí*, to run, to go hurriedly;

držeti, *deržetí*, to hold;

mlčeti, *melchetí*, to be silent;

hořeti, *horshetí*, to burn;

pršeti, *pershetí*, to rain;

slýšeti, *slíshětí*, to hear;

slušeti, *slúshětí*, to fit, to become;

styděti se, *stiďetí sě*, to be ashamed;

uměti, *ůmyětí*, to know; can;

rozuměti, *rozumyětí*, to understand;

házeti, *házetí*, to throw (continually);

poroučeti, *poroučhetí*, to command.

Vidím,	<i>ved'eeem</i> , I see; — vidíš, <i>vidí</i> , <i>vid'eesh</i> , <i>vid'ee</i> , thou seest, he sees; vidíme, <i>vidíte</i> , <i>vidí</i> , (colloq. also <i>vidějí</i>) <i>vid'eeemě</i> , <i>vid'eeetě</i> , <i>vid'ee</i> , colloq. <i>vid'eyee</i> , we (you, they) see; — viděl jsem, <i>vid'el sem</i> , I saw, or I have seen; viz, see (being an irregular imper.).
sedím,	<i>sed'eeem</i> , I sit; seděl jsem, <i>sed'el sem</i> , I sat; sed' , sit.
běžím,	<i>byěžeeem</i> , I run; běžel jsem, <i>byěžel sem</i> , I ran; běž, <i>byěž</i> , run;
držím,	<i>deržeem</i> , I hold; držel jsem, <i>deržel sem</i> , I held; drž, <i>děrž</i> , hold;
mlčím,	<i>m elcheem</i> , I am silent, mlčel jsem, <i>m elchel sem</i> , I was silent; mlč, <i>m elch</i> , be silent;
hoří,	<i>horshee</i> , it burns; hořel, <i>horshel</i> , burned; hoř, <i>horsh</i> , burn;
prší,	<i>p ershee</i> , it rains; pršelo, <i>p ershēlō</i> , it rained; prš, <i>p ersh</i> , rain;
slyším,	<i>slisheem</i> , I hear; slyšel jsem, <i>slishel sem</i> ; I heard; slyš, <i>slish</i> , hear;
sluší,	<i>slūshee</i> , it fits; slušelo, <i>slūshēllō</i> , it fitted.
stydím se,	<i>stid'eeem se</i> , I am ashamed; styděl jsem se, <i>stid'el sem sě</i> , I was ashamed; styd' se, shame on thee!
umím,	<i>úmeem</i> , I know, I can; uměl jsem, <i>úmyěll sem</i> , I knew; uměj, <i>úmyěy</i> , know;
rozumím,	<i>rozúmeem</i> , I understand; rozuměl jsem, <i>rozúmyěll sem</i> , I understood; rozuměj, <i>rozúmyěy</i> , understand;
házím,	<i>házeem</i> , I throw (I am throwing); házel jsem, <i>házel sem</i> , I was throwing; házej, <i>házey</i> , throw;
poroučím,	<i>poroǔcheem</i> , I command; poroučel jsem, <i>poroǔchel sem</i> , I commanded; poroučej, <i>poroǔchey</i> , command.

Vlak, m.	<i>vlák</i> ,	the train;	pevně,	<i>pevñe</i> ,	tightly, fast;
opratě, f. pl.	<i>opráťe</i> ,	the lines;	silně,	<i>silñe</i> ,	strongly, hard;
povyk, m.	<i>povik</i> ,	the cry;	výborně,	<i>veeborñe</i> ,	very well, excellently;
jazyk, m.	<i>yázik</i> ,	the tongue;	špinavý, á, é	<i>shpinávée</i> ,	dirty;
prádlo, n.	<i>prádlō</i> ,	the linen;	jiný, á, é	<i>yinee</i> ,	other, different;
šaty, pl.	<i>šáty</i> ,	suit of clothes;	zapomněl jsem,	<i>zápom-ñel sem</i> ,	I forgot;
kamení, n.	<i>kámeñee</i> ,	stones (collectively);			

před tím, *prshed ūtēm*, before that;
za něj, *zā ūney*, for him, of him,
(for it, of it);

hráti,	hráťi,	to play;
už ne,	<i>úsh ně</i> ,	not any more.

Vidíš něco? — Co vidíš? — Nevidím nic*).

Doest thou see something? — What doest thou see? — I do not see anything.

**Vidíte dobře? — Ano, vidím všecko.
— Oni to vidí dobře.**

Do you (or can you) see well? — Yes, I can see all. — They see it well.

Viděli jsme vlak; — viděli jste ho také?

We have seen a train; — have you seen it too?

Neviděli jsme ho; — děti ho viděly.

We have not seen it; — the children saw it.

Zde budeme viděti všecko. — Naši přátelé budou viděti nás hned.

Here we shall see all. — Our friends will see us immediately.

Kdo tu sedí? — To jsem já. — Proč tu sedíš? — Běž ven; — běžte oba ven.

Who sits here? — It is I. — Why doest thou sit here? — Run out; — go out both (of you).

Seděli jste pořád; — večer budete seděti zas.

You have been sitting all the time; — in the evening you will sit again.

Drž koně a mlč. — Držte opratě a mlče. — Držíte pevně? — Držíme pevně.

Hold (thou) the horse and keep still. — Hold (you) the lines and keep still. — Do you hold fast? — We hold fast.

**Oni nás slyší. — Žádný nás neslyší.
— Ta holka nás slyšela. — Slyšeli nás.**

They hear us. — Nobody hears us. — That girl has heard us. — They have heard us.

Prší; slyším to. — Slyšíte dešť?

It rains; I hear it. — Do you hear the rain?

**Neprší ještě; ale bude pršeti.
Včera pršelo silně; — před tím nepršelo už dávno.**

It does not rain yet; but it will rain. — Yesterday it rained hard; — before that it had not rained for a long time.

*^o) There is a double negation in Bohemian, similar to the vulgar English way of speaking: *I don't see nothing*. See Note 1, Lesson V.

Ty šaty sluší vám výborně.

Ten klobouk mi nesluší; stydím se za něj.

Nestyd' se; sluší ti dobré dost.

**Tvé prádlo je špinavé; nestydíš se?
Styd' se !**

Umíš česky? — Ano já umím česky.

Umíte anglicky? — Trochu.

Umíte německy? — Uměl jsem dobré; ale zapomněl jsem trochu.

**Umíš hráti na piano? — Neumím.
— Umíte zpívat? — Neumím.**

**Naše děti umějí česky a anglicky,
— a žádný jiný jazyk.**

Rozumějí německy? — Nerozumějí.

Házej kamení za plot. — Neházej kamení na cestu.

Házejte ty pytle dolu. — Neházejte tak rychle.

**Házeli jsme dříví na hromadu, —
a budeme házetí zas. — Otec to poroučí.**

Házejí ti hoši kamení? — Neházejí. — Už neházejí.

Už dávno neházejí.

That suit of clothes fits you very well.
That hat does not fit me; I am ashamed of it.

Do not be ashamed; it fits thee well enough.

Thy linen is dirty; art thou not ashamed?—Shame on you!

Doest thou know Bohemian?—Yes, I know Bohemian.

Do you know English? — A little.

Do you know German? — I knew it well; but I have forgotten it somewhat.

Doest thou know how to play on the piano? — I do not.— Can you sing? — I can not.

Our children know Bohemian and English, — and no other tongue.

Do they understand German? — they do not (understand).

Throw (thou) the stones behind the fence. — Do not throw the stones on the road.

Throw (you) the sacks down. — Don't throw so fast.

We have been throwing the wood on a heap, — and we shall throw again. — Father commands it.

Are those boys throwing stones? — They are not. — They are not throwing any more.

They have not been throwing for a long time (i. e. they stopped throwing long since).

Note 2. The root or stem of the verb **viděti** is **vid**, to which the termination **ěti** is attached. All verbs ending in **ěti** or **eti** belong to the third conjugation.

The root of the verb is the usual form of the imperative: **běž**, run (thou); **sed'**, sit; **drž**, hold; etc. — The third person singular and plural of the present tense are alike: **vidí**, he (she, it) sees; **vidí**, they see. But in colloquial usage it commonly takes the longer form: **vidějí**, **se-dějí** (they see, they sit).

In some cases the imperative is formed by cutting off the terminal **ti** and adding **j**: **uměti**, — **uměj**, know; **házeti**, — **házej**, throw; etc. These verbs always use the long form in the third person plural: **umí**, he (she, it) knows; **umějí**, **ůmyřyee**, they know; — **házejí**, **házěyee**, they throw.

LESSON XXXIII.

Činiti,	<i>chiñiťi</i> ,	to do;	souditi,	<i>soúdřiti</i> ,	to judge;
choditi,	<i>khod'it'i</i> ,	to walk; to go (frequently);	platiti,	<i>plăt'iťi</i> ,	to pay; to rule, prevail, be in force;
mluviti,	<i>mlüviťi</i> ,	to speak, to tell;	svítiti,	<i>svíet'iťi</i> ,	to shine;
věřiti,	<i>vyérshiti</i> ,	to believe;	buditi,	<i>büd'iťi</i> ,	to wake;
učiti,	<i>üčiťi</i> ,	to teach;	blázniti,	<i>blázňiťi</i> ,	to fool; to be crazy;
učiti se,	<i>üčiťi sě</i> ,	to learn (i. e. to teach one's self);	modliti se,	<i>modliťi sě</i> ,	to pray.

Činím,	<i>chiñeem</i> ,	I do; — činíš , <i>chiñeesh</i> , thou doest; činí , <i>chiñee</i> , he (she, it) does; činíme , <i>činite</i> , činí (colloquially also <i>činějí</i>), <i>chiñeemě</i> , <i>chiñeetě</i> , <i>chiñee</i> or <i>chiñeyee</i> , we, you, they do; — či-nil jsem , <i>chiñil sem</i> , I did, or I have done; čiñ , do (thou); čiñte , <i>chiñtě</i> , do (you);
chodím,	<i>khod'eeem</i> ,	I walk; chodil jsem , <i>khod'il sem</i> , I walked; chod' , walk;

mluvím, *mlūveem*, I speak; **mluvil jsem,** *mlūvil sem*, I spoke; **mluv,** *mlūf*, speak;
věřím, *vyěrsheem*, I believe; **věřil jsem,** *vyěrshil sem*, I believed; **věř,** believe;
učím, *úcheem*, I teach; **učil jsem,** *úchil sem*, I taught; **uč,** teach;
učím se, *úcheem sě*, I learn; **učil jsem se,** *úchil sem sě*, I learned; **uč se,** learn;
soudím, *soúd'eeem*, I judge; **soudil jsem,** *soúd'il sem*, I judged; **sud'**, *súd'*, judge;
platím, *pláťeeem*, I pay; **platil jsem,** *pláťil sem*, I paid; **plat'**, pay;
svítím, *sweetťeeem*, I shine (I light); **svítil jsem,** *sweetťil sem*, I shined
 (lighted); **svít'**, shine (light);
budím, *búd'eeem*, I wake; **budil jsem,** *búd'il sem*, I waked; **bud'**, wake;
blázním, *blázňeeem*, I am crazy; **bláznil jsem,** *blázňil sem*, I was crazy;
blázni, *blázňi*, be crazy;
modlím se, *modleem sě*, I pray; **modlit jsem se,** I prayed; **modli se,** pray.

Učitel*), m.	<i>úchitel</i> ,	the teacher;	kresliti,	<i>kresslit'i</i> ,	to draw;
učitelka , f.	<i>úchitelkă</i> ,	a female teacher;	živý, á, é	<i>živee,</i>	living;
žák, m.	<i>žák,</i>	the scholar;	nahlas,	<i>náhlás,</i>	aloud;
soudee, m.	<i>soútsě,</i>	the judge;	pilně,	<i>pilňě,</i>	diligently;
zákon, m.	<i>zákon,</i>	the law;	právě,	<i>právyě,</i>	rightly;
kostel, m.	<i>kostel,</i>	the church;	křivě,	<i>krshivyě,</i>	wrongly;
lampa, f.	<i>lámpă,</i>	the lamp;	podle,	<i>pödlě,</i>	according to;
			dříve,	<i>drsheeve,</i>	formerly.

*) **Učitel**, the teacher; **učitele**, *úchitellě*, of the teacher; **učiteli**, *úchitelli*, to the teacher; (plural) **učitélé**, *úchitellé*, the teachers; — like **přítel**, **přátelé** (see foot-note on page 97).

EXERCISES.

Čiň dobré a budeš šťasten.

Co jsi učinil? Neněchinil jsem nic.

— On to učinil.

Chlapec chodí do školy; — obě děti chodí do školy.

Chodíte často do města? — Dříve chodil jsem tam často; — nyní tam nechodím.

Proč nechodíte? — Nemám čas.

Mluv nahlas; já tě neslyším.

Mluvil jsi s učitelem? — Nemluvil; ale mluvil jsem s učitelkou.

Věří ti učitel? — On vždy mi věří, protože mluvím pravdu. — To rád slyším.

Učitel učí nás mluviti pravdu. — Učil nás tomu vždycky.

Uč se pilně. — Učte se dobře. — Učme se společně.

Co se učíš*)? — Zeměpis. — Co vy se učíte? — Kresliti. — Kreslíte dobře. — Žák kreslil pěkně.

Soudil jsem křivě. — Vy jste soudili právě. — Soudeč soudil podle zákona.

Do good and thou shalt be happy.
What hast thou done? — I have not done anything. — He has done it.
The boy goes to school; — both children go to school.

Do you often go to town? — Formerly I went there often; — now I do not go there.

Why do you not go? — I have no time.

Speak loud; I do not hear thee.
Hast thou spoken with the teacher?
— I have not (spoken); but I spoke with the lady teacher.

Does the teacher believe you? — He always believes me, because I speak the truth. — I like to hear that.

The teacher teaches us to speak the truth. — He has taught us that always.

Learn(thou)diligently.—Learn(you) well. — Let us learn together.

What doest thou learn? — Geography.—What is it you learn? — To draw. — You draw well. — The scholar drew nicely.

I judged wrong. — You judged right. — The judge judged according to law.

*) This is the colloquial expression. In the written language, *učiti* and *učíti se* govern the dative case, responding to the question *čemu?* (See page 82.) Hence we should write: *čemu se učíš?* what doest thou learn? *čemu učíte?* what do you teach? And the answer would be: *zeměpisu.*

Zákon platí, vždy platil a musí vždy platit.

Budil jsem každé ráno celou rodu časně.

Myslím že blázníš. — Ten člověk blázní. — Neblázní! — Bláznil jsi? — Ba bláznil jsem!

Měsíc ještě svítí; svítí celou noc. — Ta lampa svítí špatně; včera svítila dobré.

Modli se! — Modleme se! — Lidé modlí se v kostele. — Kněz modlil se za živé*) i za mrtvé.

The law rules, always ruled, and must always rule.

I waked up every morning the whole family early.

I think that thou art crazy. — That man is crazy. — Don't be crazy! Wast thou crazy? — Surely, I was crazy!

The moon still shines; it has been shining all night. — That lamp shines badly; yesterday it shined well.

Pray! — Let us pray! — People pray in church. — The priest prayed for the living and for the dead.

Note 1. The root or stem of the verb **činiti** is **čin**, to which the termination **iti** is attached. All verbs ending in **iti** belong to the fourth conjugation.

The root of the verb is the common form of the imperative: **čin**, do; **choď**, walk; **mluv**, speak; etc. In some cases, however, only the final **ti** is thrown off to form the imperative: **blázni**, be crazy; **modli se**, pray.

Note 2. The verbs **bydliti**, **mysliti**, **musiti** (to reside, to think, must) are also written **bydleti**, **mysleti**, **museti**, and in popular language this form is always employed. This does not materially modify their inflection, as the third and fourth conjugation are essentially almost identical. For instance :

*) **Žívý**, living; plural: **živí**, in the objective case **živé**. These distinctions, however, disappear in common discourse. This adjective also has an indefinite or short form (see Note 2, Lesson XXIII): **živ**, a, o. For instance: **je posud živ**, he is still living; **matka je živa**, the mother is living; **dítě je živo**, the child is living. The expression **živ a zdráv**, pronounced **žif a zdráf**, is frequently heard.

(Third conjugation)

seděti,	<i>seděti</i> ,	to sit	
sedím,	<i>sedēem,</i>	I sit	
seděl jsem,	<i>sedēl sem,</i>	I sat	
seděl,	<i>sedēl,</i>	sit (thou)	
budu seděti,	<i>būdū sedēti</i>	I shall sit	

(Fourth conjugation)

činiti,	<i>chiñitī</i> ,	to do	
činím,	<i>chiñeem,</i>	I do	
činil jsem,	<i>chiñil sem,</i>	I did	
činí,	<i>chiñi,</i>	do (thou)	
budu činiti,	<i>būdū chiñitī</i>	I shall do.	

The above three verbs, in colloquial discourse, always take in the third person plural the form : **bydlejí**, **myslejí**, **musejí**, *bidlēyee*, *mislēyee*, *mūsēyee* (they reside, they think, they must); whereas the proper grammatical form is like the third person singular : **bydlí**, **myslí**, **musí**.

LESSON XXXIV.

Volati, *volātī*, to call;

běhati, *byěhātī*, to run (about);

čekati, *chekātī*, to wait;

dělati, *dělātī*, to do, to make, to work;

hledati, *hłedātī*, to seek, to look for;

doufati, *doūfātī*, to hope;

Volám, *volám*, I call; **voláš**, *volášh*, thou callest; **volá**, he (she, it) calls;

voláme, *voláte*, *volají*, *volámē*, *volítē*, *volāyee*, we, you, they call;

— **volal jsem**, *volál sem*, I called; **volej**, *voley*, call (thou);

volejte, *voleytē*, call (you);

běhám, *byěhám*, I run; **běhal jsem**, *byěhāl sem*, I was running;

běž, *byěž*, run;

čekám, *chekám*, I wait; **čekal jsem**, *chekāl sem*, I waited;

čekej, *chekey*, wait;

dělám, *dělám*, I do, I make; **dělal jsem**, *dělāl sem*, I did, I made;

dělej, *děley*, do, make;

*) Reiterative form of **prodati**; see Note 5, Lesson XIII.

prodati, *prodātī*, to sell;

prodávati*), *prodávātī*, to be selling;

povídati, *poveedātī*, to say, to tell;

trestati, *trestātī*, to punish;

znáti, *znátī*, to know;

ptáti se, *ptátī sě*, to ask, to inquire;

plovati, *plovātī*, to swim.

hledám, *hlédám*, I seek; **hledal jsem,** *hléděl sem*, I sought; **hledej,** *hlé-dey*, seek;
doufám, *doúfám*, I hope; **doufal jsem,** *doúfál sem*, I hoped; **doufej,** *doúfey*, hope;
prodám, I shall sell (having a future meaning; see Note 7, Lesson XIV);
prodal jsem, *prodál sem*, I sold; **prodej,** *prodéy*, sell;
prodávám, I am selling: **prodával jsem,** *prodávál sem*, I was selling: **prodávej,** *prodávey*, sell;
povídám, *poveedám*, I say; **povídal jsem,** *poveedál sem*, I said; **povídej,** *poveedey*, tell;
trestám (also **tresci,** *trestsi*), I punish; **trestal jsem,** *trestál sem*, I punished; **trestej,** *trestey*, punish;
znám, I know; **znal jsem,** *znál sem*, I knew; **znej,** *zney*, know;
ptám se, I ask; **ptal jsem se,** *ptál sem sě*, I asked; **ptej se,** *ptey sě*, ask.

Květina, f.	<i>kwyétină</i>	{	flower
kvítko, n.	<i>kweetko</i>		
kytka, f.	<i>kitkă</i> ,		bouquet;
majetek, m.	<i>máyétek</i> ,		property;
na přesrok,	<i>nă prshésrok</i> ,		next year
před lety,	<i>prshed lety</i> ,		years ago;
druzí,	<i>drúzee</i> ,		the others;
naši,	<i>năshi</i> ,		our folks;

spatřiti,	<i>spátrshítî</i> , to see (or to meet);
věděti,	<i>vyéd'etî</i> , to know;
poslušný, á, é	<i>poslúshnee</i> , obedient;
neposlušný,	disobedient;
tento (f. tato, n. toto),	<i>tentō</i> , this one, this here.

EXERCISES.

**Voláš mě? — Koho voláš? — Koho
jsi volal?**

**Volámocha; kde je? — Běhá ven-
ku; všechny děti běhají venku.**

**Volal jsem tě; kde's (abbrev. of
kde jsi) byl?**

Doest thou call me? — Whom doest thou call? — Whom didst thou call?

I call the boy; where is he? — He is running outside (i. e. out of doors); — all the children are running outside.

I called thee; where hast thou been?

Běhal jsem na zahradě; — čekal jsem až mě budete volati.

Co jsi dělal na zahradě? — Nedělal jsem nic; — hledal jsem květiny.

Je tam mnoho květin? — Ano.

Co druzí dělali na zahradě? — Hledali květiny se mnou.

Hledej pěkné květiny a dělej kytky. — Jděte*) oba, ty a Karel, a hledejte kvítka.

Doufám že na přesrok budeme živí a zdrávi. — Doufejme!

Doufal jsem spatřiti vás zde. — Všichni doufali sme sejíti se s vámi.

Prodám svůj majetek. — Prodejte ho brzy. — Můj bratr prodal svůj majetek lacino.

Naši prodali farmu a povídají že půjdou do města.

Povídal jsem mu, že mám dům na prodej. — Prodávám všecko co mám.

Tento majetek není na prodej. — Kdo to povídal? — Kdo vám to povídal?

Každý to povídá. — Všichni to povídají.

Znáš mě? — Znám tě dobře; — znal jsem tě už před lety.

I was running in the garden; — I was waiting until you would call me. What wast thou doing in the garden? — I was not doing anything; — I was looking for flowers.

Are there many flowers there? — Yes. What have the others been doing in the garden? — They were looking for flowers with me.

Look for nice flowers, and make bouquets. — Go both of you, — thou and Charles, and look for flowers.

I hope that next year we shall be alive and well. — Let us hope!

I hoped to see (or meet) you here. — We all hoped to meet you.

I shall sell my property. — Sell it soon.—My brother sold his property cheap.

Our folks have sold the farm, and they say that they will go to the city.

I told him that I had a house for sale. — I am selling everything I have.

This property is not for sale. — Who said so? — Who told you so?

Everybody says so. — They all say so.

Doest thou know me? — I know thee well; — I knew you already years ago.

*) The infinitive is **jít**, *yēt̪i*, to go; see Lesson XIII.

Každý mě zná; — všichni mě znají.

Znáte mého otce? — Neznám ho.
— Znal jste mou matku? — Neznal jsem ji.

Proč se ptáš? — Ptám se, protože chci věděti.*)

Ptáte se po mě? — Ptal jsem se kde bydlíte; — povídali mi, že prodal jste svůj dům. — Neprodal jsem ho ještě.

Neptám se co učitel povídal; já to vím.

Věděl jsem, že chlapec je neposlušný; — víte že musel jsem trestat ho.

To víme. — Všichni víme, že trestal jste ho často.

Everybody knows me; — they all know me.

Do you know my father? — I do not know him. — Did you know my mother? — I did not know her.

Why doest thou ask? — I ask because I want to know.

Do you ask for me? — I asked where you lived; — they told me that you had sold your house. — I have not sold it yet.

I do not ask what the teacher said; I know it.

I knew that the boy was disobedient; — you know that I was obliged to punish him.

We know that. — We all know that you punished him often.

Note 1. The root or stem of the verb **volati** is **vol**, to which the termination **ati** is attached. Verbs ending in **ati** belong to the fifth conjugation.

Note 2. Some verbs ending in **áti** form their present like the verbs of the first conjugation ending in **íti**, (**bíti**, to beat; **biju**, **biješ**, **bije**, etc.); for example:

hráti, **hráti**, to play: **hraju***), **hraješ**, **hraje**, **hráyū**, **hráyesh**, **hráyě**, I play, thou playest, he plays; **hrajeme**, **hrajete**, **hrajou****) **hráyemě**, **hráyetě**, **hráyoū**, we, you, they play; — **hrál jsem**, **hrál sem**, I played; **hraj**, **hráy**, play.

*) **Věděti** (to know) is one of the thoroughly irregular verbs: **vím**, **vív**, **ví**, **veem**, **veesh**, **vee**, I know, thou knowest, he (she, it) knows; **víme**, **víte**, **vědí**, **veemě**, **veetě**, **vyěd'ee**, we, you, they know; — **věděl jsem**, **vyěd'el sem**, I knew; **věz**, **vyěz**, know thou; **vězte**, **vyězte**, know you.

) **Hraji, **hrají**, I play, they play) are considered the pure grammatical forms of the first person singular and third person plural; but **hraju**, **hrajou**, are exclusively used in the popular language.

However, this verb also follows the rule of the fifth conjugation in the present tense: **hrám, hráš, hrá;** **hráme, hráte, hrají** (I play, thou playest, he plays; we, you, they play).

A few verbs modify the letter á in the present tense:

hráti, hrsháti, to warm; — **hřeju** (or **hřeji**) **hřeješ, hřeje;** **hřejeme, hřejete,** **hřejou** (or **hřejí**); I warm, thou warmest, he warms; etc.

— **hřál jsem,** **hrshál sem,** I warmed; **hřej,** **hrshey,** warm;

přáti, prsháti, to wish; — **přeju** (or **přeji**), I wish; **přál jsem,** I wished; **přej,** wish;

smáti se, **smáti sě,** to laugh; — **směju se** (or **směji se**), **smyěyū sě,** I laugh; **smál jsem se,** **smál sem sě,** I laughed; **směj se,** **smyěy sě,** laugh.

Note 3. There are some verbs essentially belonging to this conjugation, which show a considerable deviation in the present tense and imperative. The following are most frequently met with:

bráti, to take; — **beru, bereš, bere,** **bereme, berete,** **berou,** **berū, beresh,** **berě,** **berěmě,** **berětě,** **berouň** (I take, thou takest, etc); **bral jsem,** **brǎl sem,** I took; **ber,** take;

práti, to wash; — **peru, perū,** I wash; **pral jsem,** **prǎl sem,** I washed; **per,** wash;

psáti, to write; — **píšu, peeshū,** I write; **psal jsem,** **psǎl sem,** I wrote; **piš,** **pish,** write;

kázati, to preach (or to command); — **kážu,** **kážū,** I preach; **kázel jsem,** I preached; **kaž,** preach;

tázati se, to ask; — **tážu se,** **tážū sě,** I ask; **tázel jsem se,** **tázǎl sem sě,** I asked; **taž se,** ask;

plakati, to weep; — **plaču, plāchū** (but also **plakám**) I weep; **plakal jsem,** **plákǎl sem,** I wept; **plač,** **plāch,** weep;

skákatı, to jump; — **skáču,** **skáčhū** (but also **skákám**), I jump; **skákal jsem,** **skákǎl sem,** I was jumping; **skákej,** **skákey,** jump;

stonati, to be sick; — **stůñu,** **stooñū** (but also **stonám,** **stõnám**), I am sick; **stůňš,** **stooñesh,** thou art sick; **stůňě,** **stooñě,** he is sick, etc.; **stonej,** **stõney,** be sick.

LESSON XXXV.

Milovati, *milōvāt̪i*, to love; **děkovati,** *d̄ekōvāt̪i*, to thank; **litovati,** *litōvāt̪i*, to be sorry, to regret; **jmenovati,** *menōvāt̪i*, to name, to call; **jmenovati se,** *m. s̄e*, to be called; **kupovati,** *kūpōvāt̪i*, to be buying;

pracovati, *prātsōvāt̪i*, to work; **radovati se,** *rādōvāt̪i s̄e*, to rejoice; **opakovati,** *ōpākōvāt̪i*, to repeat; **pamatovati,** *pāmātōvāt̪i*, to remember; **podporovati,** *pōdporōvāt̪i*, to support, to assist; **ztravovati,** *strāvōvāt̪i*, to board.

Miluju (or **miluji***) *milūyū*, I love; **miluješ,** *milūyesh*, thou lovest; **miluje,** *milūyē*, he (she, it) loves; **milujeme,** *milūyemē*; **milujete,** *milūyō* (or **miluji***) *milūyēt̪ē*, *milūyēt̪ē*, *milūyō*, we, you, they love; — **miloval jsem,** *milōvāl sem*, I loved; **miluj,** *milūy*, love; **milujte,** *milūyt̪ē*, love (you);

děkuju (or **děkuji**), *d̄ekōyū*, I thank; **děkoval jsem,** *d̄ekōvāl sem*, I thanked; **děkuj,** *d̄ekūy*, thank;

lituju (or **lituji**), *litōyū*, I regret; **litoval jsem,** *litōvāl sem*. I regretted; **lituj,** *litūy*, regret;

jmenuju (or **jmenuji**), *menūyū*, I name; **jmenoval jsem,** *menōvāl sem*, I named; **jmenuj,** *menūy*, name;

jmenuju se, *menūyū s̄e*, I am called; **jmenoval jsem se,** *menōvāl sem s̄e*. I was called; **jmenuj se,** *menūy s̄e*, call yourself;

kupuju (or **kupuji**), *kūpūyū*, I am buying; **kupoval jsem,** *kūpōvāl sem*, I was buying; **kupuj,** *kūpūy*, buy (or rather: keep buying);

*) **Miluju, milujou** (I love, they love) is always used in ordinary conversation; **miluji, milují,** *milūyi, milūyee* (I love, they love) prevails in the written language, being considered the proper grammatical form. This applies to all verbs of this conjugation: **děkuju, děkujou**, or **děkuji, děkují** (I thank, they thank); **lituju, litujou**, or **lituji, litují** (I regret, they regret); etc.

pracuju (or **pracuji**), *prátsyū*, I work; **pracoval jsem**, *prátsvál sem*, I worked; **pracuj**, *prátsy*, work;
raduju se (or **raduji se**), *rádvyú sě*, I rejoice; **radoval jsem se**, *rádovál sem sě*, I rejoiced; **raduj se**, *rádvy sě*, rejoice;
opakuju (or **opakuji**), *ópákvyú*, I repeat; **opakoval jsem**, *ópákovál sem*, I repeated; **opakuj**, *ópákvy*, repeat;
pamatuju (or **pamatuji**), *pámátyú*, I remember; **pamatoval jsem**, *pámátvál sem*, I remembered; **pamatuj**, *pámáty*, remember;
podporuju (or **podporuji**), *pödporvyú*, I support; **podporoval jsem**, *pödporvál sem*, I supported; **podporuj**, *pödporvy*, support;
žaluju (or **žaluje**), *žálvyú*, I complain; **žaloval jsem**, *žálovvál sem*, I complained; **žaluj**, *žálvy*, complain.

Bůh*	m.	<i>booh</i> ,	God;
blížní**	m.	<i>bleežníee</i> ,	the fellow man, (neighbor);
král,		<i>král</i> ,	the king;
královna,		<i>králövnä</i> ,	the queen;
žebrák, m.		<i>žébrák</i> ,	the beggar;
kamarád, m.		<i>kämäräd</i> ,	the comrade;
objevitel, m.		<i>obyě-vitel</i> ,	the discoverer;
svět, m.		<i>swyět</i> ,	the world;
země, f.		<i>zemyě</i> ,	the country; the earth;
vlast, f.		<i>vläst</i> ,	one's country;
dávati,		<i>dáväťi</i> ,	to give, to offer;
život, m.		<i>živöt</i> ,	life;
válka, f.		<i>válkă</i> ,	war;

osud, m.	<i>osüd</i> ,	fate;
vychování, n.	<i>vykhöváñee</i> ,	education;
díl, m.	<i>d'eel</i> ,	a part;
výdělek, m.	<i>veed'elek</i> ,	earnings, wages, profit;
který, á, é	<i>kteree</i> or <i>keree</i> ,	which, what, who;
vespolek,	<i>vespölek</i> ,	{ all together; one another;
nazepamět,	<i>näspämyět</i> ,	by heart;
z paměti,	<i>spämyěti</i> ,	from memory;
svobodný, á, é	<i>swobodnee</i> ,	free; single;
Řimané,	<i>rshimäné</i> ,	the Romans;
Václav,	<i>vátslav</i> ,	Venceslaus, Wencel.

*) **Bůh, Boha, Bohu, s Bohem** (*booh*, *böhř*, *böhü*, *sböhém*), God, of God (God's), to God, with God.

) Nouns having the termination of adjectives are declined like adjectives of the corresponding termination. Hence we decline: **blížní, — **blížního**, of (our) fellow man or neighbor; **blížnímu**, to (our) neighbor; **s blížním**, with (our) neighbor. See Note 1, Lesson XXI.

EXERCISES.

Miluj blížního svého*). — **Milujte se vespolek.**

Miluješ rodiče své? — Miluju je velmi.

Matka miluje své dítě. — Děti milují matku svou.

Washington miloval svou vlast. — Římané milovali válku.

Co kupuješ? — Kupuji obilí. — Co kupoval jsi onehdy? — Kupoval jsem pár koní.

Kdo kupoval tento dům? — Naši kupovali ten dům; — dávali za něj dva tisíce.

Chceš něco jísti? — Nechci nic, děkuju.

Dal jsem žebráku pět centů a on děkoval mi.

Děkujme Bohu, že jsme zdrávi. — Děkuj svému osudu, že jsi rozen ve svobodné zemi.

Děkujte rodičům za dobré výchování.

Lituju že musím pryč. — Litoval jsem, že musil jsem odejít. — Zůstaň zde, povídali všichni, nebo budeš litovati.

Love thy neighbor. — Love (you) one another.

Doest thou love thy parents? — I love them greatly.

The mother loves her child. — The children love their mother.

Washington loved his country. — The Romans loved war.

What art thou buying? — I am buying grain. — What wert thou buying the other day? — I was buying a pair of horses.

Who has been buying this house? — Our folks were buying that house; — they offered for it two thousand.

Doest thou want something to eat? — I do not want anything, thank you.

I gave (to) the beggar five cents and he thanked me.

Let us thank God that we are healthy. — Thank thy fate that thou wast born in a free country.

Thank (your) parents for a good education.

I am sorry that I must (go) away. — I was sorry that I had to leave. — Stay here, they all said, or thou wilt be sorry.

*) This is the objective case, responding to **koho?** *whom?* It agrees with the possessive case; see Remark on page 86.

Jak se jmeneš? — **Jmenuju se Václav Zeman.** — A jak vy se jmennujete? — **Já se jmenuji Staněk.** — **Jmennuj mi pět dílů světa.**

Jak se jmenoval objevitel Ameriky? — **Krištof Kolumbus.**

Jak se jmenoval král, který ho podporoval? — **Ferdinand.** — A královna? — **Isabella.**

Pracuj pilně a budeš radovati se nad výdělkem.

Rád pracuješ? — **Ano, ale můj komarád nerad pracuje;** — on pořád žaluje, že musí pracovat.

Pracovali jsme celý den.

Učitel žaloval mi, že jsi neposlušný; — opakuju, že musíš být poslušný; — pamatuj si to!

Pamatuj co se učíš; — pamatuješ si to? — **Pamatuju to dobře;** — učím se to nazpamět.

Pamatujme na chudé; — podporujme je. — **Pamatujte že život jest krátký.**

What is thy name? — My name is WencelZeman.—And what is your name? — My name is Staněk. — Name (to me) the five parts of the world.

What was the name of the discoverer of America? — Christopher Columbus.

What was the name of the king who assisted him?— Ferdinand.— And of the queen? — Isabella.

Work diligently, and thou wilt rejoice over (thy) earnings.

Doest thou like to work? — Yes; but my comrade does not like to work; — he always complains that he must work.

We worked (*or* have been working) all day.

The teacher complained to me that thou art disobedient; — I repeat that thou must be obedient; — remember that!

Remember what thou learnest; — doest thou remember it? — I remember it well;—I learn it by heart.

Let us remember the poor; — let us support them. — Remember (you) that life is short.

Note. The root or stem of the verb **milovati** is **mil**, to which the termination **ovati** is attached. Verbs ending in **ovati** (when this termination is attached to the *root*) belong to the sixth conjugation.

LESSON XXXVI.

(Já) **bych** *bikh* I should
 (ty) **bys** *bis* thou wouldst
 (on) **by** *bi* he would

(my) **bychom** *bikhōm* } we should
 ,, **bysme** *bismē* }
 (vy) **byste** *bistě* you would
 (oni) **by** *bi* they would

Byl*) **bych** *bill bikh* I should be
byl bys *bill bis* thou wouldst be
byl by *bill bi* he would be;
 etc.

Byl bych byl, } I should have
byl bych býval } been;
byl bys býval, thou wouldst have
 been; etc.

Nesl bych, *nessl bikh*, I should
 (or "would") carry;
minul bych, *minūl bikh*, I should
 pass
viděl bych, *viděl bikh*, I should
 see
činil bych, *čiñil bikh*, I should
 do
volal bych, *völäl bikh*, I should
 call
miloval bych, *milöväl bikh*, I should
 love

Abych (já) *ăbikh* that I should
abys (ty) *ăbis* that thou shouldst
aby (on) *ăbi* that he should; etc.

Kdybych *gdibikh* if I should
kdybys *gdibis* if thou wouldst
kdyby *gdibi* if he would (or
 simply "if").

Abych byl *ăbikh bill* that I should be
abys byl *ăbis bill* that thou
 shouldst be
aby byl *ăbi bill* that he should be; etc.

Kdybych byl, if I were,
kdybys byl, if thou wert,
kdyby byl, if he were; etc.

nesli bychom (or **bysme**), *nessli bikhōm*, we should (or "would") carry
minuli bychom, *minūli bikhōm*, we
 should pass
viděli bychom, *viděli bikhōm*, we
 should see
činili bychom, *čiñili bikhōm*, we
 should do
volali bychom, *völäli bikhōm*, we
 should call
milovali bychom, *milöväli bikhōm*,
 we should love.

*) In the feminine gender **byla bych**, **byla bys**, **byla by**; third person neutre: **bylo by**, it would be. See Lesson IX.

Byl bych nesl, I should have carried;
byl bych minul, I should have passed;
byl bych viděl, I should have seen;

byl bych činil, I should have done;
byl bych volal, I should have called;
byl bych miloval, I should have loved.

Kdyby, *gdibi*, if
kterýkoli, *ktřeekolí*, whichever, any
kdož (same as **kdo**), *gdøž*, who
či, čili, *chi, chillí*, or
říci, *rsheetsi*, to say, to tell
rekni, *rshékñi*, say, tell (thou)
řekněte, *rshékñetë*, say, tell (you)
těžký, á, é *téshkee*, heavy, hard

kufr, m. *küff'er*, the trunk
košík, m. *kosheek*, the basket
list, m. *list*, the letter
vodopád, m. *vödöpád*, a waterfall
krajina, f. *kräyină*, a section of country
počasí, n. *pöchässsee*, the weather
štěkatí, *shťekäťi*, to bark.

EXERCISES.

Nesl bych ten kufr, kdyby nebyl tak těžký.

I would carry that trunk, if it were not so heavy.

Byl bych nesl ten kufr, kdybyste byli chtěli.

I should have carried that trunk, if you had wanted it.

My bysme nesli košík a vy byste nesli pytel.

We should carry the basket, and you would carry the sack.

Četl bys tu knihu? — Četl bych ji rád, kdybych ji měl.

Wouldst thou read that book? — I would like to read it, if I had it.

My bychom (or my bysme) rádi četli dnešní noviny.

We should like to read to-day's newspaper.

Které noviny byste rádi četli? — Kterékoliv.

What newspaper would you like to read? — Any newspaper.

Byli bychom (or byli bysme) četli ten list, ale byl tuze dlouhý.

We should have read that letter, but it was too long.

Pil bych pivo, kdybych ho měl, — Pilbyste*) čaj? — Nepil bych nic.

I should drink beer, if I had it. — Would you drink tea? — I would not drink anything.

*) Speaking to one person and using the second person plural: **vy, you**; speaking to several persons, we should say: **pili byste** (would you drink).

Kdyby bylo pěkně, sil bych pšenici.
Kdyby pes štěkal, kopnul bych ho.
Viděl bych rád vodopád Niagaru.
Na cestě do Iowy viděli bysme řeku
 Mississippi.

Kdybyste přijeli k nám, viděli by-
 ste hezkou krajinnu.

Kdybych věděl, jaké počasí bude,
 řekl bych vám.

Chodil bych k tobě, **kdybys** chtěl.

On by chodil k vám často. — **Proč**
 by nechodil? — **Jen** ať chodí!

Věřil bys tomu? — **Věřil** byste
 že nemám čas? — **Nevěřil** bych
 to**). —

Věřili by nám? — **Myslím** že věřili
 by vám to.

Prodal bych rád můj obchod. —
 Těžko byste prodal nyní.

Litoval bych, kdybyste prodal ten
 obchod. — **Já** bych nelitoval nic.

Je čas, abych šel. — **Řekni** mu
 aby šel.

Chei abys přišel brzy. — **Chei** aby-
 ste odešli.

Cheete abych to kupil?

If it were nice*), I should sow wheat
 If the dog barked, I should kick him.
 I should like to see the Niagara Falls.
 On (our) way to Iowa we should see
 the river Mississippi.

If you would come to us, you would
 see a nice country.

If I knew what kind of weather it
 will be, I should tell you.

I should come to thee (i. e. "come to
 to see thee often"), if thou wouldst
 wish it.

He would come to you often.— Why
 should he not come?— Do let him
 come!

Wouldst thou believe it? — Would
 you believe that I have no time?
 — I should not believe it.

Would they believe us?—I think that
 they would believe you (it).

I would like to sell my business. —
 You would find it hard to sell now.

I should be sorry, if you would sell
 that business. — I should not be
 sorry at all.

It is time that I should go.—Tell him
 to go, or to come (i. e. tell him that
 he should go).

I want thee to come soon. — I want
 you to leave.

Do you want me to buy that?

*) That is, "if the weather were nice".

) **Věřiti to (accus. case), **věřiti tomu** (dative case); both are used
 with equal propriety.

Kdybys byl zde býval, byl bys viděl všelico.

Kdybych tam byl, bylo by dobré.—

Kdybych tam byl býval, byl bych rád.

If thou hadst been here, thou wouldst have seen different things.

If I were there, it would be well.—If I had been there, I should be glad.

Note 1. The English conjunctions *if*, *whether*, used to introduce a conditional sentence, are expressed in Bohemian by the suffix *li*, or by *jestli*, *zdali*, *pakli*, *yestli*, *zdáli*, *pákli*:

Jsem-li, *sem-li* if I am,
jestli jsem, *yestli sem* whether I
zdali jsem, *zdáli sem* am;

byl-li jsem, *billi-li sem* if I
jestli jsem byl, *yestli sem billi* was,
zdali jsem byl, *zdáli sem billi* if I
pakli jsem byl, *pákli sem billi* have
 been.

budu-li, *budú li* if I shall
jestli budu, *yestli bídú* be; etc.

nesu-li, *nessu-li* if I carry;
jest-li nesu, *yestli nessu* if I

jsme-li, *smě-li* if we are,
jestli jsme, *yestli smě* whether
zdali jsme, *zdáli smě* we are;

byli-li jsme, *billi-li smě* if we
jestli jsme byli, *yestli smě billi* were,
zdali jsme byli, *zdáli smě billi* if we
pakli jsme byli, *pákli smě billi* have
 been;

budeme-li, *budémě-li* if we
jestli budeme, *yestli bídemě* shall
 be; etc.

nesl-li jsem, *nessl-li sem* if I
jestli jsem nesl, *yestli sem nessl* carried

Arei (že), *artsi* of course,
ovšem (že), *ofshém* to be sure;

nikam, *níkám*, nowhere;
nikdo jiný, *nigdó yinee*, no one else;

ani my, *áñi me*, not even we,
 neither we;

zač je, *zách yě*, what is it worth;
zač jsou, *zách soú*, what are they
 worth;

mouka, f. *moňkă*, the flour;
tuna, f. *těnă*, a ton;
přijeti, *prshiyěti*, to arrive (by
 some conveyance);

směti, *smyět'i*, to be allowed,
 to dare;

smím-li, *smeemli*, if I may;

víte-li, *veetěli*, if you know;

slíbiti, *sleebit'i*, to promise;

pověděti, *povyědět'i*, to tell;

pověz, *povyěz*, tell (thou);

utratiti, *utrātít'i*, to spend;

vzítí si, *vzeet'i si*, to take (to
 one's self);

Note 2. The pronoun **si** has the same meaning as **sobě**, *sobyč*, “to one's self”, “for one's self”. It often accompanies verbs, denoting the closest relation between the subject and its predicate, somewhat after the manner of reflexive verbs (connected with **se**, the same as **sebe**, one's self). For instance :

Vzíti means simply “to take”; **vzít si** means “to take to one's self”, — to take for one's own use or exclusive possession. — **Vzít kytku**, to take a flower; **vzít si kytku**, to take (and keep for one's self) a flower. — **Vzít si ženu**, to take to one's self a wife; **vzal si ženu**, he took unto himself a wife.

Vezmi si peníze, take (to thyself) money, *or* the money; **vezměte si piva**, take (yourself) some beer; **vezměme si vína**, let us take (ourselves) some wine.

Koupím klobouk, I shall buy a hat; **koupím si klobouk**, I shall buy (myself) a hat.—**I shall buy me a hat**; **kup si klobouk**, buy (thyself) a hat.

Dej udělat obraz (*děj* *udělat* *obraz*), let (thou) a picture be made; order a picture to be made; **dej si udělat obraz**, let a picture be made for thyself. — **Dejte udělat šaty**, have a suit of clothes made; **dejte si udělat šaty**, have a suit of clothes made for yourself.

Note 3. The *finite* verb **vzíti** (to take) has only a past and future tense, — the *continuous* verb **bráti** (to take) supplying the present: **beru**, I take. See Note 3 on page 153.

Vzal jsem, **vzal jsi**, **vzal**, I took, thou tookest, hee took; **vezmu**, **vezmeš**, **vezme**, I shall take, thou wilt take, he will take; **vezmi**, **vezměte**, take (thou, you).

In common discourse we often hear **vemu**, **vemeš**, **veme**, **věmū**, **věmesh**, **věmě**, in place of **vezmu**, **vezmeš**, **vezme**; and **vem**, **vemte**, **věmtě**, in place of **vezmi**, **vezměte**.

EXERCISES.

Ptáte se, jsem-li rád? — Ovšem že jsem rád.	You ask if I am glad? — Of course I am glad.
Ptal jsem se, jsou-li naši zde. — Ařci že jsou , — pravil pan Hronek.	I asked if our folks were here. — Of course they are, — said Mr. Hronek.

Rád bych věděl, jestli sestra přijela.

Ráda bych věděla (f.), zdali bratr přijel.

Rád bych slyšel, je-li můj syn živ nebo mrtev.

Co myslíte, bude pršet? — Kdož ví, bude-li pršet čili nebude.

Myslite-li že bude pršet, nepůjdunikam.

Chci vědět má-li peníze; — nemáli, ať odejde.

Dám-li mu peníze, utratí je. — Dáme-li mu dollar, bude spokojen. — Dáte-li mi něco, budu rád.

Podívám se, zdali je otec doma. — Pověz mi pak, je-li doma nebo není.

Povězte mi, musím-li jít domu nebo ne. — Ať poví ti, musíš-li jít do školy.

Povězte mi, smím-li vzít si růži. — Smíš; ale nikdo jiný nesmí.

Vezmi si tu kytku. — Já nesmím.

Proč nesmíš? — Nesmíš-li ty, nesmím já.

Nesmí-li nikdo, nesmíme ani my.

Nevím smíme-li, nebo nesmíme.

To nesmíš dělat! — Jestli nesmími, teda nebudu.

Otec slíbil mi dollar, budu-li hodný.

I should like to know, if sister has arrived.

I should like to know if brother has arrived.

I should like to hear whether my son is alive or dead.

What do you think, will it rain? —

Who knows if it will rain or not.

If you think that it will rain, I shall not go anywhere.

I want to know if he has money; — if he has not, let him go away.

If I give him money, he spends it.—

If we give him a dollar, he will be satisfied. — If you give me something, I shall be glad.

I shall see if father is at home.— Tell me then if he is at home or not.

Tell me whether I must go home or not. — Let him tell thee, whether thou must go to school.

Tell me if I may take a rose.— Thou mayest; but nobody else may.

Take that flower. — I dare not (I must not).

Why must thou not?— If thou must not, I must not.

If nobody is allowed, then we too are not allowed.

I don't know whether we may or not.

Thou must not do that!— If I must not, than I shall not.

Father promised me a dollar if I am (i. e. shall be) good.

Jestli ti ho slíbil, dá ti ho.

If he has promised it (to thee), he will give it to thee.

Povězte mi, víte-li zač je tuna se-na. — Víte-li pak, zač jsou prasata?

Tell me if you know what is a ton of hay worth. — Do you know what hogs are worth?

Znáte-li pak mě? — Víte-li*) pak, že jsem zde dávno?

Do you know me? — Do you know that I have been here a long time?

Note 4. The present participle *being* varies in Bohemian according to gender and number:

jsa, sā, m. — jsoue, soūts, f. and n. — jsouce, soūtsč, pl. of all three genders.

The past, *having been*, is rendered thus:

bvv, bif, m. — byvši, bifshi, f. and n. — byvše, bifshč, pl. of all three genders.

The following models will amply suffice for the verbs of all conjugations:

nesa	<i>nessā</i> , m.	carrying	sedě	<i>sed'e</i> , m.	sitting
nesoue	<i>nessoūts</i> , f. & n.	"	sedic,	<i>sed'eects</i> , f. & n.	"
nesouce	<i>nessoūtsč</i> , pl.	"	sedice	<i>sed'eectsč</i> , pl.	"
pije	<i>piyč</i> , m.	drinking	volaje	<i>volāyč</i> , m.	calling
pijíe	<i>piyeets</i> , f. & n.	"	volajíe	<i>volāyeets</i> , f. & n.	"
pijice	<i>piyeetsč</i> , pl.	"	volajíce	<i>volāyeetsč</i> , pl.	"
miluje	<i>millāyč</i> , m.	loving	Piv	<i>pif</i> , m.	having drank
milujíe	<i>millāyeets</i> , f. & n.	"	pivši	<i>pifshi</i> , f. & n.	"
milujíce	<i>millāyeetsč</i> , pl.	"	pivše	<i>pifshč</i> , pl.	"

seděv, sēd'ef, having sat; **volav, volāf**, having called; etc.

*) We may ask, for instance: **víte zač je mouka?** "do you know what flour is worth?" But if we ask: **víte-li pak zač je mouka?** or **zdali pak víte, zač je mouka?** there is a peculiar emphasis in the question, as if we say in English: "I wonder if you know what flour is worth?" — **Znáte mě?** "do you know me?" **Znáte-li pak mě?** or **zdali pak mě znáte?** "I wonder if you know me!"

Viděti, "to see", is irregular, forming its partic. like **nesti** : **vida** m., **vidouc** f. & n., **vidouce**, pl. (*vidě*, *vidoúts*, *vidoútsč*), seeing.

These participles occur in the written language and sometimes in solemu discourse, but are never used in ordinary conversation. Expressions may be greatly shortened and made incisive by their use; for instance :

"As he was going away from here, he fell down", — may be translated into Bohemian: **Jda odsud, upadl.** In common discourse, however, people would say : **Když šel odsud, upadl** (or **upadnul.***)

A verbal adjective is formed in Bohemian by adding an **i** to the present participle (f. and n.): **jsoucí**, *soútsee*, being; **nesoucí**, *nessoútsee*, carrying; **pijící**, *piyeetsee*, drinking; **volající**, *volýyeetsee*, calling; **milující**, *millýyeetsee*, loving. — They are rarely employed in common conversation, but frequently in writing:

Muž nesoucí kufr minul mě; a man carrying a trunk passed me. — **Rodiče milující své děti jsou starostliví o ně;** parents loving their children are anxious about them.

LESSON XXXVII.

THE PASSIVE VERB. In English the "past participle" is also the *passive participle*, employed to form the "passive voice" or passive verb-phrases: *I am carried; I was carried; I shall be carried.*

In Bohemian there is a special "passive participle", ending in **n** (**na** in the feminine, **no** is the neutre gender, — **ni**, **ny**, **na** in the plural), by which the passive voice of transitive verbs is formed :

Jsem nesen, *sem nessěn* (**nesena**, *nessěná* f.. **neseno**, *nessěnō* n.), I am carried; **jsme neseni**, *y, a, smě nesseñi*, we are carried; **byl jsem nesen**, *bill sem nessěn*, I was carried; **budu nesen,** *břdū nessěn*, I shall be carried.

*) **Padnouti**, *pădnouťi*, to fall; **upadnouti**, *üpădnouťi*, to fall down. As repeatedly stated in preceding lessons, the colloquial usage drops the final **i** of the infinitive, and the letter **t** has its ordinary hard sound: *pădnouť*, *üpădnouť*.

Jsem viděn, *sem viděn*, I am seen; | **jsem volán,** *sem volán*, I am called;
jsem učen, *sem učen*, I am taught; | **jsem milován,** *sem milován*, I am loved.

The passive participle of verbs of the first conjugation ending in **iti**, and of verbs of the second conjugation (ending in **outi**) terminates in **it** and **ut**; for instance, — **bíti**, **minouti** (to beat, to pass):

Jsem bit, *sem bit*, I am beat (whipped or punished); **byl jsem bit,** I was beat; **budu bit,** I shall be beat;
jsem minut, *sem minut*, I am passed; **byl jsem minut,** I was passed; **budu minut,** I shall be passed.

The imperative of the passive voice is expressed in Bohemian by **at̄**, which is already familiar to the student as an equivalent of the English "let":

at̄ jsem nesen, a, o,	at̄ sem nessěn,	let me be carried;
at̄ jsem bit, a, o,	at̄ sem bit,	let me be whipped;
at̄ jsem volán, a, o,	at̄ sem volán,	let me be called;
at̄ jsem milován, a, o,	at̄ sem milován,	let me be loved.

In English the past or passive participle is often used as an adjective; for example: "An *invited* guest."

In Bohemian every passive participle may be changed into an adjective by adding **ý** (and changing **a** into **á** in the feminine, **o** into **é** in the neutre gender). For instance:

nesen, a, o : neseny, á, é, carried	viděn, a, o : viděny, á, é, seen
bit, a, o : bitý, á, é, beaten	volán, a, o : volaný, á, é, called
minut, a, o : minutý, á, é, passed	milován, a, o : milovaný, á, é, loved, beloved.

In the termination **án**, **ána**, **áno** the long vowel **á** is shortened when the participle changes into an adjective:

volán m., volána f. voláno , n.	{ called (as past participle and adjective).
volaný m. volaná f. volané , n.	

POTENTIAL FORMS.

The potential mood employing the auxiliary *may* is formed in Bohemian by means of the verb **moci**, *motsi* (commonly **mocti**, vulgarly **moct**, *mōstst*), which has an irregular inflection:

Mohu,	<i>mōhū,</i>	I may	můžeme,	<i>moožēmě,</i>	we may
můžeš,	<i>moožesh,</i>	thou mayest	můžete,	<i>moožētě,</i>	you may
může,	<i>moožě,</i>	he (she, it) may	mohou,	<i>mōhoú,</i>	they may;
mohl, (a, o) bych,	<i>mōhl, (a, o) bikh,</i>	I might	mohli, (y, a) byehom	(or <i>bysme</i>),	
mohl bys,	<i>mōhl bis,</i>	thou mightest	<i>mōhl bismě,</i>	we might	
mohl by,	<i>mōhl bi,</i>	he might	mohli byste,	<i>m. bistě,</i>	you might
Mohu býti nesen,	I may be carried		mohli by, m. bi,		they might.
mohu býti bit,	I may be whipped		mohl bych býti nesen,	I might be	
mohu býti viděn,	I may be seen		mohl bych býti bit,	I might be	
mohu býti milován,	I may be loved		mohl bych býti viděn,	I might be	
			mohl bych býti milován,	I might be	
					. loved.

Mohl jsem býti nesen, *mōhl sem beeči nessěn,* I might have been carried;
mohl jsem býti bit, *mōhl sem beeči bit,* I might have been whipped.

Otherwise **moci** has the meaning of "can" or "to be able":

Mohu to udělati; — nemohu to udělati;	I can do it; — I cannot do it;
mohl jsem to udělati; — nemohl jsem to udělati;	I could do it (or: I could have done it); — I could not do it;
budu moci to udělati; — nebudu moci to udělati.	I shall be able to do it; — I shall not be able to do it;
Můžete přijíti? — Nemůžeme přijíti.	Can you come? — We cannot come.
Mohou choditi? — Nemohou choditi.	Can they walk? — They cannot walk.

In common discourse **mohu** (I can), and **mohou** (they can) are displaced by **můžu** and **můžou**, *moožū*, *moožou*, making the present tense consistent, if not regular.

REITERATIVE FORM.

The English reiterative form of "used to" is rendered in Bohemian:
 1. — By reiterative verbs derived from simple verbs as explained in Note

5, Lesson XIII; for instance : **hráti** means "to play"; **hrávati** means "to play often", to use to play ;

hrál jsem tam; hrával jsem tam;	I played there; I used to play there;
— hráli tam; hrávali tam.	— they played there; they used to play there.

2. — By verbs having in themselves a reiterative meaning; for instance : **přicházeti**, *prshikházěti*, means "to come often" (also "to be coming"); **docházeti**, *dókházěti*, means "to go often somewhere", to make frequent calls, (also "to be on the decline");

on přichází k nám; on přicházel k	he often comes to us; he used to
nám; — my docházeli k němu;	come to us; — we used to go to
budeme docházeti k němu.	him; we shall often go to him.

LESSON XXXVIII.

English participles may be used substantively, or changed into nouns; for instance :

speaking, — *the speaking*; sitting, — *the sitting*; calling, — *the calling*.

In Bohemian, nouns are derived from verbs in two different ways, illustrated by the following examples :

1.

biti,	<i>beet'i,</i>	to beat; — bití,	<i>bit'ee,</i>	the beating;
piti,	<i>peet'i,</i>	to drink; — pití,	<i>pit'ee,</i>	the drinking;
šiti,	<i>sheet'i,</i>	to sew; — šití,	<i>shi'ee,</i>	the sewing;
žiti,	<i>žeet'i,</i>	to live; — žití,	<i>ži'ee,</i>	the living;
bod-nouti,	<i>bodnoütfi,</i>	to stab; — bod-nutí,	<i>bodnüt'ee,</i>	the stabbing,
				a stab;
hyn-outi,	<i>hinoütfi,</i>	to be perishing; — hyn-uti,	<i>hinütf'ee,</i>	the perishing;
kop-nouti,	<i>kopnoütfi,</i>	to kick; — kop-nutí,	<i>kopnüt'ee,</i>	the kicking, a kick;

2.

nes-ti,	<i>nessťi</i> ,	to carry; — nes-ení,	<i>nesseňee</i> ,	the carrying;
pás-ti,	<i>pásťi</i> ,	to herd; — pas-ení,	<i>păsseňee</i> ,	the herding;
vid-ěti,	<i>viďeťi</i> ,	to see; — vid-ění,	<i>viďeňee</i> , the seeing; the vision;	
slyš-eti,	<i>slíšeťi</i> ,	to hear; — slyš-ení,	<i>slíšeňee</i> ,	the hearing;
mluv-ití,	<i>mlúviti</i> ,	to speak; — mluv-ení,	<i>mlúvěňee</i> ,	the speaking;
vol-atí,	<i>voláťi</i> ,	to call; — vol-ámí,	<i>voláňee</i> , the calling or call,	
milov-atí,	<i>milováťi</i> ,	to love; — milov-ámí,	<i>milováňee</i> ,	the loving.

The simple rules of derivation are apparent from the above list.

1. Verbs terminating in **íti** (forming a subdivision of the first conjugation; Note 3, p. 138;) are changed into nouns by a simple transfer of the long **í**: **pítí**, to drink, — **pítí**, the drinking.

2. Verbs ending in **outí** (which belong to the second conjugation) become nouns by a change of this termination into **utí**: **bodnoutí**, to stab, (**bodnu**, I shall stab), — **bodnutí**, the stabbing, or “a stab”.

3. Verbs ending in **ěti**, **eti**, **iti** (which form the third and fourth conjugations) become nouns by changing their termination into **ění** or **ení**: **viděti**, to see, — **vidění**, the seeing, or “the vision”; **mluviti**, to speak, — **mluvení**, the speaking.

4. Verbs ending in **ati** (which form the fifth and sixth conjugations) become nouns by changing that termination into **ámí**: **volati**, to call, — **volámí**, the calling, or “the call”.

When the long vowel **á** occurs in the root of a simple verb, it is shortened in the process of deriving a noun :

pás-ti, *pásťi*, to herd (or “to pasture”); **pas-ení**, *păsseňee*, the herding; **psá-ti**, *psáťi*, to write; **psa-ní**, *psăňee*, the writing.

In some cases the derivation of nouns from verbs of the first conjugation is somewhat irregular, the same as the formation of the tenses; for instance :

čísti, *cheest'i*, to read; (**čtu**, **čteš**, **čte**, *chtu*, *chtěsh*, *chtě*, I read, thou readest, he reads); — **čte-ní**, *chtěñee*, the reading;

plesti, *plest'i*, to twist; (**pletu**, **pleteš**, **plete**, I twist, thou twistest, he twists); — **plete-ní**, *płtěñee*, the twisting;

klásti, *klás'ti*, to lay; (**kladu**, **kladeš**, **klade**, I lay, thou layest, he lays); — **klade-ní**, *klädēñee*, the laying;

másti, *mást'i*, to confuse (to mix up); **mate**, he confuses; — **matení**, *mätěñee*, the confusion or mixing up;

mesti, *mest'i*, to sweep; **mete**, he sweeps; — **metení**, *mětěñee*, the sweeping;

vesti, *vess'ti*, to lead; **vede**, he leads; — **vedení**, *věděñez*, the leading.

LESSON XXXIX.

VERBS CLASSIFIED.

1. — As before observed (in Lesson XXXI) **nesti**, “to carry” or “to be carrying”, is a verb denoting a CONTINUOUS action.

2. — By means of prefixes other verbs are derived therefrom, which denote a limited or FINISHED action and are called FINITE verbs; for example :

donesti, *dōness'ti*, to carry somewhere or to somebody ;
přinesti, *prshiness'ti*, to bring, to fetch.

3. — Many continuous verbs have a corresponding form denoting a REPEATED or reiterated action; for instance :

nesti ,	<i>ness'ti</i> ,	to carry;	nositi ,	<i>nossi'ti</i> ,	to carry repeatedly;
vezti ,	<i>vez'ti</i> ,	to carry (in a vehicle);	voziti ,	<i>vozit'i</i> ,	“ “ “
vesti ,	<i>vess'ti</i> ,	to lead;	voditi ,	<i>vodit'i</i> ,	to lead repeatedly;
čísti ,	<i>cheess'ti</i> ,	to read;	čítati ,	<i>cheetä'fi</i> ,	to read repeatedly;
pásti ,	<i>pásst'i</i> ,	to herd;	pásati ,	<i>pássä'ti</i> ,	to herd repeatedly;
letěti ,	<i>letět'i</i> ,	to fly;	litati ,	<i>leetä'ti</i> ,	to fly repeatedly;
jeti ,	<i>yet'i</i> ,	to ride;	jezditi ,	<i>yezdit'i</i> ,	to ride repeatedly.

There are, besides, reiterative verbs derived in the manner explained in Note 5, page 61, and denoting so to say a CUSTOMARY action; for instance:

nositi,	to carry repeatedly,	nosí-va-ti, <i>nosseevat'i</i> , to use to carry,
voziti,	to carry repeatedly (in a vehicle),	vozí-va-ti, <i>vozeevat'i</i> , to use to carry,
voditi,	to lead repeatedly,	vodí-va-ti, <i>vod'eevati</i> , to use to lead,
čítati,	to read repeatedly,	čítá-va-ti, <i>cheetávati</i> , to use to read,
pásati,	to herd repeatedly,	pásá-va-ti, <i>pássávati</i> , to use to herd,
litati,	to fly repeatedly,	lítá-va-ti, <i>leetávati</i> , to use to fly,
jezditi,	to ride repeatedly;	jezdí-va-ti, <i>yed'eevati</i> , to use to ride.

4. — Certain verbs denote an action which is simply MOMENTARY. As a rule they terminate in **iti**, belonging to the fourth conjugation. For instance: **skočiti**, *skočit'i*, to jump, to leap, — that is, to make a jump or leap.

From these are derived FINITE verbs in the same manner as from continuous verbs (1.), namely by prefixes. For instance :

kročiti , to make a step,	zakročiti , <i>zákročit'i</i> , to step between, to interfere;
skočiti , to jump,	vyskočiti , <i>vískočit'i</i> , to jump out or up;
střeliti , to shoot (once),	zastřeliti , <i>zástrshellit'i</i> , to shoot dead;
strčiti , to push,	vystrčiti , <i>vist'erchit'i</i> , to push out;
pustiti , to let go,	vypustiti , <i>vípústit'i</i> , to let out;
chyttiti , to catch,	zachyttiti , <i>zákhítit'i</i> , to catch up, to snatch;
chybiti , to err,	pochybiti , <i>pókhítit'i</i> , to commit an error.

Note 1. Such is the general classification of Bohemian verbs in regard to the duration of the action or process they denote. But for practical purposes it is sufficient to distinguish two great classes of verbs, namely:

1. CONTINUOUS VERBS, denoting a continued or repeated action. This class comprises the simple verbs of all conjugations except some ending in **outi** and **iti**. For instance: **nesti**, to carry; **plouti**, to float; **viděti**, to see; **činiti**, to do; **volati**, to call; **milovati**, to love.

2. FINITE VERBS, denoting a finished or momentary action or process. This class comprises many verbs of the second and fourth conjugations.

tions, ending in **ou'i** and **iti**; for instance: **minouti**, to pass; **bodnouti**, to stab; **skočiti**, to leap; **střeliti**, to shoot (to discharge a shot).

Most of the verbs derived from others by prefixes also belong to this class; for example: **vyskočiti**, to jump up; **donesti**, to carry somewhere; **pominouti**, to pass over; **uviděti**, to catch a sight; **učiniti**, to do a certain act; **zavolati**, to call out or up; **pomilovati**, to fondle a little.

The finite verbs have in fact only a past and a future tense, and no present, because their present form denotes a *future action*:

donesu , I shall carry somewhere;	uvidím , I shall see;
minu , I shall pass;	učiním , I shall do;
udělám , I shall make;	skočím , I shall jump;
zavolám , I shall call;	vyskočím , I shall jump up;
pomiluju (or pomiluji) I shall fondle;	střelím , I shall shoot.

LESSON XL.

Every language has peculiar ways or modes of expression, which cannot be taken literally, or translated closely into another language. They are called idiomatic expressions or **IDIOMS**. Many of them are of frequent occurrence in ordinary intercourse.

The student will naturally desire to know the Bohemian equivalents of such English expressions as are in constant use in common conversation. He will find most of them in the following list, the English expression always preceding the Bohemian, in order to facilitate their study. The beginner should often peruse these phrases until he has a perfect command of them, or — to use an English idiom -- until "he has them at his fingers' ends."

All along,	venkonecem ,	veskrze ,	venkōntsěm , <i>veskerzě</i> ;
all over,	všude ,		<i>vshūdě</i> ;
all is over,	je po všem ,		<i>yě poſhěm</i> ;
all in all,	vůbec ,		<i>voobets</i> ;
all one,	vše jedno ,		<i>fshě yednō</i> ;
all the same,	" "		" "

all the time,
all the better,
all hollow,
all of a sudden,
along-side,
as far as I can,
as far as possible,
as far as I am concerned
as far as that is con-
cerned,
at any rate,
at all events,
at last,
at length,
at once,
all at once,
at large,

stále, pořád,
tím líp,
na dobro,
najednou, z nenadání,
vedle,
pokud mohu,
pokud možná,
co se mě týče,
co se toho týče,

{ buď jak buď,
{ konečně,
{ hned, najednou,
vůbec, celkem,

stálě, pörshád;
feem leep;
nă döbrö;

näyednoú, zněnādáñi;
vědlě;

pöküd möhü;
pöküd možná;
tsö së myë teeche;

tsö së töhö teeche;

büd' yák büd';

konechñě;

hněd, näyednoú;
voobets, tselkem.

Be it as it may,

be perfectly easy,
by and by,
by the bye,
by the way,
by day,
by night,
by the day,
by the week,
by the piece,
by all means,

buď jak buď; ať je
jakkoli;
buďte bez starosti,
hnedle, znenáhlala,
{ mimo to,
{ apropos,
za dne,
v noci,
na den,
na týden,
od kusu,
na všechen spůsob,

büd' yák büd'; ať yě
yakkoli;
büdtě bestärösťi;
hnedlě, zněnáhlala;
mimò tō,
äpropo;
ză dně;
vnotsi;
nă den;
nă teeden;
öd küsü;
nă fshěkhen spoosob.

Call for me,
can it be possible?
can't do it !

stavte se pro mě,
je-li možná ?
nejde to !

střftě së pro myë;
yelli možná ?
něydě tō !

come on,
come along,
come and see us,

Don't you hear?
don't you see ?
don't you know it ?
don't mention it !
dear me !
day and night,
day by day,
do as you please,
drop me a line,

Excuse me !
every now and then,
Farewell !
Good-bye !
get up !
get out !
get ready !
give me a rest !
go ahead !
go on !

Help yourself !
here and there,
hurry up !
he is good at it !

{ pojď ! pojďte !
přijďte nás navštívít,

což neslyšíte ?
což nevidíte ?
což to nevíte ?
to nestojí za řeč,
o jemine !
ve dne v noci,
den co den,
dělejte jak myslíte,
pište mi pár rádek,

odpustě !
každou chvíli,
{ s bohem!—na zdar !
zhůru !—vstaňte !
ven !—pojd'te ven !
připravte se !
dejte mi pokoj !
{ jen dál !

poslužte si ! vemte si !
rače !
sem tam,
honem !
on to umí ! on to zná !

poyd', poyd'te*);
prshid' tě nás nafshchee-
vit.

tsösh neslisheetč ?
tsösh něvíd'eeetč ?
tsösh tō něveetč ?
tō nestoyee zā rshěch;
o yěminč !
vě dně vnotsi;
den tsö den;
d'ěleytě yák misleetč;
pishtě me pár rsháděk.

odpüstě !
käždoü khweeli;
sböhem ! — nă zdär !
zhoorü !—fstäňtě !
ven !—pöd'te ven !
prshipräftě sě !
deytě me pökoy !
yen dál !

poslūshtě si ! vemtě si !
rächtě !
sem tām,
hōnem !
ǒn tō ūmee ! ǒn tō zná !

*) Colloquially *pöd'*, *pöd'te*, (thou, you) come on. — **I pojďte už !**
i pöd'te ūsh! come on, now! do come along!

he is good for nothing;
he is on the lookout;
he is well off;
he means no harm;
he took a hint;
he keeps out of sight;
he has a head of his
own;
how do you do ?
how are you ?

není k ničemu;
on číhá;
on se má dobrě;
on to zle nemyslí;
dovtípil se;
on se straní;
on má vlastní hlavu;

{ jak se máte ?

neyňi k níichěmú;
oň cheehá;
oň sě má döbrshě;
oň tő zlě němislee;
döf'leepil sě;
oň sě stráñee;
oň má vlăstňee hlăvū;

yák sě málě?

I am glad of it !
I bet, — I guess,
I don't care;
I have a mind,
I made up my mind,
I can't afford it;
I can't stand it (*meaning:* I hate it);
I can do without it;
I have taken a fancy
to it;
I have no hand in it;
I had some words with
him;
I had rather
I would sooner
I am no match for him;
I am very anxious;

I am sorry for it;
I will make him do it;

to mě těší !
vsadím se, — myslím,
nedbám; to je mi jedno;
hodlá, —
odhodlá jsem se,
nejsem s to;
nemohu to vystát (vy-
stati);
mohu být bez toho;
zalíbilo se mi to;

nemám s tím co dělat;
měl jsem s nim hádku;

{ raději bych

já s něho nejsem;
mám starost;*) — tuze
rád bych**)
lituju toho;
já ho donutím;

tő myě těšhee !
fsřd'eeem sě, — misleem,
nědbám; tő yě mi yednő
hodlám,
řd'hodläl sem sě,
neysem stř;
němohř tő vistát;

mohř beet bes tōhř;
zăleebilř sě mi tř;

nemám sťeem tsř d'ělř;
myěll sem sňim hádkř;

rād'ey bikh

yá sňeho neysem;
mám střrost; — toozř
rád bikh;
lităyř tōhř;
yá hř dřnřt'eeem;

*) When it means an anxiety, care or suspense about something.

**) When it means an impatience to do or to know something.

I will see you paid;
I am in no hurry;
I must be off;
I think much of him;
if you please;
indeed;
it is all over;
it is of no use;

it is none of your business;
it is your turn;
it is a bargain;
it is a pity;
it grew into a habit;
it wears well (of a dress
or stuff);

Keep still!
keep in line!
Let it go; — let go!
let me alone;
let me in;
let me know;
look here;
look out!

Mind you;
No doubt; — no matter;
no matter how it is;
no matter who it is;
never mind;

postarám se o váš plat;
nemám na spěch;
musím pryč;
já si ho moc vážím;
prosím; — račte;
opravdu; — skutečně;
je po všem;
není to nic platné
(meaning: it will do
no good); — **není to**
k ničemu (meaning:
it is of no service);
vám po tom nic není;

ted' je na vás;
zůstane při tom;
to je škoda;
stalo se zvykem;
dobře se nese;

Ticho! — Bud'te zticha!
do řady!
nechte to být; — pusťte!
nechte mě;
pusťte mě tam;
dejte mi vědět;
hled'te;
pozor!
pamatujte;
zajisté; — nic nedělá;
ať je to jakkoli;
ať je to kdokoli;
nic nedělá; — co na
tom;

postěrám sě o váš plát;
němám ně spyčkoh;
můseem prich;
yá si hō mots vážem;
proseem; — rächtě;
opravdū; — skutečně;
yě pofshem;
neyňi tō ñits plátné; —
neyňi tō kñichemü;

vám pō tōm ñits neyňi;

ted' yě ně váss;
zoostřně prshitōm;
tō yě shkōdā;
stālo sě zwikem;
dobrshě sě nessě;

víkhō! — būd'tě s'víkhā!
dō rshády!
nekhtě tō beet; — pūstě!
nekhtě myě;
pūstě myě tām;
deyře me vyěd'et;
hled'tě;
pōzor!
pāmātřytě;
zāyisté; — ñits nēd'ělá;
āt yě tō yěcköli;
āt yě tō gdökoli;
ñits nēd'ělá; — tsō ně
tōm;

not yet; — not at all;	ještě ne,— dokonce ne;	<i>yeshťe ně; — dōkontsě ně;</i>
now and then; now we are even;	časem, — chvílemi; ted' jsme kvit;	<i>chăssem; — khweelemi, ted' smě kwit;</i>
Of course; on a sudden; on purpose; on the contrary; on the wing; once for all; one by one;	ovšem;— to se rozumí; náhle;— z nenadání; schválně; — naschvál; naopak; v letu; jednou na vždy; po jednom; — jeden za druhým;	<i>ofshém;—tō sě rozumee; náhlě; — zněnádáňi; — skhwálňě; — náskhwál; năopák; vletū; yednoř nă vždy; pō yědnom; — yěden ză drūheem;</i>
Piece by piece; plenty time !	po•kusu;	<i>pō kŭsū;</i>
Send me word; served him right !	dost času!	<i>dost chăssú!</i>
	zkažte mi;	<i>skăshťe me;</i>
	dobře tak !	<i>dobrshě tăk!</i>
Take care ! the more the better; the other day; the time is up; that's it ! — that will do; that's right !	pozor! — dejte pozor!	<i>pōzor! — deytě pōzor!</i>
that is out of my way; they like to show off; to be short about it; to be sure !	čím víc tím líp;	<i>cheem veets ŭeem leep;</i>
to call and see, (to pay a visit);	onehdy;	<i>ǒněhdý;</i>
to find fault;	čas prošel;	<i>chăss proshell;</i>
to get rid (of some- thing);	to je to! — to je dost;	<i>tō yě tō; — tō yě dost;</i>
to give a blowing;	to dostačí;	<i>tō dōstăchée;</i>
to come about;	to je dobrě!	<i>tō yě dobrshě!</i>
to no purpose;	to je mi z ruky;	<i>tō yě me z růky;</i>
	rádi se ukazují;	<i>rādī sě ūkăzűyee;</i>
	krátee řečeno;	<i>krátsě řshčěchěnō;</i>
	zajisté!	<i>zăyisté!</i>
	navštívít;	<i>năfshťeevit;</i>
	vytýkat;	<i>vyteekăt;</i>
	zbavit se (čeho);	<i>zbăvit sě;</i>
	vymluvit,	<i>vymlüvit;</i>
	státi se,	<i>stăti sě;</i>
	zbytečně,	<i>zbytěchňě;</i>

Well?— Very well.
well to do, well off;
what of that? — what
does it matter?
what is the matter?
what is the question?

what is the matter with
you?
what next?
what will become of
us?
we had better go;
we had better go and
see;

You are right;
you are wrong,
you are mistaken;
you are late;
you are safe;
you are gone up!
you are welcome to it;

year by year;
you must not find fault;
you ought to be glad;
— you ought to be
gone;

nuž? — dobré;
zámožný,
co na tom? co z toho?

co se děje? (i. e. what
is happening?)
oč se jedná? oč běží?

co je vám?

co dále?
co z nás bude? co se s
námi stane?
abysme raději šli;
abysme se raději podí-
vali (i. e. šli podívati);

máte pravdu;
} mejlite se;
jdete pozdě;
jste v tom dobré;
s vámi je konec!
vemte si to; — přeju
vám to;
rok co rok;
nesmíte dělat výčitky;
měl byste být (or býti)
rád; — měl byste být
pryč;

nůž? — dōbrshě;
zámožnee;
tsř nā tom? tsř střhō?

tsř sě dřeyě?
řch sě yedná? — řch byř-
zee?
tsř yě vám?

tsř dálě?
tsř znáss břdř? tsř sě
snámi stáně?
řbysmě rřdřy shli;
řbysmě sě rřdřy po-
řeeváli;

mátě právdě;
meyleetě sě;
dětě pozdře;
stě ftom dobrshě;
svámi yě křnets!
vemtě si tř; — pršchřyř
vám tř;
rřk tsř rřk;
nesmeetě dřelat veechitky
m' yell bystř beet rád; —
m' yell bystř beet
prich.

PART III.

Bohemian Conversation.

Note 1. In the following conversations we shall invariably observe the common rule of politeness, which requires the use of the personal pronoun **vy** (you) in addressing another person. Hence all verbs employed in the same will appear in the second person plural (for instance: **jste, máte**, (you are, you have), and not in the second person singular **jsi***), **máš**, (thou art, thou hast), which is properly confined to familiar or very intimate intercourse, as fully set forth in Section 9, Part I; otherwise the use of the second person singular (**ty**, thou) is out of place and in fact vulgar, although freely indulged in by some ill-informed or ill-bred persons among the Bohemians in America.

Throughout these conversations we give the Bohemian pronunciation in full**). It is true that the student, having advanced so far, may be supposed to be able to pronounce every word and to read Bohemian without difficulty; but the pronouncing column will nevertheless continue to be an aid, especially welcome in such cases as may appear to be somewhat obscure or doubtful.

*) In common discourse we frequently hear **ty jseš, ty sěsh**, in place of **ty jsi**. — **Ty jseš velký, ty sěsh vělké**, thou art tall. — **Jseš rád** (instead of **jsi rád**)? **sěsh rád?** art thou glad? — **Jseš zdráv?** **sěsh zdráf?** (f. **jseš zdráva?** **sěsh zdrává?**) art thou well? — **Jseš hotov?** **sěsh hőtof?** (f. **jseš hotova?** **sěsh hőtová?**) art thou ready?

**) The rules given in Sections 2 and 4, Part I, are supposed to have been thoroughly digested and practiced by the student, as well as the forty introductory lessons contained in Part II. Unless that is done, it will be useless and disappointing to proceed with this eminently practical part of our Bohemian Course.

In regard to the pronunciation of Bohemian infinitives (for instance: **míti**, to have; **činiti**, to do; **dělati**, to make) we again remind the student of the explanation given in Note 1, Lesson XI. In the pronouncing column of these conversations we shall as a rule follow the colloquial custom of dropping the final **i**, to simplify matters and to present the sentences as they are generally heard in actual intercourse.

The student will always bear in mind that Bohemian orthography and pronunciation are on the whole governed by the rule which appears to be the ideal of many would-be reformers of English orthography, namely:

A sound for every letter and a letter for every sound, and no silent letters. —

In regard to capital letters the rules in Bohemian are the same as in English, excepting that adjectives derived from names of nations or countries are not written with a capital letter; for example: English, Bohemian, European, **anglický**, **český**, **evropský** (*ănglitskee*, *chesskee*, *ĕvropskee*).

Bohemian and English.

ČEŠTINA a ANGLIČINA.

The Bohemian language;—the Bohemian tongue.	Česká řeč; — český jazyk.	<i>chesská rshěch;</i> — <i>chesske yäzyk.</i>
Do you know Bohemian? — do you speak Bohemian?	Umíte česky? — mluvíte česky?	<i>ümeetě chesske?</i> — <i>mlüveetě chesske?</i>
Yes, I speak Bohemian well.	Ano, mluvím česky dobrě.	<i>ănō,</i> <i>mlüveem chesske döbrshē.</i>
Do you speak English?	Mluvíte anglicky?	<i>mlüveetě ănglitske?</i>
Perfectly ;— a little; — not much.	Dokonale; — trochu; — ne mnoho.	<i>dökönälë;</i> — <i>trokhū;</i> — <i>ně mnõhõ.</i>
Do you understand English? — I do.	Rozumíte anglicky? — Rozumím.	<i>rozümeeetě ănglitske?</i> — <i>rozümeeem.</i>

In America everybody
has to know English.
I am learning English.
Do you learn Bohemi-
an?

I want to learn Bohe-
mian.

I want to know (i.e. to
acquire) Bohemian.

I would like to learn
Bohemian.

I would like to know
Bohemian.

I must learn (i. e. ac-
quire) Bohemian.

Yes, do learn Bohemian

I am learning Bohemi-
an.

How long have you
been learning**) Bo-
hemian?

I have been learning
Bohemian since last
year.

How long did you learn
English?

I learned (or: I was
learning) English one
year.

V Americe každý má u-
měti*) anglicky.

Učím se anglicky.
Učíte se česky?

Chci se učiti česky.

Chci uměti česky.

Rád bych učil se čes-
ky.

Rád bych uměl česky.

Musím se naučiti čes-
ky.

Ano, naučte se česky.
Učím se česky.

Jak dlouho učíte se
česky?

Učím se česky od lon-
ska.

Jak dlouho učil jste se
anglicky?

Učil jsem se anglicky
rok.

vámeritsč každee má ū-
myet ānglitske.

ūcheem sě ānglitske.
ūcheelč sě chesske?

khtsi sě ūchit chesske.

khtsi ūmyet chesske.

rád bikh ūchil sě chess-
ke.

rád bikh ūmyell chess-
ke.

müseem sě năřchit
cheske.

āno, năřchtět sě chesske
ūcheem sě chesske.

yák dloúhč ūcheelč sě
cheske?

ūcheem sě chesske ōd
lonskā.

yák dloúhč ūchil stě sě
ānglitske?

ūchil sem sě ānglitske
rök.

*) **Míti** (to have) often in connection with another verb signifies obligation or necessity, the same as in English: **Mám uměti**, I have to know, I am obliged or expected to know; **mám jít**, I have to go; — **má uměti**, he has to know; **každý má uměti**, everybody has to know.

) The present tense in Bohemian is also used for the English perfect tense: **(jak dlouho) učíte se, — (how long) have you been learning. See second foot-note on page 98.

I learned (i. e. acquired) English in one year.

To learn English is not difficult.

Neither is Bohemian.

How soon shall I learn Bohemian?

If you will be (*or* if you are) diligent, you will learn it soon.

About how soon?

In a few months.

I have been learning Bohemian only two months, and already

I know a good deal.

I am getting along well.

Already I understand nearly all.

It is not difficult; — it is easy.

Only plenty of exercise! then you make good progress.

Do you understand Bohemian?

I understand a little.

I understand already a good deal.

I understand already nearly all.

Do you understand German?

Naučil jsem se anglicky za rok.

Naučiti se anglicky není těžké.

Česky také ne.

Jak brzo naučím se česky?

Budete-li pilný, naučíte se brzo.

Jak brzo asi?

Za pár měsíců.

Učím se česky teprv dva měsíce, a už umím hezky.

Jde to dobře.*)

Už rozumím skoro všecko.

Není to těžké; — je to lehké.

Jen hodně cviku! pak to jde*)!

Rozumíte česky?

Rozumím trochu.

Rozumím už hodně.

Rozumím už hnedle všecko.

Rozumíte německy?

nářchil sem sě anglické za rök.

nářchit sě anglické neyňi těšhké.

chesske táké ně.

yák berzo nářcheem sě cheske?

břdětě-li pilnee, nářcheetě sě berzō.

yák berzō ási?

ză pár myšeetsoo.

úcheem sě chesske tep erf dwă myšeetsě, a ūsh ūmeem hesske.

dě tō dobrshě.

úsh rozumeeem skorō fshětskō.

neyňi tō těšhké; — yě tō lehké.

yen hodně tswikū! pák tō dě!

rozumeeetě chesske?

rozumeeem trokhū.

rozumeeem úsh hodně.

rozumeeem úsh hnedlě fshětsko.

rozumeeetě němetske?

*) Jde to dobře; *literally*: it goes well. Pak to jde: then it goes.

I do not.—I understand a little bit.

Do you know (how) to write Bohemian?

Not yet; but I shall learn (it).

I shall know (it) soon.

I must know both to read and to write Bohemian.

You will learn that easily.

I expect to learn it in half a year.

Why does not John learn English?

He is going to learn;— he must learn it well.

When will he commence to learn?

Shortly.

My neighbor's boy speaks English perfectly and understands also Latin.

Annie is learning to read and write Bohemian.

Have you a Bohemian newspaper? — lend me it.

Lend me a Bohemian book.

What book? — Any book.

Nerozumím. — **Rozumím něco málo.**

Umíte psáti po česku?

Ještě ne; ale budu se učiti.

Budu uměti brzo.

Musím uměti čísti i psáti po česku.

To se naučíte snadno.

Hodlám se to naučiti za půl leta.

Proč se Jan neučí anglicky?

On se bude učiti;—musí se naučiti dobře.

Kdy se začne učiti?

Co nevidět.

Sousedův hoch mluví anglicky dokonale a rozumí také latinšky.

Anna učí se česky čísti a psáti.

Máte české noviny? — půjčte mi je.

Půjčte mi českou knihu.

Jakou? — Jakoukoli.

něrozumímeem. — *rozumímeem nětsō málō.*

úmeete psát pō chesskū?

yeshťe ně; álē bědū sě ūchit.

bědū úmyet berzō.

müseem úmyet cheest i psát pō chesskū.

tō sě năřcheetě snădnō.

hodlám sě tō năřchit ză pool letă.

pröch sě yān něřchee ānglitske?

ón se bědě ūchit;— müsee sě năřchit dobrshě.

gdy sě zăchně ūchit?

tsō něvidět.

soúsedooф hőkh ml̄vee ānglitske dőkonđlě rozumee táké lătiniske.

ānă ūchee sě chesske cheest a psát.

málě chesské nōviny? — půchtě me yě.

půchtě me chesskoу kñihy.

yákoу? — yákoúkoli.

This is Bohemian, is it not?

What is it in English?

— Tell me it in English.

How is it in English? I don't know how to pronounce it.

How is it in Bohemian?

How do you call it in Bohemian? — how in English?

Speak Bohemian; — speak Bohemian with me; — speak only Bohemian.

Speak as you wish.

Do you like to speak Bohemian? — Why do you not speak English?

Because I cannot; — because I know it only a little. — Do speak; you will get along.

Speak English or Bohemian, as you please; — I understand both;

You speak Bohemian very well.

Speak slowly, that I may understand you.*)

Tohle je česky, není?

Co je to po anglicku?

— Povězte mi to po anglicku.

Jak je to po anglicku?

Nevím jak to vysloviti.

Jak je to po česku?

Jak se to jmenuje česky? — jak anglicky?

Mluvte česky; — mluvte se mnou česky; — mluvte jenom česky.

Mluvte jak chcete.

Mluvíte rád česky? — Proč nemluvíte anglicky?

Protože neumím; — protože umím jen málo. — Jen mluvte, půjde to.

Mluvte anglicky nebo česky, jak chcete; — rozumím obojí.

Vy mluvíte česky tuze dobrě.

Mluvte pomalu, abych vám rozuměl.

tōhlě yě chesske, neyñi?

tsō yě tō pō ānglitskū?

— *Pōvyžtě me tō pō ānglitskū.*

yāk yě tō pō ānglitskū?

nēveem yāk tō vislōvit.

yāk yě tō pō chesskū?

yāk sě tō menyř chesske? — yāk ānglitske?

mlüftě chesske; — mlüftě sě mnoř chesske; — mlüftě yěnom chesske.

mlüftě yāk khtsétě.

mlüveetě rád chesske? — pröch němlüveetě ānglitske?

protözě něřmeem; — protözě ūmeem yen málō. — yen mlüftě, pùdě tō.

mlüftě ānglitske něbō chesske, yāk khtsétě; — rozuměm óbÿee.

ve mlüveetě chesske toorž dobrshě.

mlüftě pomálǔ, ábikh vám rozúmyell.

*) **Abych, abyš, aby,** that I should, that thou shouldst, that he should (see Lesson XXXVI), also signifies: "that I may, that thou mayest, that he (she, it) may". Hence we translate: **abych rozuměl**, that I may understand; — **abych rozuměl vám**, or **abych vám rozuměl**, "that I may understand you".

Concerning the freedom of transposition of words in Bohemian sentences see Note 2, Lesson VI.

Did you understand me? — I did not; repeat it slowly.

Do not speak so fast; I should not understand you.

Do you know what I said? — could you understand?

I could understand a little; — now I understood well.

When you don't understand, tell me; — I want to teach you.

I am glad of that; — if you will teach me, I shall soon know.

In a quarter of a year I shall understand all.

Do I pronounce it right? — did I pronounce it right?

You have a good pronunciation: — you pronounce everything right.

That was not right; see here; — I will pronounce it slowly.

Is that right?

Once again!

That's it; — now it was right; first-rate.

Very well! — you make quick progress.

Rozuměl jste mi! — Ne-
rozuměl; opakujte
to pomalu.

Nemluvte tak rychle;
já bych vám nerozu-
měl.

Víte co jsem povídal ?
— porozuměl jste ?

Porozuměl jsem troš-
ku; — ted' jsem rozu-
měl dobře.

Když nerozumíte, ře-
kněte mi; — já chci
vás učiti.

To jsem rád; — budete-
li mě učiti, budu br-
zo uměti.

Za čtvrt leta budu vše-
mu rozuměti.

Vyslovuj to dobře? —
vyslovil jsem to do-
bře?

Máte dobrou výslo-
nost; — vyslovujete
všecko dobře.

To nebylo dobře; dej-
te pozor; — já to vy-
slovím pomalu.

Je to dobře ?

Ještě jednou !

Tak; — ted' to bylo do-
bře; tuze dobře.

Výborně! — děláte ry-
chlý pokrok.

rozřemyell stě me? — ně-
rozřemyell; — opřákuytě
tō pomälř.

němlřitě tāk rikhlř; yá
bikh vám něrozřemyell.

veetě tsō sem poveedāř?
— *přerozřemyell stě?*

přerozřemyell sem trosh-
ku; — tēd' sem rozř-
myell dōbrshř.

gdiž něrozřumeetě, rshěk-
nitě me; — yá khtsi
vás ūchit.

tō sem rád; — břdětě li
myě ūchit, břdřberzō
řmyět.

zā shtwert letě břdř
fshěmū rozřmyet.

vislovřyř tō dobrshř? —
vislovil sem tō dō-
brshř?

mátě dōbroř veeslōv-
nost; — vislovřyetě
fshětskō dōbrshř.

tō něbillř dōbrshř; dey-
tě pőzor; — yá tō vi-
sloveem pomälř.

yě tō dobrshř?

yeshřtě yednoř!

tāk; — tēd' tō billř dō-
brshř; toozř dōbrshř.
veeborně! — d'elátě rikh-
lee pokrok.

I wish I had more opportunity to speak Bohemian.

Rád bych měl více přiležitosti mluviti česky.

*rád bikh m'yell veetsč
prsheelčitostči mlüvit
cheske.*

VOCABULARY.

Slovo, n. *slovčo*, the word
slovník, m. *slovček*, the dictionary
slovníček, m.* *slovčeechek*, the vocabulary
vysloviti, *vislovit*, to pronounce
vyslovím, *visloveem*, I shall pronounce
vyslovovati, *vislovovat*, to be pronouncing;
vyslovuju (or **vyslovuji**), *vislovūyū*, I am pronouncing;
výslovnost, f. *veeslovnost*, the pronunciation;
čeština, f. *cheshtină*, the Bohemian language;
angličina, f. *anglichină*, the English language;
pokrok, m. *pökrok*, progress;
přiležitost, f. *prsheelčitost*, opportunity;
rád bych měl, *rád bikh m'yell*, I wish I had (or: I would like to have);
hezky, *hesske*, } a good deal;
hodně, *hodnō*, } a good deal;
něco málo, *nětso mǎlō*, a little bit;

učiti se, *úchit sč*, to learn, to be learning;
neučiti se, *něúchit sč*, not to learn;
nauciti se, *náúchit sč*, to learn or acquire (something);
rozuměti, *rozúmyet*, to understand;
rozumím, *rozúmeem*, I understand
porozuměti, *pőrozúmyet*, to understand; or "to catch the meaning";
začnouti, *zăchnoút*, } to begin, to
začíti, *zăcheet*, } commence;
začne, *zăchně*, will commence;
půjčiti, *pǔychiťi*, (colloquially: *pǔchit*), to lend;
půjčete mi, *pǔchtě me*, lend me;
povězte mi, *po-vyěztě me*, tell me.
jak se jmenuje, *yák sčmenūyě*, how is — he, she, it — called.
těžký, á, é, *těshkee*, difficult, hard;
rychlý, á, é, *rikhlee* } fast;
rychle, adv. *rikhlě* }
pomalu, *pomǎlǔ*, slowly;
hnedle, *hnedlě*, nearly, (also "soon", "quick");
co nevidět, *tsō něviđet*, in no time, shortly;

*) *Slovníček* is simply a diminutive of **slovník**, meaning "a little or short dictionary". See Note 1, Lesson XVIII.

trošku , (same as trochu), <i>tröshkū</i> ,	dokonalý, á, é, dōkonällee , perfect.
a little;	dokonale,*) <i>dōkonälč</i> , perfectly;
snadný, á, é, snädnée , easy.	výborný, á, é veebornee }
snadno, snädnö , easily;	výborně, adv. veeborňě } first-rate.

Greetings and compliments.*POZDRAVY A POKLONY.*

Good morning, Sir!
(gentlemen, — Madam,— Miss,— ladies).

Good afternoon, Mr.
Brown!

Good evening, Mrs.
Brown!

My compliments!

Good night, doctor!

Good bye! — Farewell!
Farewell!

Dobré jitro**), pane!
(páновé, — paničko,
— slečno,—dámy).

**Dobré odpoledne, pane
Braune!***)**

**Dobrý večer, paní
Braunová !**

Má úcta !

**Dobrou noc, pane dok-
tore⁴!)**

**S bohem !—Na zdar !
Mějte se dobrě !**

döbré ye-trö, pänř! (pá-
növé, — pänichkö, —
slëchnö, — dámy, —
slëchny).

döbré odpolědně, pänř
Browně!

döbree včher, pänř
Brownvá!

má ootstă!

*döbroū nots, pänř dok-
torě!*

sböhem!—nă zdăr!
myěy-tě sě döbrshě!

*) See Note 2, Lesson XXX, about the derivation of adverbs from adjectives. In this case, as well as in some others, the final **ý** changes into a simple **e**: **dokonalý**, — **dokonale**.

Mostly it changes into an **ě**: **yýborný**, — **výborně**; and sometimes into an **o**: **snadný**, — **snadno**. This, however, is rather optional, as we may equally say: **snadně**, **snädně**, (easily).

) In common conversation very often abbreviated: **dobrytro !
döbritro !

***) It is proper to use the vocative case in addressing a person; but in ordinary discourse the proper name is generally left in the nominative: **dobré jitro, pane Braun !**

4) We cannot say in English “Mr. doctor”, two titles in this case being incompatible; but it is customary in Bohemian to say: **pane dokto-
re, pane professore**, or (in common parlance) **pane doktor, pane pro-
fessor**, — leaving the title in the nominative case. “**Mr. editor**”, — **pane
redaktore, pänř redäktorě**, — is an analogous expression in English.

Good luck to you!
I wish you good luck!
I wish you Godspeed!
A happy journey!
A happy return!
To drink one's health.
Your health!

How do you do? How
are you?
How are you getting
along?
Very well, thank you.
How is everything
with you?
Tolerably well.
How is your health?
Are you well? Are you
in good health?
I am pretty well, thank
you.
I am all right.
I feel very well.
I am perfectly well.
And how are you?
I am also well, thank
you.
You are looking well.
I am very well; I can-
not complain.
How is your wife (your
lady)?
She is well, thank you.
How is your family?
They are all well.

Na zdar vám !
{ Přeju vám štěstí !
Šťastnou cestu !
Šťastný návrat !
Píti na zdraví.
Na vaše zdraví !

Jak se máte?
Jak se vám vede?
Tuze dobře, děkuju.
Jak se vede?
Projde to.—Ujde to.
Jak vám zdraví slouží?
Jste zdráv?
**Je mi dost dobře, dě-
kuju.**
Mám se hezky.
Je mi tuze dobře.
Jsem docela zdráv.
A jak vy se máte?
Taky dobře, děkuju.
Vypadáte dobře.
**Mám se výborně; ne-
mohu stěžovat.**
**Jak se má vaše žena
(vaše paní)?**
Dobře, děkuju.
Jak se má vaše rodina?
Jsou všichni zdrávi.

nā zdār vám!
prshěyū vám shťěstī!
shťastnoū tsěstū!
shťastnee návrăt !
peetī nā zdrăvee.
nā văshē zdrăvee!

yāk sě mätě ?
yāk sě vám vědě ?
toozě dōbrshě, d'ěkūyū.
yāk vám zdrăveesloūžee?
stě zdráf?
proydě tō.—ůydě tō.
yāk vám zdrăveesloūžee?
stě zdráf?
*yě me dost dōbrshě, d'ě-
kūyū.*
mám sě hesske.
yě me toozě dōbrshě.
sem dotsělā zdráf.
ā yāk ve sě mätě?
tāke dōbrshě, d'ěkūyū.
vipădátě dobrshě.
*mám sě veeborňe; nemō-
hū stěžovat.*
*yāk sě má văshē ženă
(păñi)?*
dōbrshě, d'ěkūyū.
yāk sě má văshē rodină?
soū fshikhñi zdrávi.

I am glad of it.	To mě těší.	tō myě těshēe.
I am glad to hear it.	To rád slyším.	tō rád slisheem.
That is right.	To je dobré.	tō yě dōbrshē.
I am very glad to see you (or: to meet you).	Jsem tuze rád že vás vidím.	sem toozé rád žě váss viðeem.
I have not seen you for a long time.	Neviděl jsem vás už dávno.	neviðel sem váss ūsh dávnō.
I would like to see you often.	Rád bych viděl vás často.	rád bikh viðel váss chásstō.

My regards!	Že pozdravuju!	žě pozdravvýř!
Greet him (her, them)!	Pozdravujte ho (ji, je)!	pozdravvýryte hō (ye, yě)!
— Give him my regards.	Vyříd'te mé pozdravení.	virshid'ětě mé pozdravvění*)
Give (him, etc.) my best regards!	Pěkné pozdravení!	pyěkné pozdravvění!
My best regards!	Pozdravujte ode mne všecky!	pozdravvýrytě ōdě myě fshětske!
Give my regards to all!	Mou učtu vaší choti!	mou ootstřā váshee khōti!
Remember me to your wife. — My best respects to your wife.	Pěkné pozdravení manželce!	pyěkné pozdravvění mǎnželtse!
My best regards to your wife!	Mou poklonu vaší sestře!	moū poklónňā váshee sěstrshē!
My compliments to your sister!	Poroučím se!	poroúcheem sě!
Good bye!	Pěkné poručení!	pyěkné porúcheení!

*) Nouns ending in **ní** are neutre (see **znamení**, Note 2, Lesson XIV). The final **i** has the long sound of *ee*. But in common discourse the length of the sound is immaterial and it is usually shortened; hence we represent it in these conversations by a simple **ñi**, instead of **nee**.

VOCABULARY.

Pánbůh (i. e. Pán Bůh) <i>pánbook</i> , the Lord God;	poklona , f. <i>pōklonā</i> , compliment, bow;
jitro , n. (same as ráno), <i>yitrō</i> , the morning;	úcta , f. <i>ootsta</i> , respect;
pozdrav , m. <i>pozdrāf</i> { greet-	návrat , m. <i>návrāt</i> , return;
pozdravení , n. <i>pōzdrāveñi</i> , } ing;	zdraví , n. <i>zdrāvee</i> , health;
pozdraviti , <i>pozdrāvit</i> , to greet (once);	choť , m. & f. <i>khōť</i> , the spouse, hus-
pozdravovati , <i>pozdrāvōvāt</i> , to greet; to send greetings;	band or wife;
	stěžovati , <i>stěžovāt</i> , to complain;
	vypadati , <i>vipădăt</i> , to look.

A call.

NÁVŠTĚVA.

Give me a call. — Call and see me.	Navštívte mě. — Přijď- te ke mě.	<i>năfshťiftě myě.</i> — <i>Prshid'-tě*</i>) <i>kě myě.</i>
Call at my house.	Přijďte ke mě domu.	<i>prshid'tě kě myě dōmū.</i>
Call at my store.	Přijďte ke mě do krá- mú.	<i>prshid'tě kě myě dō krá-</i> <i>mū.</i>
Call at my office.	Přijďte do mé písárny.	<i>prshid'tě dō mé peesár-</i> <i>ny.</i>
Did you call at my place?	Byl jste u mě?	<i>bill stě ū myě?</i>
I called at your house, but nobody was at home.	Byl jsem u vás, ale zádný nebyl doma.	<i>bill sem ū váss, ălĕ žád-</i> <i>nee něbill dōmă.</i>
Call again.	Přijďte zas.	<i>prshid'tě zăss.</i>
And when? — Any time.	A kdy? — Kdykoli.	<i>ă gdy?</i> — <i>gdykoli.</i>
When will you be at home.	Kdy budete doma?	<i>gdy bădětě dōmă?</i>
To-morrow surely.	Zejtra**) <i>jistě.</i>	<i>zeytră yistě.</i>
When will you call and see me?	Kdy mě navštívíte?	<i>gdy myě nafshťiveetě?</i>

*) Colloquially this is still more condensed and sounds like *prshid-tě*.**) **Zejtra** or **zítra** (to-morrow), derived from **zjitra**, **zajitra**, next morning.

I shall give you a call
to-morrow or day af-
ter to-morrow.

Yes, do call; I shall be
expecting you.

Somebody is knocking.
— Some one rings.

Go and see who that
is.

Go and open the door.

It is some gentleman,
— some stranger.

It is Mr. Arbes.

Let him come in.

Come in!—Walk in!

Come in, if you please.

Sit down.

Take a seat, if you
please.

Please take a seat.

Here is a seat.

Stay with us to dinner.

Excuse me, I cannot;
I have no time.

Are you in a hurry?

Yes, I am in a hurry.

Where do you hurry?

I have an appointment
with Mr. Coleman.

Don't be in such a hur-
ry; wait a little.

Indeed I cannot; I shall
soon call again.

Do so, if you please!

Please, come again.

Navštívím vás zejtra
nebo pozejtrá.

Ano, navštívte; budu
vás očekávat.

Někdo klepá. — Někdo
zvoní.

Jděte se podívat kdo to
je.

Jděte otevřít.

Je to nějaký pán,—ně-
jaký eizinec.

Je to pan Arbes.

Ať vejde!

Dále!

Vejděte, prosím!

Sedněte si.

Posaděte se, prosím.

Račte se posaditi.

Tady je židle.

Zůstaňte u nás na oběd.

Odpusťte, nemohu;
nemám čas.

Máte na spěch?

Ano, mám na spěch.

Kam spěcháte?

Mám schůzi s panem
Kolmanem.

Nespěchejte tak; poč-
kejte trošku.

Opravdu nemohu; při-
jdu brzo zas.

Prosím, přijďte!

Račte přijíti zas.

näfshťiveem váss zey-
trá něbō pozeytrshee.

änō, näfshťiftě; bvdě
váss ochékávät.

ñegdō klépá. — ñegdō
zwöñee.

d'etě sě pod'evět gdě tě
yě.

d'etě ñtëversheet.

yě tō ñeyäkee pán,—ñe-
yäkee tsizinets.

yě tō pán Arbes.

ăt̄ veydě!

dálě!

veyd'etě, proseem!

sedñetě sī.

posäd'tě sě, proseem.

rächtě sě posäd'it.

tädy yě židle.

zoostäñtě ū nás nă obyěd

odpustě, nemohü; ne-
mám chäss.

mátě na spyëkh?

änō, mám nă spyëkh.

käm spyëkhätě?

mám shkoozi spänem
Kolmänen.

nespyëkheytě ták; poch-
keytě troshkü.

opravdū němohü;
prshiydū berzō zäss.

proseem, prshid'tě!

rächtě prshiyeeet zäss.

Drop in, when you
have time.
I will come here as
soon as I have time.
Good day!

**Zaskočte sem, když
máte čas.**
**Přídu sem, jakmile
budu mít čas.**
Poroučím se!

*zăskočtě sem, gdyž má-
tě chăss.*
*prshiydū sem, yäkmilē
bûdû meet chăss.*
poročheem sě!

VOCABULARY.

Návštěva, f. *náfshťevă*, a call, a visit;
navštíviti, *náfshťeavit*, to visit;
očekávati, *ochékávăt*, to await;
zaskočiti, *zăskochit*, to drop in;
poroučeti, *poročhet*, to command;
poroučeti se, *poročhet sě*, to take
leave;
poroučím se, *poročheem sě*, good
day!
sednouti si, *sednoūt sì* } to sit down,
posaditi se, *posăd'it sě* } to take a place;

eizinec, m. *tsizinets*, a stranger;
spěch, m. *spyčkh*, the hurry;
schůze, f. *skhoozĕ*, meeting, ap-
pointment;
židle, f. *židlĕ*, the chair;
klepati, *klepăt*, to knock;
zvoniti, *zvoñit*, to ring;
otevřiti, *otěvrsheet*, to open;
odpustiti, *odpüsťit*, to excuse, to
forgive.

Time.

ČAS.

Day and night.
I worked all day.
I did not sleep all night.
I work day and night.
We sat up late at night.

He came late at night
and wanted a night's
lodging.

The day was clear; the
night was dark.

To-day, — yesterday.
This morning, — this
noon,— this evening,
— this midnight.

Den a noc.
Pracoval jsem celý den.
Nespal jsem celou noc.
Dělám ve dne v noci.
**Seděli jsme dlouho do
noci.**

**Přišel pozdě na noc a
chtěl nocleh.**

**Den byl jasný; noc by-
la tmavá.**
Dnes, — včera.
**Dnes ráno, — dnes v
poledne, — dnes ve-
čer, — dnes o půlnoci.**

den ď nots.
prätsoväl sem tsělee den.
nespäl sem tsěloū nots.
dělám vě dně vnotsi.
*sěd'eli smě dloúhō dō
notsi.*

*prshishell pozd'e nă
nots a kh'fel notslěh.*

*den bill yăsnée; nots bil-
lă tmavá.*
dness, — fcheră.
*dness ráno, — dness fpo-
ledně, — dness věcher,
— dness o poolnotsi.*

This forenoon it rained
— this afternoon it
was fine.

Until evening; — until
morning.

In broad daylight.

To-night he will come
home. — To-night he
came home.

He came last night, —
last evening, — early
in the morning, — late
in the evening, —
about midnight.

Evening before last; —
night before last.

When was it? — Last
night.

When did it happen? —
Night before last.

When shall I take that
medicine?

In the morning, at noon
and at bed-time.

Yesterday was a holi-
day. — Day before
yesterday there was
a fire.

To-morrow I shall
leave; — day after to-
morrow I shall be in
St. Louis.

Dnes dopoledne pršelo;
—dnes odpoledne by-
lo hezky.

Až do večera; — až do
rána.

Za bilého dne.

Dnes v noci přijde do-
mu. — Dnes v noci
přišel domu.

Přišel minulou noc, —
včera večer, — čas-
ně ráno, — pozdě ve-
čer, — kolem půl-
noci.

Předminulý večer; —
předminulou noc.

Kdy to bylo? — Dnes
v noci.

Kdy se to stalo? — Vče-
ra v noci.

Kdy mám užívat?

Ráno, v poledne a na
noc.

Včera byl svátek. —
Předečírem hoře-
lo.

Zejtra odjedu; — po-
zejtrí budu v St.
Louis.

dness dōpolednē pershel-
lō; — dness ďopoled-
nē billō hessky.

ăsh do věcheră; — ăsh
dō ránă.

ză beeléhō dně.

dness vnotsi prshidě dō-
mū. — dness vnotsi
prshi-shell dōmū.

prshī-shell minūloū nots
— fcheră včher, —
chassňe ránō,—pozd'e
včher, — kolem pool-
notsi.

prshēd-minūlee včher; -
prshēd-minūloū nots.
gdy tō billō? — dness
vnotsi.

gdy sě tō stálō? — fchě-
rā vnotsi.
gdy mám ūzeevát?

ránō, spoledně ă nă
nots.

fcheră bill svátek. —
prshēdě-fcheerem ho-
rshēlō.

zejtră odyědō; — po-
zejtrshee bědō v St.
Louis.

VOCABULARY.

Nocleh, *notslěh*, a night's lodging;
svátek, *svátek*, a holiday;
stati se, *stát sě*, to happen, to occur;

stalo se, *stálō sě*, it happened;
stane se, *stāně sě*, it will happen;
stane-li se, *stāně-lí sě*, if it happens;

jasný, á é, yássnee, bright, clear;
tmavý, á, é, tmávee, dark;
minulý, á, é, minülee, past, last;
předminulý, prshéd-minülee, before
 last;

This week I am in good health; — last week I was sick.

The last two weeks I was on the road (i. e. traveling).

Next week I shall again leave.

Next week I expect my brother.

In two weeks I shall get money; — in five weeks I shall be in Europe.

In how many weeks will you return? — I shall return in about a month.

In how many months shall I see you? — In two months; — in five months.

When shall we meet again? — In a quarter

odjeti, ódyet, to leave (by some conveyance);
užívati, üžeevát, to take medicine; (also "to enjoy").

Tento týden jsem zdráv; — **minulý týden byl jsem nemocen.**

Poslední dvě neděle byl jsem na cestách.

S neděle zase odjedu.

Budoucí týden čekám bratra.

Za dvě neděle dostanu peníze; — **za pět neděl budu v Evropě.**

Za kolik neděl se vrátíte? — **Vrátím se asi za měsíc.**

Za kolik měsíců vás uvidím? — **za dva měsíce;** — **za pět měsíců.**

Kdy se sejdeme zas? — **Za čtvrt leta,*) za**

tento teeděn sem zdráf;
— minülee teeděn bill sem němotsrén.
posledñee dwyč ned'el' bill sem nă tsestákh.

sněd'el' zássé odyědú.

budoútsee teeděn chekám brätrá.

ză dwyč ned'el' döstánū peñeezě; — *ză pyět ned'el' bědū věvropyč.*

ză kolik ned'el' sě vráťetě? — *vráťeem sě čsi ză myšeets.*

ză kolik myšeetsoo váss ūvid'eem? — *ză dwa myšeetsč;* — *ză pyět myšeetsoo.*

gdy sě seydemě zăss? — *za shtwert letă,* — *ză*

*) Ordinarily **leto**, n. means "summer"; but the noun **rok**, m. (the year) has in the plural **leta, let:** **dvě leta**, two years or "two summers"; **pět let**, five years or "five summers"; etc. See Lesson XIX, and foot-note on page 83.

The same is true of fractions: **čtvrt leta**, *shtwert letă*, a quarter of a year; **půl leta**, *pool letă*, half a year; **tři čtvrti leta**, *trshi shtwerti letă*, three quarters of a year.

However, we may also say: **dva roky**, two years; **pět roků**, five years etc. Likewise: **čtvrt roku**, **půl roku**, **tři čtvrti roku**.

of a year,— in half a year, — in a year.

I shall be here within a year.

My son has been gone five years;—he writes to me once a year (once in a year, — once yearly).

In how many years do you expect him?

In three years,— in six years.

I think he will arrive shortly, — speedily, — before long.

In a short time we shall see him.— In a short while we shall be together.

It is a week since I was in New York.

It is scarcely two weeks since father was here.

It will soon be a year since I was in the old country.

It is very near two years since I sold the farm.

This day a year (or: a year ago to-day) Otto was here;—four years ago to-day we were together at San Francisco.

půl leta, — za rok.

Budu zde do dne do roka.

Syn je pryč pět let; — piše mi jednou do roka (or: jednou za rok, — jednou ročně).

Za kolik let ho čekáte?

Za tři leta, — za šest let.

Myslím že přijede za krátko, — v krátkosti, — za nedlouho.

Za krátký čas ho uvidíme. — Za krátkou dobu budeme pohromadě.

Je tomu týden co jsem byl v New Yorku.

Je tomu sotva dvě něle, co zde byl otec.

Bude tomu brzo rok, co jsem byl ve staré vlasti.

Budou tomu hnedle dvě leta, co jsem prodal farmu.

Dnes rok byl zde Otto; — dnes čtyry leta byli jsme spolu v San Franciscu.

pool letč, — ză rok.

břdū zdě dō dně dō rokā.

syn yě prich pyět let; — peeshě me yednoř dō rokā (or: yednoř ză rok, — yednoř rochñe).

ză kolik let hō chekátē?

ză trshī letč, — ză shěst let.

misleem že prshiyědě ză krátkō, — fkrátkost'i, — ză nedloǔhō.

ză krátkee chăss hō ūvíd'eeemě. — ză krátkou dōbū břdemě pôhromad'ě.

yě tōmū teeděn tsō sem bill v New Yorkū.

yě tōmū sotivā dwyě něd'elě tsō zdě bill otets.

břdě tōmū b'erzō rök, tsō sem bill vě slěré vlaſťi.

břdoř tōmū hnedlě dwyě letč, tsō sem prodäl farmū.

dness rok bill zdě Otto; — dness shtíry lětā billi smě spolū fsan-franciscu.

To-morrow it will be a year since Mary left; — two years ago yesterday mother died.

The other week our folks were here.

It is scarcely a week since they left; — it is just a month since they arrived.

It will shortly be a month since it happened.

It is not long since; — it was a short time since; — it was the other day.

How long is it since you have been here?

Day before yesterday it was a year. — It was half a year (last) Sunday. — It will be four months on Monday. — It will be eight months on Tuesday.

When was it? — Wednesday a week; — two weeks ago on Thursday; — a week ago last Friday; — three weeks ago last Saturday.

Zejtra bude rok co Mary odjela; — včera dvě leta matka zmřela.

Onen týden byli tu naši.

Je tomu sotva týden co odjeli; — je tomu zrovna měsíc, co přijeli.

Hnedle bude měsíc co se to stalo.

Je to nedávno; — bylo to nedávno; — bylo to onehdy.

Jak dávno tomu co jste tu ?

Přede včirem minul rok. — Minulo půl leta v neděli. — Budou čtyry měsíce v pondělí. — Bude osm měsíců v úterý.

Kdy to bylo? — Ve středu týden; — ve čtvrtek dvě neděle; — v pátek minul týden; — v sobotu minuly tři neděle.

zeytrā būdě rok tsō Mary od-yellā; — fchěrā dwyē letā mātkā zemrshellā.

onen teeděn billi tū năshī.

yě tōmū sotwā teeděn tsō od-yelli; — yě tōmū zrovna myšeets tsō prshi-yelli.

hnedlě būdě myšeets tsō sě tō stălō.

yě tō nedávnō; — billō tō nedávnō; — billō tō ɔnehdy.

yăk dávno tōmū tsō stě tū ?

prshěděfcheerem minūl rok. — minūlō pool lětā vněřeli. — būdou shtiry myšeetsěfpon-đelee. — būdě osūm myšeetsoo vooteree.

gdy tō billō? — vě strshěděteeděn; — vě shtweter-tek dwyē nedělē; — fpátek minūl teeděn; fsobřtū minūly trshi nedělē.

Before a year passes
we shall be one another's (i. e. man and wife).

Before two years pass away, all will be over.

Will it be long? — It won't be long.

Will it last long? — It won't last long.

It takes long.— It took long.— It didn't take long.— O yes, it did !

How soon will it be? — It will be right away. — It is done already.

Neděle, *nědělě*, Sunday
pondělí, *pondělee*, Monday
úterý, *ootěree*, Tuesday
středa, *strshědě*, Wednesday
čtvrtok, *shwertek*, Thursday
pátek, *pátek*, Friday
sobota, *sobotă*, Saturday
nedávno, *nědávnō*, not long since
jak dávno, *yák dávnō*, how long since

co, *tsō*, since
sotva, *sotvă*, scarcely, hardly
budoucí, *būdovtsee* } future, next
příští, *prsheesh-t'ee* } future, next
dostati, *dostät*, to get, to receive;

Než mine rok budeme svoji.

Než minou dvě leta, bude po všem.

Bude to dlouho? — Nebude to dlouho.

Bude to dlouho trvat? — Nebude to dlouho trvat.

To trvá dlouho. — Trvalo to dlouho. — Ne-trvalo to dlouho. — Ba trvalo ?

Jak brzo to bude? — Bude to hned. — Už je to.

nesh mině rok, būdemě swoyi.

nesh minoū dīvę letă, būdě pō fshěm.

būdě tō dloūhō?—nebū-dě tō dloūhō.

būdě tō dloūhō tervāt? — nebūdě tō dloūhō tervāt.

tō tervá dloūhō.—tervā-lō tō dloūhō.—neter-válō tō dloūhō. — bā tereválō!

yák berzō tō būdě?—bū-dě tō hnēd.—ušh yě tō.

VOCABULARY.

za krátko, <i>ză krátkō</i>	v krátkosti, <i>fkrátkost'i</i>	shortly,
za nedlouho, <i>ză nědloū-hō</i>		
za krátký čas, <i>ză krát-kee chăss</i>		in a short time;
za krátkou dobu, <i>ză krátkoū dōbū</i>		
denně, <i>děnē</i> , daily		
týdně, <i>teednē</i> , weekly		
měsíčně, <i>myěszechnē</i> , monthly		
ročně, <i>rochnē</i> , yearly.		
na cestách, <i>nă tsestákh</i> , (literally : “on the roads”), traveling;		
stará vlast, <i>stărá vlăst</i> , the old country.		

The hour.
HODINA.

Have you a watch? — — I have.	Máte hodinky? — Mám.	mátě <i>hoďinky?</i> — mám.
Does it go right? — It is too slow (i. e. it goes late); — it loses; — it is (it goes) too fast.	Jdou*) dobré? — Jdou pozdě; — pozdě se; — jdou napřed.	doň <i>dobrshě?</i> — doň <i>pozdě;</i> — <i>pozděe se;</i> — doň <i>näprshed.</i>
It is a few minutes too late. — It is five min- utes too fast.	Jsou o pár minut po- zadu. — Jsou o pět minut napřed.	Soň o pár minüt poză- dū. — Soň o pyět minüt näprshed.
It stopped (literally: it stands).	Stojí. — Zůstaly stá- ti.	stoyee. — zoostâly stát.
It is not wound up. — It was not wound up.	Nejsou nataženy. — Nebyly nataženy.	neysoň nätäženy. — ně- billy nätäženy.
Wind up the watch, — the clock.	Natáhněte hodinky, — hodiny.	nätahnětě <i>hoďinky,</i> — <i>hoďiny.</i>
Is that clock right (lit. "does it go right")? — I think it is.	Jdou ty hodiny dobré? Myslím že jdou.	doň <i>ty hoďiny dobrshě?</i> — mysluem že doň.
What o'clock is it (or: what time is it)? — How late is it?	Kolik je hodin? — Jak je pozdě?	kolik yě <i>hod'in?</i> — yák yě <i>pozd'e?</i>
Don't you know what o'clock it is? — I don't know.	Nevíte kolik je hodin? Nevím.	něveetě <i>kolik yě hod'in?</i> — něveem.
See what o'clock it is. — I will see (<i>or</i> look).	Podívejte se kolik je hodin. — Podívám se.	podíveeytě sě <i>kolik yě hod'in.</i> — podívevám sě <i>yě yednā hoďinā.</i> — yě <i>shtw'ert na dvě</i> (or <i>na druhou</i>).
It is one o'clock. — It is a quarter past one.	Je jedna hodina. — Je čtvrt na dvě (or na druhou).	

*) **Hodinky** (the watch) and **hodiny** (the clock) are plural nouns; consequently the succeeding verb must appear in the plural form: **jdou**, **jsou** (they go, they are). This has already been pointed out in a foot-note on page 137. — **Hodina**, **hodinka**, in the singular, means: "the hour", "the small hour".

It is half past one.— It is a quarter to two.

It is two o'clock. — Is it so late already? — Yes, it is two (o'clock) already.

It is past two o'clock — It is five minutes to three. — It is very near three o'clock.

It is past three. — It wants ten minutes to four.

At what o'clock shall we go? — We shall go at a quarter past four.

That is too soon; we shall wait till half past four. Very well, then.

We shall go at five o'clock. — All right.

We started at five o'clock in the afternoon.

Did you come in time? — Didn't you come late?

It was time enough; there was no hurry.

We came there a few minutes after six.

We arrived there before seven, — after seven, — early in the

Je půl druhé. — Jsou tři čtvrtě na dvě (or na druhou).

Jsou dvě hodiny. — Už je tak pozdě? — Ano, už jsou dvě.

Jsou dvě hodiny pryč. — Je pět minut do třech. — Jsou hnedě tři hodiny.

Jsou tři pryč. — Chybí deset minut do čtyřech.

V kolik hodin půjdeme? — Půjdeme ve čtvrt na pět.

To je tuze brzo; počkáme do půl páté. — Tak teda.

Půjdeme v pět hodin. — Třeba.

Vyšli jsme o páté hodině odpoledne.

Přišli jste v čas? — Ne- přišli jste pozdě?

Bylo dost času; nebyl žádný spěch.

Přišli jsme tam pář minut po šesté.

Došli jsme tam před sedmou, — po sedmě, — s večera, — pozdě

yě pool držhé. — soū trshi shtw erťe na dwyě (nā drūhoū).

soū dwyě hodiny. — ūsh yě třk pozd'e? — anō, ūsh soū dwyě.

soū dwyě hodiny prich. — yě pyět minět dō trshěkh. — soū hnědlé trshi hodiny.

soū trshi prich. — khibee děset minět dō shtyrekh.

fkolik hodin půydemě? — půydemě vě shtwert nā pyět.

tō yě toozě berzō; pochkámě dō pool páté. — třk tědā.

půydemě fpyět hodin. — trshěbā.

vishli smě ř páté hodí ře ře odpoledně.

prshishli stě chăss? — něprshishli stě pozd'e?

billō dost chăss; nebill žádnee spyěkh.

prshishli smě tām pář minět pō shěsté.

döshli smě tām prshěd sedmoū, — pō sedmě, — svěcherā, — pozd'e

evening,—late in the evening, — at midnight.

We got there in an hour, — in an hour and a half, — in two hours,—in five hours.

We were here just at twelve o'clock.

We were here exactly at noon.

I must be there between one and two; -- between two and three; — between four and five.

We must be there before evening, —early in the evening, — towards evening.

The clock strikes.
Hear how many (what o'clock) it strikes.

It strikes twelve.
Did you hear the clock strike?

How many (i. e. what o'clock) did it strike?

It struck one;—it struck two;—it struck three; — it struck five;— it struck six.

večer, — o půlnoci.

Došli jsme tam za hodinu, — za půldruhé hodiny, — za dvě hodiny, — za pět hodin.

Byli jsme tu zrovna ve dvanáct hodin.

Byli jsme tu navlas v poledne.

Musím tam být mezi jednou a druhou; — mezi druhou a třetí; —mezi čtvrtou a páhou.

Musíme tam být před večerem, — brzo s večera, — na večer.

věcher, — o poolnotsi.

dőshli smětām ză hod'ini, —ză pooldrúhē hod'iny, —ză dwyě hod'iny, — ză pyět hod'in. billi smětū zravnă vě dwanátst hod'pin. billi smětū návläss fpolédne.

můseem tām beet mězi yednoū ā drúhoū; — mězi drúhoū ā trshět'ee, — mězi shtwertoū ā pátoū.

můseemětām beetprshěd věcherem, — berzo svěcherā, — nă věcher.

**Hodiny bijou*)
Slyšte kolik bijou!**

**Bijou dvanáct.
Slyšel jste hodiny bítí?**

Kolik bilo?

**Bila jedna;—bily dvě;
— bily tři; — bilo
pět; — bilo šest.**

*hod'iny biyoū.
slishťe kolik biyoū!*

*biyoū dwanátst.
slishell stě hod'iny beet?*

kolik billō?

billă yednă; — billy dwyě; — billy trshi; — billō pyět; — billō shěst.

*) **Bijou** or **bijí** (they strike). See Note 2, and also foot-note on page 137.

It has just struck half past six.	Právě bilo půl sedmě.	právyč billč pool sedmē.
It has already struck seven.	Už odbilo sedm.	úsh odbillč sedm.
It is soon going to strike eight.	Hnedle bude bíti osm.	hnedlč břdč beet osm.
I shall wait till half past eight.	Budu čekati do půl devátě.	břdč chekāt dč pool děvátě.
I shall wait till nine.	Počkám do devítí.	pochkám dč děvečči.
Let us wait till ten.	Počkejme do desítí.	pochkeymč dč dessečči.
Wait till midnight, or until morning.	Počkejte do půlnoci, nebo do rána.	pochkeytč dč poolnotsi, nebř dč ránā.
I shall wait gladly.	Rád počkám.	rád pochkám.
I do not like to wait.	Nerad čekám.	nerád chekám.
Waiting is not agreeable.	Čekání není milé.	chekáñi neyñi milé.
I do not like long waiting.	Nemám rád dlouhé čekání.	nemám rád dloúhé chekáñi.

VOCABULARY.

Hodina , f. <i>hođină</i> , the hour;	natahnouti , <i>nătăhnoût</i> , to wind up;
hodinka , f. <i>hođinkă</i> , the small hour;	nataženy , <i>nătăženy</i> , wound up;
hodiny , pl. <i>hođiny</i> , the clock;	čekati , <i>chekāt</i> , to wait, to be waiting;
hodinky , pl. <i>hođinky</i> , the watch;	čekám , <i>chekám</i> , I am waiting;
lék , m. <i>lék</i> , the medicine;	počkatı , <i>pochkät</i> , to wait;
spěch , m. <i>spyěkh</i> , the hurry;	počkám , <i>pochkám</i> , I shall wait;
čekání , n. <i>chekáñi</i> , the waiting;	pozadu , <i>pozădū</i> , behind.
napřed , <i>năprshěd</i> , ahead, before;	

Age and date.

VĚK a DATUM.

How old are you?	Jak jste stár? Kolik je vám let?	<i>yák stě stár?</i> <i>kolik yě vám let?</i>
I am twenty years. — I am over twenty.	Je mi dvacet let. — Je mi přes dvacet.	<i>yě me dvătset let.</i> — <i>yě me prshěs dvătset.</i>

I shall soon be twenty five years.	Bude mi brzo dvacet pět let.	būdě me berzō dvātset pyět let.
I am nearly thirty years.	Je mi málem třicet let.	yě mi málem trshitset let.
I am already thirty five years.	Už je mi třicet pět let.	úsh yě me trshitset pyět let.
I was forty years in January.	Bylo mi čtyryceet let v lednu.	billō me shtiritset let vlednū.
You are still young.	Jste ještě mladý.	stě yesh'te mlădee.
I shall be fifty years in February. — I am getting old.	Bude mi padesát let v únoru. — Stárnu.	būdě me păděsát let voo-norū. — stárnū.
That is not a great age. You look young.	To není velké stáří.	tō neyñi velké stárshee.
You don't look so old.	Vypadáte mladý.	vypădătē mlădee.
You look well for your age.	Nevypadáte tak starý.	něvypădătē tăk stăree.
When were you born?	Vypadáte dobrě na svůj věk.	vypădătē dōbrshē nă svûj vyék.
What year? — In what year?	Kdy jste*) narozen? — Kdy jste se narodil?	gdy stě nărözĕn? gdy stě sě nărod'il?
I was born in the year 1840.—I was born in May in the year 1850.	Který rok? — V ktere-m roce? Jsem narozen roku 1840. — Jsem rozen v máji leta 1850.	ktěree rök? — fktérém rotsč? sem nărözĕn rökü ti-seets osüm set shtiri-tset.—sem rozĕn v máyi letă tiseets osüm set păděsát.
I was born in the month of June 1862.	Narodil jsem se v měsíci červnu 1862.	nărod'il sem sě vmyě-seetsi chervnū tiseets osüm set shěděsát dwă.
The first of August is my birth-day.	Prvního srpna je můj den narození.	pervñeehō serpnă yě můj den nărozĕnī.

*) In Bohemian the passive participle **rozen** or **narozen** is used in connection with the present tense : **kdy jste rozen?** **kdy jste narozen?** "when are you born"?

How old is that child?
It is ten days.—It is
two weeks (old).

It is a month (old).—It
is two months.—It is
five months.

It is one year (old).—
It is two years (old).
—It is five years (old).

It will be a year in Sep-
tember.—It will soon
be three years.

It is going on two
years (it is in its sec-
ond year). — It is
going on five years.

How old is that girl?
She will be four years
at Christmas.—She
will be five years at
Easter. — She will
soon be six years.

What day of the month
is it?—what date is it?

To-day is the first,—the
second,— the fifth.

What day of the month
is (i. e. will be) to-
morrow?

To-morrow is ("will
be") the third, — the
tenth, — the twen-
tieth.

What date was yes-
terday?

Jak staré je to dítě?
Je mu deset dní. —
Jsou mu dvě neděle.

Je mu měsíc. — Jsou
mu dva měsíce. —
Je mu pět měsíců.

Je mu rok. — Jsou mu
dvě leta.—Je mu pět
let.

Bude mu rok v září. —
Budou mu brzo tři
leta.

Jde mu na druhý rok.
Jde mu na pátý rok.

Jak stará je ta holka?
Budou jí čtyry leta o
vánocích. — Bude jí
pět let o velkono-
cích.—Bude jí hne-
dle šest let.

**Kolikátého je? — jaké
je datum?**

**Dnes je prvního, dru-
hého, — pátého.**

**Kolikátého bude zej-
tra?**

**Zejtra bude třetího, —
desátého, — dvacáté-
ho.**

**Kolikátého bylo vče-
ra?**

yák stáré yě to dítě?
yě mū děset dñee. — *sou*
mū dwyě nědělě.

yě mū myšeets. — *sou*
mū dwā myšeetsč. —
yě mū pyět myšeetsoo.

yě mū rök. — *sou* *mū*
dwyě letč. — *yě mū*
pyět let.

bědě mū rök vzárshee.
— *bědoǔ mū berzō*
trshi letč.

dě mū nă drühhee rök. —
dě mū nă pátee rök.

yák stárá yě tř holkā?
bědoǔ yee shtriy letč ř
vánotseekh. — *bědě yee*
pyět let ř velknot-
seekh. — *bědě yee hně*
dlě shěst let.

kolikátéhō yě? — *yáké*
yě dātum?

dness yě pérvñehō, —
drühēhō, — pátéhō.

kolikátéhō bědě zeytrā?

zeytrā bědě trshetčehō,
— *dessátéhō, — dwä-*
tsátéhō.

kolikátéhō billō fcherā?

Yesterday was the twenty-first.

What day of the month will be next Sunday? — The twenty-second.

On what day of the month was Frank here? — He was here on the fifteenth and he will come again on the twenty-fifth.

This month? — Yes; he will stay here until the last.

On the first I shall receive new goods.

When will Mr. Danesh pay (his) bill? — Before the last.—On the first of next month.

When will the agent arrive? — About the ninth.

When will the time run out? When will it be due? — About the fifteenth.

That is, about the middle of the month. — I shall pay towards the end of the month.

Next month I expect to be gone. — Before two months pass away, I shall be back.

Včera bylo dvacátého prvního.

Kolikátého bude v neděli? — Dvacátého druhého.

Kolikátého byl zde Frank? — Byl zde patnáctého a přijde zas na dvacátého pátého.

Tento měsíc? — Ano; zůstane tu do posledního.

Na prvního dostanu nové zboží.

Kdy pan Daneš zaplatí účet? — Do posledního. — Na prvního budoucí měsíce.

Kdy přijede agent? — Asi devátého.

Kdy vyjde čas? Kdy vypadne lhůta? — Kolem patnáctého.

Teda v polou měsíce. — Zaplatím ke konci měsíce.

Na druhý měsíc hodláme být pryč. — Než uplynou dva měsíce, budu nazpět.

fcherě billō dwátsátéhō p'ervñeehō.

kolikátéhō b'udě vněd'reli? — dwátsátéhō druhéhō.

kolikátéhō bill zdě Frank? — billzdě p'atnátstéhō ā prshidě zăss nă dwátsátéhō pátéhō.

tentō myšeets? — āno; zoostánř tř dō posledníehō.

nă p'ervñeehō dōstánř nové zbožee.

gdy p'ān Dānesh z'apláťee vochet? — dō p'osledñeehō. — nă p'ervñeehō b'udoútsee myšeets.

gdy prshiydě ākent? — āsi děvátéhō.

gdy veedě chăss? gdy vypădně lhootă? — kolem p'atnátstéhō.

tedě fpoloř myšeets. — z'apláťeem kě kontsi myšeets.

nă druhhee myšeets hodláme beet prich. — nesh'uplinou dwă myšeets, b'udū năspyet.

We shall expect you some time in October; — or in the beginning of November; — at latest before the first of December.

The fourth of July is a national holiday, — the day of independence.

Thanksgiving day is usually in November. On new-year's day; — before New-year's; — after New-year's.

Budeme vás čekati někdy v říjnu; — nebo počátkem listopadu; — nejdýl do prvního prosince.

Čtvrtý červenec jest národní svátek, — den neodvislosti.

Den díkůvzdání bývá v listopadu.
Na nový rok; — do nového roku; — po novém roce.

běděmě váss chekāt ře-gdy frsheeynř; — něbō pochátkem listopádř; — neydeel dō perva-néeho prosintsř.

shticertee chervěnets yest národňee svátek, — den něodvislosti.

den d'eecküczdáňee beevá vlistopádř.
nă noveci rök; — dō nové hř rökř; — pō nocém rotš.

VOCABULARY.

Věk, m. *vyěk* { the age
stáří, n. *stárshee*
stárnouti, *stárnoūt*, to grow old;
naroditi se, *nărod'it sě*, to be born;
narození, n. *năroženňi*, the birth;
počátek, m. *pochátek*, the beginning;
lhůta, f. *lhootă*, the given time, the term;
vánoce, pl. *vánotsř*, Christmas;
velkonoce, pl. *velkýnotsř*, Easter;
svatodušní svátky, pl., *swatđdúshňee svátky*, Whitsuntide;

vypadati, *vypădăt* { to look, to appear;
vyhlížeti, *vyhleežet* } pear;
vyjíti, *viyeet*, to go out, to run out;
uplynouti, *üplynoūt*, to pass away;
zaplatiti, *zăplăťit*, to pay up;
někdy, řegdy, sometimes;
v polou, *fpoloū*, in the middle;
nazpět, *năspyět* { back
zpátky, *spátky* }
neodvislost, f. *něodvislōst*, the independence.

Leden, *leděn*, January
únor, *oonor*, February
březen, *brshězěn*, March
duben, *dăběn* { April
apríl, *ăpril*

květen, *kwyětěn* { May
máj, *máy*
červen, *chervěn*, June
červenec, *chervěnets*, July
srpen, *serpěn*, August

září, *zárshée*, September
říjen, *rsheeyěn*, October

listopad, *listopăd*, November
prosinec, *prosinets*, December.

The weather. POČASÍ.

How is the weather?
 It is fine; — it is beau-
 tiful weather.

It is clearing up; — it is
 a fine morning; — it
 will be a nice day.

The heaven is clear.—
 The sun shines, —
 warms (i. e. makes it
 warm), — burns.

In the sun it is hot.

It is warm; — it will be
 hot; — there will be a
 great heat to-day.

Yesterday there was a
 great heat.

How does the thermom-
 eter stand? — Eighty
 five in the shade.

The thermometer is
 rising, — is falling.

What a heat! — I am per-
 spiring; let us go into
 the shade; — I feel hot.

What wind is it? — East
 wind, — West wind,
 South wind, — North
 wind.

I think there will be a

Jaké je počasí?
Je pěkné; — je krásné
 počasí.

Vybírá se; — je krás-
 né ráno; — bude pěk-
 ný den.

Nebe je jasné. — Slun-
 ce svítí — hřeje —
 páli.

Na slunci je horko.
Je teplo; — bude hor-
 ko; — bude dnes vel-
 ké parno.

**Včera bylo silné ve-
 dro.**

Jak stojí teploměr? —
 Osmdesát pět ve stí-
 nu.

Teploměr stoupá, —
 klesá.

To je horko! — Já se po-
 tím; pojďme do chládku. — Je mi horko.

Jaký je vítr? — Vý-
 chodní, — západní,
 jižní, — severní.

Myslím že bude změna

yáké yě počhásee?
yě pyěkňe; — *yě kráss-*
né počhásee.

vybeerá sě; — *yě kráss-*
néránř; — *bědě pyěk-*
nee den.

něbě yě yásné. — *slüntsě*
sweetee, — *hrshěyě,* —
pálee.

nă slüntsi yě horkō.
yě teplō; — *bědě horkō;*
 — *bědě dness velké*
parnō.

fcherā billō silnē vědrō.

yák stoyee teplomyer?
 — *osümdeßát pyět vě*
s'eenř.

teplomyer stořpá, — *klě-*
sá.

tō yě horkō! — *yá sě po-*
ťeem; podměděd khládku; — *yě me horkō.*

yákee yě veeter? — *vee-*
khodňee, — *západňee,*
 — *yižňee,* — *sěverňee.*

misleem že bědě zmyě-

change in the weather;—the wind changes.—Now it blows from the East.

Very likely there will be a change.

It is dry; we need rain; —I wish it would rain! —There is a great deal of dust.

Is it going to rain?—It looks like it; it is getting cloudy.

It is cloudy;— the sky is clouded;— the sky is overcast; — it is damp.

Do you see those dense, black clouds?—They bring rain,— a heavy rain.

I think a rainstorm is coming, — a heavy rainstorm.

The weather is bad; — the weather is nasty; — it is wet and muddy.

It is very nasty out of doors; — it is rainy; — too much rain!

It sprinkles;—it rains a little; — it rains; — it pours;— how muddy it will be!

počasí;— vítr se mění. — Teď vane od východu.

Dost možná, že bude změna.

Je sucho; potřebujeme dešť. — Kéž by jen pršelo! — Je moc prachu.

Bude pršet? — Vypadá to tak; mračí se.

Je zamračeno;—je pod mrakem;—obloha je zatažena; — je vlhko.

Vidíte ty husté, černé mraky? — Z toho bude dešť, — hodný dešť.

Myslím že bude liják, — silný liják.

Je špatné počasí; — je škaredá povětrnost; — je mokro a blativo.

Je tam ošklivě;— je deštivo; — mnoho deště!

Krápe;— poprchačává; — prší; lije se; — to bude blata!

nā pochäsee; — veet er sě myěñee. — těd' vänče od veekhodū.

dost mōžná že bědě zmyňná.

yě sūkhō; potrshěbūyě-mě deshť. — kěž be yen p'ershellō! — yě mots prákhū.

bědě p'ershět? — vypřadá tō tāk; mrāchee sč.

yě zámrváchenō; — yě pod mrákem; — oblōhā yě zátaženā; — yě v'elhko.

ved'eete ty hūssté, cher-né mráky? — stohō bědě deshť, — hodnee deshť.

misseem že bědě liyák, — silnee liyák.

yě shpätné pochäsee; — yě shkäredá povyeter-nost; — yě mokrō.

yě tam oshklivyě; — yě deshťivō; — mnohō deshťe!

krápě; — pop'erkhává; — pershee; — liyě sě; — tō budě blät!

It rains in torrents.—It has ceased to rain already.

That was a heavy rain-storm,—a cloudburst; — it rained in torrents. — It caused a flood.

It is calm,— no wind,— not a leaf is stirring. — It is sultry; the air is heavy.

The wind rises; — it is windy; — it blows hard; — there is a strong wind.

A storm is brewing; — there will be a hurricane; — a cyclone is coming.

A thunderstorm is coming. — It lightens. — Now there was a flash of lightning. — What flashes of lightning!

Do you hear the thunder? — Yes, it thunders; the thunder rolls from afar; — a thunderstorm is coming.

The thunder roars; — the lightning has struck; — it has struck somewhere! — the lightning set fire.

This is a terrible storm,

Prší jen se lije. — **Už přestalo pršeti.**

To byl příval, — **průtrž mračen;** — **pršelo jen se lilo.** — **Byla z toho povodeň.**

Je ticho, — **bez větru,** — **ani se list nehýbe.** — **Je dusno;** **vzduch je těžký.**

Dělá se vítr; — **je větrno;** — **fouká hodně;** — **je silný vítr.**

Bude z toho bouře; — **bude vichřice;** — **cyklon se blíží.**

Tahne bouřka. — **Blýská se.** — **Ted' se zblesklo.** — **To je blýskání!**

Slyšíte hřímati? — **Ano,** **hřímá — hrom hučí z daleka;** — **bouřka se blíží.**

Hrom burácí; — **hrom uhodil;** — **někde uhodilo!** — **blesk zapálil.**

To je hrozná bouře, —

pershée yen sě liyě. — ūsh prshěstălō per-shět.

tō bill prsheeaval,— prootersh mrăchĕn;— per-shellō yen sě lillō. — bûdĕ stôhōr p̄ovodenī.

yē tikhō,— běz vyetrū,— āñi sě list něheebě. — yē düssnō; vzdûkh yē tethkee.

dělá sě veeter;— yě vyeternō;— foúká hodnē; — yě silnee veeter.

bûdĕ stôhōr boúrshě; — bûdĕ vikh-rshitsě; — tsiklon sě bleežee.

tâhně boúrsh-kă. — bleeská sě.—ted' sě zâblesklō.—tō yě bleeskâñi!

slisheetě hrsheemât? — ānō, hrsheemá;—hrom húchee zdâlekă;—boúrshkă sě bleežee.

hrom bürátsee; — hrom ūhod'il; — ūnegdě ūhod'ilō!—blesk zápálil.

tō yě hrózná boúrshě,—

— an awful thunder-storm.—The crashing of thunder is incessant. — Flash after flash, one thunder-clap after the other. That was a thunder-clap —a thunderbolt from a clear sky.
It hails. — This is a big hailstorm.
It will destroy the crops —the hail will destroy everything. — The hail-storm destroyed the crops;—hailstones of an enormous size were falling.

It is foggy;— this morning there was a thick fog.
Dew is falling; — there is a heavy dew.
There is a hoary frost, —a gray frost.
It is cold; — it is chilly; — it is frosty.
I feel cold;—I am freezing; — a cold wind is blowing.
I want to warm myself. — Are you cold? Warm yourself. — It is warm here, — almost too warm.

strašné hromobití.—
Hrom bije neustále.
— **Blesk za bleskem,**
rána za ranou.

To byla hromová rána; — uhodilo z čista jasna.

Padají kroupy. — **To je silné krupobití.**
Potluče; — **kroupy všecko zničí.** — **Potlouklo;** — padaly **kroupy ohromné velikosti.**

Jest mlhavo;—ráno byla hustá mlha.

Padá rosa; — **je silná rosa.**

Je jinovatka, — **šedý mráz.**

Je zima; — **je sice ravo;** — **je mrazivo.**

Je mi zima; — **mrazí mě;** — **fouká studený vítr.**

Chej se ohřátí. — **Je vám zima?** — **Ohřejte se.** — **Zde je teplo,** — **až moc teplo.**

strášné hromobití.—
—hrom bije něustále.
— **blesk zá bleskem,**
ráně zá ranou.

tě billá hromová rána; — **—uhodil schistá yasná.**

pădăyee kroypy. — **tě yě silné krupobití.**
potluché;—kroypy fshet-sko znichee. — **potlo-klö;** — **pădăly kroypy ohromné velikosti.**

yest melhavō;—ránō bil-lă hăsstá melhă.

pădă rossă; — **yě silná rossă.**

yě yinovátkă, — **shădee mráz.**

yě zimă; — **yě sikhravō;** — **yě mrăzivō.**

yě mi zima; — **mrăzee myě;** — **foüká stûdnee veeter.**

khtsi sě ohrshát. — **yě vám zimă?** **ohrshytě sě.** — **zdě yě teplō;** — **ăsh mots teplō.**

It is going to snow; — it snows; — it is snowing.

What a snow-storm! — a great snow-storm.

A great deal of snow fell; — there are snow-drifts.

How many degrees is it? — It is twenty below zero; — a severe cold.

The ice is thick; we can skate.

It will grow warmer; — it is growing warmer; — the wind is shifting; — it blows from the South.

The ice breaks; — the snow thaws and the ice melts; — there is a big thaw.

In the spring the weather is mild; — in the summer it is usually hot; — in the fall it is cool; — in the winter it is cold and it freezes.

Wisconsin has a hard winter; — Louisiana has a mild winter. — In Texas the winter is short and the summer long.

Bude padati sníh; — **padá sníh;** — **sněží.**

To je vánice! — **velká metelice.**

Napadlo mnoho sněhu; — **jsou závěje.**

Kolik je stupňů? — **Je dvacet pod nulou;** — **krutá zima.**

Led je silný; můžeme se **klouzati.**

Ono se oteplí; — **otepluje se;** — **vítr se obrací;** — **vane od jihu.**

Led puká; — **sníh taje** a led se **rozponstí;** — **je hodná obleva.**

Z jara je mírné počasí; — **v letě bývá horko;** — **na podzim je chladno;** — **v zimě je zima a mrzne.**

Wisconsin má tuhou zimu; — **Louisiana má mírnou zimu.** — **V Texasu je krátká zima a dlouhé leto.**

būdě pădăt sñeeh; — pădá sñeeh; — sñežee.

tō yě vánitsě! — velká metellitsě.

năpădlo mnohō sñehū; — soū závyěy.

kolik yě stúpňoo? — yě dwătset pod nulloū; — krútá zimă.

led yě silnee; moožemě sě klouzat.

onō sě oteplee; — oteplůyě sě; — veeter sě obrátsee; — váně od yeehū.

led püká; — sñeeh tăyě ā led sě rospoňshťee; yě hődná oblěvă.

zyără yě meerné pochăsee; — vleče beevá horkō; — nă podzim yě khlădnō; — vzimyě yě zimă ā merzně.

wisconsin má tăhoū zi mū; — louisiana má meernoū zimū. — ftxasū yě krátká zimă ā dloûhé leto.

The summer season is warm, — the winter season is cold.

In the winter days are short and nights are long.

The day shortens; — the day lengthens.

The night shortens.

Letní počasí je teplé,
— zimní počasí je studené.

V zimě jsou krátké dny a dlouhé noci.

Den se kráti; — dne přibývá.

Noc se kráti; (noci ubývá).

letní pochásee yě teplé,
— *zimní pochásee yě studené.*

vzimyč soň krátké dñi
a *dlouhé notsi.*

den sě kráťee; — *dně prshibeerá.*
nots sě kráťee; (*notsi ubeevá*).

VOCABULARY.

Počasí , n. <i>pochásee</i>	{ the weather
povětrnost , f. <i>povyeternost</i>	
počasí , n.	{ the season;
doba , f. <i>dobā</i>	
nebe , n. <i>něbě</i> , the heaven	
obloha , f. <i>oblōhă</i> , the sky	
stín , m. <i>sťeen</i> , the shade, the shadow	
chládek , m. <i>khládek</i> , the shady place	
prach , m. <i>prákħ</i> , the dust	
blato , n. <i>blatō</i> , the mud	
list , m. <i>list</i> , the leaf	
velikost , f. <i>velikost</i> , the greatness	
kéž by , I would that...; would to heaven that...; I wish it would...;	

východ , m. <i>veekhōd</i> , the east	
západ , m. <i>zápăd</i> , the west	
jih , m. <i>yeh</i>	{ the south
poledne , n. <i>polednē</i>	
sever , <i>sěcer</i>	{ the north
půlnoc , <i>poolnōts</i>	
jiho-východ , m. the south-east	
severovýchod , m. the north-east	
jihozápad , m. the south-west	
severozápad , m. the north-west	
východní , <i>veekhodníe</i> , eastern	
západní , <i>zápădñíe</i> , western	
jižní , <i>yeežñíe</i>	{ southern
polední , <i>poledñíe</i>	
severní , <i>severñíe</i> ,	
půlniční , <i>poolnochñíe</i>	{ northern

Vítr , m. <i>veeter</i> , the wind	
vichřice , f. <i>vikh-rshitsę</i> , the gale,	
the hurricane;	
foukati , <i>foükät</i>	{ to blow
vanouti , <i>vănoüt</i>	

bouře , f. <i>boürshě</i> , the storm	
kouřka , f. <i>boürshkă</i> , the thunder-	
storm;	
hřímati , <i>hrsheelmät</i> , to thunder	
hřímání , n. <i>hrsheelmáñee</i> , the thun-	
dering	

hrom, m. *hröm*, the thunder

hromová rána, a peal or crash of thunder;

hromobití, n. *hrömobit'ee*, peals of thunder;

buráceť, *bürátset*, to roar, to crash

blýskati se, *bleeskăt sě*, to lighten

Dešť, m. *deshť*, the rain

liják, m. *liyák* } the rainstorm,

přívál, m. *prsheevel* } the heavy shower;

průtrž mračen, *protoersh mrächēn*, the cloud-burst;

povodeň, f. *pövodeñ*, the flood

mrak, m. *mräk* } the cloud

mračno, n. *mrächnō* }

mračiti se, *mrächit sě*, to grow cloudy;

krápati, *krápăt* } to sprin-

popröhávati, *pöperkhávăt* } kle;

pršeti, *pershët*, to rain

lítí se, *leet sě* (colloq. *leyt sě*), to pour

přestati, *prshëstăt*, to stop.

Kroupy, pl. *kroüpy*, the hail

krupobití, n. *krüpobi'ee*, the hail-storm;

Vybíratí se, *vybeerăt sě*, to clear up

měnití se, *myëñit sě*, to change

páliti, *pálit*, to burn

přibývatí, *prshibeevăt*, to increase, to lengthen;

blýskání, n. *bleeskáñee*, the lightning

blesk, the flash or stroke of lightning; the thunderbolt;

zablesklo se, *zäblesklö sě*, there was a flash of lightning;

uhoditi, *ühod'it*, to strike

zapáliti, *zäpálit*, to set fire.

potlouci, *potloütsi*, to knock down, to destroy;

zničiti, *zñichit*, to annihilate

mlha, f. *melhă*, the fog

mlhavo, *melhăvă*, foggy

rosa, f. *rossă*, the dew

jinovatka, f. *ye-novätkă*, hoary frost

sníh, m. *sñeh*, the snow

sněhu, *sñehu*, of the snow;

sněžiti, *sñežit*, to snow

metelice, f. *metélitsë* } the snow-storm,

vánice, f. *vánitsë* } the blizzard;

závěje, pl. f. *závyéyě*, snow-drifts

led, m. *led*, the ice

náledí, n. *náled'ee*, glazed frost

mráz, m. *mráz*, the frost

mrznouti, *merznoüt*, to freeze

táti, *táti*, to thaw

tání, n. *táñee* }

obleva, *oblëvă* } a thaw

ubývati, *übëevăt*, to decrease, to shorten;

potiti se, *poftit sě*, to sweat.

Černý, á, é *chernee*, black

husty, á, é *hässtee*, thick, dense;

škaredý, á, é *shkärëdee*, nasty, ugly;
 mírný, á, é *meernee*, mild
 ohromný, á, é *øhromnee*, enormous,
 terrible;
 strach, m. *sträkh*, fear
 strašný, á, é *strašhnee*, fearful
 hrůza, f. *hrooză*, horror, terror;
 hrozný, á, é *hröznee*, horrible;
 shocking.

Blativo (adv.)*, *bläfivõ*, muddy
 deštivo, *deshťivõ*, rainy
 mokro, *mokrõ*, wet
 vlhko, *vélhkõ*, damp
 sucho, *súkhõ*, dry
 teplo, *tepłõ*, warm
 horko, *horkõ*, hot

parno, *parnõ*, very hot
 dusno, *děssnõ*, close, stifling;
 zima, *zimă* } cold
 studeno, *stüděnõ* }
 chladno, *khlädnõ*, cool
 sichtravo, *sikhrävõ*, chilly
 mrazivo, *mrázivõ*, frosty, freezing
 cold.
 —

Teplovér, m. *teplömyér*, the thermometer
 stupeň, m. *stüpeñ*, a degree
 nula, f. *nülä*, zero
 nad nulou, *näd nüloü*, above zero
 pod nulou, below zero;
 stoupati, *stoüpät*, to rise;
 klesati, *klessät*, to go down.

Health and sickness.

ZDRAVÍ a NEMOC.

I hope you are well.
 Only middling;— I am
 so so.
 You do not look so well
 as (you did) lately.
 Do you think so? —
 Well, you are right;
 —I do not look well.

Doufám že jste zdráv. | *doúfám že stě zdráf.*
 Jen tak prostředně; — | *yen ták prostrshédñe;* —
 jen tak tak. | *yen ták ták.*
 Nevypadáte tak dobré | *něvypädátě ták dobrshě*
 jako nedávno. | *yákõ nědávno.*
 Myslíte? — Ba máte | *misleetě?* — *bä mätë*
 pravdu;—nevypadám | *prävdü;* — *něvypädám*
 dobrě. | *döbrshě.*

*) The adjectives are : blativý (á, é), deštivý, mokrý, etc.

Je tam blativo, it is muddy out of doors; — blativý chodník (m.), a muddy sidewalk; blativá cesta (f.), a muddy road; blativé pole (n.), a muddy field.

Je deštivo, it is rainy; — deštivý den, a rainy day.

I think I look bad (badly): — I look worse.

O no! you do not look badly.

Don't I?—I guess I do!
Listen to me (i.e. let me tell you): you look better than you did the other day.

O, be still! — you flatter me.

You look bad (badly);— I do not like your looks.

What is the matter with you?—is anything the matter with you?

Do you not feel well?— what is the matter?— what ails you?

Nothing ails me;—nothing is the matter with me.

Why do you look so bad (badly)? — That's nothing!

You deny it (i. e. conceal it).—Don't deny it!

I deny nothing; — why should I deny?

If anything is the matter with you, tell me!

Myslím že vypadám špatně; — **vypadám hůř.**

O ne! nevypadáte zle.

Že ne? — Myslím že ano!
Dejte si říci: vypadáte lépe než onehdy.

I dejte pokoj! — vy mi pochlebujete!

Vyhližíte špatně; — **ne-libíte se mi.**

Co je vám? — chybí vám něco?

Není vám dobré? — co vám chybí? — co vás bolí?

Nic mi není; — nic mi nechybí.

Proč vypadáte tak špatně? — To nic není!

Vy zapíráte. — Nezapírejte!

Nic nezapíram; — proč bych zapíral?

Je-li vám něco, řekněte!

misleem že vypădám shpătñe; — vypădám hoorsh.

O ně! něvypădátě zlě.

že ně? — misleem že ānō!
deytě si rsheetsi : vypădátě lépě nesh ānēhdy.

E deytě pōkoy! — vy me pōkhlebūyetě.

vyhleežetě shpătñe; — nēleebeetě sě me.

tsř yč vám? — khibee vám ñetsř?

neyñi vám dōbrshě? — tsř vám khibee? — tsř váss bolee?

ñits me neyñi; — ñits me nēkhibee.

proch vypădátě tāk shpătñe? — tř ñits neyñi!

vy zăpeerátě. — nězăpeerreytě.

ñits nězăpeerám; — proch bikh zăpeeräł?

yělli vám ñetsř, rshěk-ñetě!

Tell me what is the matter with you? — does anything ail you? — tell me if anything ails you.

If anything were the matter with me, I should say so.

There is something the matter with you!

You don't feel well; — I see it by your looks!

You are right; I am not well.

What is the matter with you? — I do not know what ails me; — I do not feel quite well.

I am not so well as usual. — A little time ago I felt better.

To-day I feel bad (badly); — I was taken sick. I feel badly.

Are you sick?

Yes, I am sick; I do not feel well; — I feel bad (badly).

I hear that Edward is sick.

He has been taken sick; — he has fallen sick; — he is very sick; — he

Povězte co je vám? —
bolí vás něco? — povězte chybí-li vám něco.

Kdyby mi něco bylo,
řekl bych to.

Vám něco je! — Vám něco chybí!

Vám není dobré; — vídím to na vás!

Máte pravdu; není mi dobré.

Co je vám? — Nevím co mi je; — necítím se docela dobré.

Nejsem tak zdráv jak obyčejně. — Ještě nedávno bylo mi líp.

Dnes je mi špatně; — přišlo mi nanic.

Je mi nanic. — Je mi zle.

Jste nemocen?

Ano, jsem nemocen; — není mi dobré; — je mi zle.

Slyším, že Edward je nemocen.

Roznemohl se; — upadl do nemoci; — je silně nemocen; — je

přovyžtě tsō yě vám? — bolee váss ñetsō? — přvyžtě khibeeli vám ñetsō?

gdyby me ñetsō billō, rshēkel bikh tō.

vám ñetsō yě! — vám ñetsō khibee!

vám neyñi dobrshč; — vi'deem tō nā váss! mátě pravdū; neyñi me dobrshč.

tsō yě vám? — něveem tsō me yě; — nětseet'eeem sě dotsellā dobrshč.

neysem tāk zdráf yāk obicheyñe. — Yesh'e nědávnō billō me leep. dness yě me shpätñe; — prshishlo me nāñits. yě me nāñits. — yě me zlē.

stě němotsěn? ānō, sem němotsěn; — neyñi me dobrshč; — yě me zlē.

slisheem že Edward yě němotsěn. roznemōhel sě; — ūpá-del dō němotsi; — yě silñe němotsěn; — yě

has been sick a long time.

What is the matter with him?— what happened to him?

He caught a cold;— he has a bad cold.

Anthony is also sickly: — but to-day he already feels better.

I was long in poor health;— I was ailing seriously.

What was the matter with you?— Indeed I do not know what ailed me.

I had no appetite, — I had no sleep,— I had a feeling of weariness. — But it all passed away.

Take care of yourself; — be careful of your health!

Health is above everything; it is the greatest treasure.

An unhealthy man is unhappy.

What is the matter with you? are you sick? — you are not sick, are you?

Only a little; it is not

dlouho nemocen.

Co mu je? — co se mu stalo?

Nastudil se; — má silné nastuzení.

Anton je také churavý; — ale dnes už je mu lépe.

Já dlouho churavěl; — povážlivě jsem churavěl.

Co vám bylo? — Ani nevím co mi bylo.

Neměl jsem chuť k jídlu, — neměl jsem spaní, — cítil jsem unavenost. — Ale minulo to.

Dejte na sebe pozor; — buděte opatrný na zdraví!

Zdraví je nadě všecko; je to největší poklad.

Člověk nezdravý je něštastný.

Co je vám? stůněte? — snad nestůněte?

Jen tak trochu; není

dlouhō němotsčn.

tsō mū yě? — tsō sě mū stǎlō?

năstădil sě; — má silné năstuzění.

ănton yě tăke khărăvee; — ălē dness ūsh yě mū lépě.

yá dlouhō khărăvyell; povážlivyě sem khărăvyell.

tsō vám billō? — ăni něveem tsō me billō.

nemyell sem khút k-yeedlū, — nemyell sem spăni, — tseetil sem ūnăvĕnost. — ălē minulō tō.

deytě nă sěbě pőzor; — bûdtě ăpăternee nă zdrăvee.

zdrăvee yě nădě fshëtskō; yě tō nevyvětshée pôkľad.

chlovýek nězdrăvee yě neshvassnee.

tsō yě vám? stooñetě? — snăd něstooñetě?

yen ták trókhū; neyñi

bad. — I have a pain in the bowels.

That will pass away; — it will stop of itself. — I hope so.

Do you have it often? — Quite often; — it comes upon me from time to time.

What do you do against it? — Nothing; I lie down and remain quiet.

That is the best medicine. — I think so. — That helps.

It always helps me; — nothing else helps me.

At least it gives relief. — Yes, I feel instant relief.

It relieves instantly; — it is good for relief.

to zlé. — Mám bolestní.

To zase přejde; — to přestane samo. — Doufám.

Míváte to často? — Dost často; — přichází to na mě občas.

Co děláte proti tomu? — Nic; lehnu si a jsem tiše.

To je nejlepší lék. — Já myslím. — To pomahá.

To mi vždycky pomůže; — nie jiného mi nepomahá.

Aspoň to ulehčí. — Ano, hned se mi ulehčí.

Hned se uleví; — je to dobré pro úlevu, (pro ulehčení).

tō zlé.—mám bolění.

tō záss prshěydě; — tō prshěstně sámō. — dořfám.

meevátě tō chásstō? — dost chásstō;—prshikházee tō ná myě ob chásst.

tsō d'elátě proti tōmū? — nits; lehně si ā sem tishě.

tō yě neylepshee lék. — yá misleem. -- tō pomahá.

tō mi vžditsky (ditske) pomoože;—nits yinéhō me něpomahá. asspoň tō ūlēh-chee. — ānō, hned sě me ūlēh-chee.

hned sě ūlēvē; — yě tō dōbré pro oolēvū (pro ūlēh-cheñi).

VOCABULARY.

Nastuditi se, *năstūd'it sč*, to catch a cold;

nastuzení, n. *năstuzění*, a cold;

churavěti, *khărăvyět*, to sicken, to be sickly;

churavý á, é *khărăvée*, sickly, indisposed;

churavost, f. *khărăvost*, sickliness, indisposition;

pomahati, *pomahāt*, to help;

pomahá, *pomahá* } it helps

pomůže, *pomožč* } it does not help;

nepomahá } it does not help;

pochlebovati, *pokhlěbovāt*, to flatter

zapíratí, *zăpeerāt*, to deny

cítiti, *tseeťt*, to feel

cítím, *tseeťem*, I feel

mívati (reit. form of **míti**, to have; see page 168;) *meeváťi*, to use to have;

přicházeti, *prshikházet*, to use to come;

přestati, *prshěstät*, to stop;

ulehčiti, *úleh-chít* } to relieve

uleviti, *úlěvit*

ulehčení, n. *úleh-cheñi* } relief

úleva, f. *oolěvă*

Chut', f. *khút'*, the taste, the appetite;*)

chut' k jídlu, *khút' k-yeedlú*, appetite for food;

spaní, n. *spăñee*, the sleep;

lék, m. *lék*, } the medicine
medicina, f. *meditsină*

poklad, m. *poklăd*, the treasure;

pokoj, m. *pókoy*, peace, rest;

dejte pokoj! *deytě pőkoy!* give me a rest! keep still!

ob čas, *ob chäss*, from time to time;

necítím, *nětseeťeem*, I do not feel;

boleti, *bölet*, to ache, to ail;

olení, n. *bolěñi*, pain (especially in the bowels, belly-ache);

je mi nanie, *yě me năñits*, I feel sick

něco mi chybí, *nëtsõ me khibee*, something ails me; there is something the matter with me.

zdravý, á, é *zdrävee*, healthy, well, sound;

nezdravý, á, é *nëzdrävee*, unhealthy, unwell, unsound;

opatrny, á, é *öpäternee*, careful

obyčejný, á, é *öbicheynee*, usual, common;

obyčejně, öbicheyñe, usually, commonly;

povážlivě, pővážlivyé, seriously

prostředně, prostrshěd ñe, middling

ticho, n. tikhõ, silence, quiet, calm;

tiše, tishë, quietly, calmly.

The human being.

LIDSKÝ TVOR.

Tělo, n. *telö*, the body;

tělesný, á, é *tělessnee*, bodily;

úd, m. *ood*, the member, the limb;

kost, f. the bone;

kostra, f. *kostră*, the skeleton;

kostnatý, á, é *kostnätee*, bony;

morek, m.

špik, m. *shpik*, } the marrow;

*) **Chut'** means also "a desire or inclination": **mám chut' jíti tam**, I have a mind to go there; — **mám chut' vyhnati ho**, I have a mind to chase him (or: to turn him out); — **mám chut' říci mu to**, I have a mind to tell him so; — **mám chut' do práce**, I have a desire to work, or a taste for work; I feel like working; — **pracuju s chutí**, I work with a will; etc.

kůže, f. *koožě*, } the skin
pletť, f. *plět'*, }
pokožka, f. *pokožkă*, the cuticle
blána, f. *blánă*, the membrane
maso, n. *mässö*, the flesh
masitý, á, é *massitee*, fleshy
tlustý, á, é *tlüsteetee*, fat
hubený, á, é *hübēnee*, lean, thin;
sval, m. *sväl*, the muscle
svalnatý, á, é *sválnätee*, muscular
šlachy, pl. *shlăkhÿ*, the sinews
žláza, f. *žláză*, the gland
tuk, m. *tük*, } the fat
sádlo, m. *súdlö*, }
nerv, m. *nerf*, } the nerve
číva, f. *chivă*, }
nervový, á, é *nervövee*, } nervous
čívni, *chirñee*, }
ceva, f. *tsěvă*, the vessel
žila, *žeelă*, the vein

Hlava, f. *hlavă*, the head
lebka, f. *lebkă*, the skull
temeno, n. *temenö*, the crown or
 top of the head;
týlo, n. *teelö*, the back of the head;
kůže na hlavě, *koožé nă hlăvyě* } the
skalp, m. *skdlp* } scalp
mozek, m. *mőzek*, the brain
spánek, m. *spánek*, the temple
spánky, pl. *spánky* } the temples
skráné, pl. *skráñe*

Oko, n. *øko*, the eye
oči, pl. *øchi*, the eyes
oční důlek, *ochñee doolek*, the socket

hlavní žila, *hlăvñee ž.* } the
srdeční žila, *serdechñee ž.* } artery
tepna, f. *těpnă*, the pulse
žilka, f. *žilkă*, a small vein;
žilnatý, á, é *žilnätee*, sinewy
krev, f. *krëf*, the blood
krevnatý, á, é *krëvnätee*, full blooded
chudokrevný, á, é *khüdokrëvnee*,
 bloodless, anaemic
krvavý, á, é *kërvävee*, bloody
vlas, *vlăss* } the hair on the head
vlasy, pl. }
chlup, *chlüp* } the hair on the body
chlupy, pl. }
vlasatý, á, é *vläsätee* } hairy
chlupatý, á, é *chlăpätee* } hairy
vnitřnosti, *vñitrsh-nostti*, viscera;
uvnitř, *uvñitrsh* } inside, inwardly;
vně, *vñe* }
zevnitř, zevñitrsh } outside, outwardly.
zevně, *zevñe*

čelo, n. *chellö*, the forehead
tvář, f. *tvársh* } the cheek
lice, n. *leetsë* }
tvář, f. *tvársh* } the face
obličej, m. *oblichey* }
lícení kost, *leetsñee kost*, the cheek-
 bone
čelist, f. *chellist*, the jaw-bone
brada, f. *brădă*, the chin
laloch, m. *lălokh*, double chin
důlek, m. *doolek*, the dimple
vrásky, pl. m. *vrássky*, the wrinkles.

oční jablko, *ochñee yäbelkö*, the eye-
 ball
koutek, m. *koütek*, the corner

rohovka , f. <i>rohofkă</i> , the cornea	řasy , pl. <i>rshăssy</i> , the eyelashes
duhovka , f. <i>dăhofkă</i> , the iris	bryv , pl. <i>berovy</i> } the eyebrows
zřítelnice , f. <i>zrsheetelňitsë</i> , the pupil	obočí , n. <i>občhee</i> }
klapka , f. <i>klăpkă</i> , the eyelid	
Ucho , n. <i>úkhō</i> , the ear	konec ucha , <i>kōnets úkhă</i> , the tip of
uši , pl. <i>úshi</i> , the ears	the ear;
Nos , n. <i>nöss</i> , the nose	laloček , m. <i>lălōchek</i> , the lobe
špička nosu , <i>shpichkă nossū</i> , the tip	
of the nose.	chřípě , pl. <i>khrshee-pyě</i> }
 	nosové dírky , pl. <i>nosso-vé d'eerky</i> }
Ústa , pl. <i>oostă</i> , the mouth	the nostrils
pysk , m. <i>pisk</i> } the lip	
ret , m. <i>ret</i>	
Zub , m. zuby , pl. <i>zăb</i> , <i>zăby</i> , the	pysky , pl. }
tooth, the teeth	the lips
přední zuby , <i>prshed-née zăby</i> , the	
fore-teeth	rty , pl. }
zadní zuby , <i>zădñee zăby</i> , the back-	
teeth	
špičák , m. <i>shpicháky</i> , the canines	
Vousy , pl. <i>foúsy</i> , the beard	stolička , f. <i>stolichkă</i> , the molar
licousy , pl. <i>litsoúsy</i> , the whiskers	kořen zubu , <i>korshén zăbū</i> , the root
Hrdlo , n. <i>herdlō</i> , the throat	of the tooth;
krk , m. <i>kérk</i> , the neck	dáseñ , f. <i>dásseñ</i> , the gum
hrtán , m. <i>hertán</i> } the larynx	dásně , pl. <i>dássñe</i> , the gums
chrtán , m. <i>hrshtán</i> }	patro , n. <i>pătrō</i> , the roof of the mouth
hrdelnice , f. <i>herdell-ňitsë</i> , the jugu-	jazyk , m. <i>yăzyk</i> , the tongue.
lar vein;	
Trup , m. <i>trüp</i> , the trunk	kníry , pl. <i>kñeery</i> , the moustaches
hrud' , f. <i>hrüd'</i> , the chest	plnovous , m. <i>pelnofoüs</i> , the full beard
prsa , pl. <i>persă</i> , the breast	průdušnice , f. <i>proodúshnitsë</i> , the
žebro , n. <i>žebrō</i> , the rib	windpipe
 	mandle , pl. <i>măndlă</i> , the tonsils, the
	almonds;
	ohryzek , m. <i>ðhryzék</i> , Adam's apple.
klíční kost , f. <i>kleechñee kost</i> , the	
collar-bone	
prsni kost , f. <i>persñee kost</i> , the	
breast-bone	

záda , pl. <i>zádă</i> , the back	zlatá žila , f. <i>zlătă žeelă</i> , the spinal cord;
zadek , m. <i>zădek</i> , the back part, the backside;	plece , sing. & pl. <i>pletsă</i> , the shoulder
předek , m. <i>prshĕdek</i> , the fore-part, the front;	lopatka , f. <i>lopătkă</i> , the shoulder-blade
hřbet , m. <i>hrshbet</i> } the backbone,	obratel , m. <i>obrătel</i> , vertebra
páteř , f. <i>pátersh</i> } the spine;	obratle , pl. <i>obrătle</i> , vertebrae.
Život , m. <i>život</i> , the abdomen	řit , f. <i>rshiť</i> , the anus
břicho , n. <i>brshikhō</i> , the belly	pohlaví , n. <i>pohľavee</i> , the sex
pupek , m. <i>püpek</i> , the navel	pohlavní úd , m. <i>pohľavňee ood</i> , the sexual parts
bok , m. <i>bök</i> , the hip	múžský úd , m. <i>măskee ood</i> , the penis
slabina , f. <i>slăbină</i> , the side	zálupa , f. <i>zálüpă</i> , the fore-skin
kříž , <i>krshheež</i> , the small of the back;	varle , (pl. <i>varlata</i>), <i>varlă</i> , the testicle
zadnice , f. <i>zădnitsă</i> , the seat, the bottom;	rodidla , pl. <i>rodidlă</i> , the genitals.
půlky , pl. f. <i>poolky</i> ,	
zadní tváře , pl. f. <i>zădñee</i> } buttocks	
tvárshě	
Ruka , f. <i>rükă</i> , the hand	kloub , m. <i>kloüb</i> , the joint
ruce , pl. <i>rûtsă</i> , the hands; v rukou ,	dlaň , f. <i>dlaň</i> , the palm
vrăkoŭ , in the hands; na rukou ,	prst , m. <i>p'erst</i> , the finger
năr. , on the hands	palec , m. <i>pălets</i> , the thumb
rámě , n. <i>rámŷe</i> } the arm	malík , m. <i>măleek</i> , the little finger
paže , n. <i>păže</i> }	ukazovák , <i>ükăzovák</i> , the forefinger
dolní část paže , <i>dolñee chást păže</i> ,	prostřední prst , <i>prostrshedñee p'erst</i> ,
the fore-arm	the middle finger
horní část paže , <i>horñee chást p.</i> , the upper arm	článek prstu , m. <i>chlánek p'erstă</i> , the phalange
rameno , n. <i>rămeno</i> } the shoulder or	špička prstu , f. <i>shpichkă p'erstă</i> ,
paždí , n. <i>păžđee</i> } top of the arm;	the tip of the finger ;
podpaždí , n. <i>podpăžđi</i> , the armpit	nehet , m. <i>năhet</i> , the nail
loket , m. <i>lăket</i> , the elbow	nehy , pl. <i>năhty</i> , the nails
přehyb , m. <i>prshĕhib</i> , the wrist	kotník , m. <i>kotñeek</i> , the knuckle
pěst , f. <i>pyěst</i> , the fist	kloub , m. <i>kloüb</i> , the joint.

Noha, f. *nōhā*, the leg, the foot; **nohy**, pl. *nōhy*, the legs, the feet; **chodidlo**, n. *khođidlō*, the foot; **tlapa**, f. *tlāpā*, the sole of the foot; **stehno**, n. *stěhnō*, the thigh; **stehenní kost**, f. *stěhēñee kost*, the thigh-bone; **hnát**, m. *hnát*, the shin; **lýtko**, n. *leetkō*, the calf of the leg; **koleno**, n. *kolěnō*, the knee; **přehyb kolena**, m. *prshěhyb kolěnā*, the knee-joint.

Srdee, n. *s ērdsě*, the heart; **osrdí**, n. *oss ērd'ee*, the pericardium; **komora**, f. *kōmorā*, the ventricle; **plíce**, pl. *pleetsě*, the lungs; **játra**, pl. *yátra*, the liver; **slezina**, f. *slezinā*, the spleen; **ledvina**, f. *ledvinā*, the kidney; **měchýř**, m. *myěkheersh*, the bladder; **žluč**, f. *žlūch*, the gall, the bile;

pata, f. *pătă*, the heel; **prsty u nohy**, pl. *p ěrsty ū nōhy*, the toes; **palec u nohy**, m. *p ělets ū nōhy*, the big toe; **malík u nohy**, m. *m ěleek ū nōhy*, the little toe; **kotník**, m. *kotnēek*, the ankle; **plosko-nohý**, *ploskō-nōhee*, flat-footed; **kolo-nohý**, *kolō-nōhee*, bow-legged.

žluční měchýř, m. *žlūchñee m.*, the gall-bladder; **žaludek**, m. *žálūdek*, the stomach; **střeva**, n. *strshěvō*, the intestine, the gut; **střeva**, pl. *strshěvā*, the bowels; **tenká střeva**, the lesser intestines; **tlustá střeva**, *tlūstā s.* the larger intestines; **konečník**, m. *konechñeeek*, the rectum.

Ústrojí, n. *oostroyee*, organism, constitution; **dýchatí**, *deekhāt*, to breathe; **dýchání**, n. *deekháñi*, breathing, respiration; **dýchací ústrojí**, *deekhātsee oostroyee*, respiratory organs; **dech**, m. *d ěkh*, the breath; **lehký dech**, *l ěhkee d ěkh*, easy breathing; **těžký dech**, *t ěshkee d ěkh*, heavy breathing; **dechnutí**, n. *d ěkhnūt'ee*, one breath

vydechnouti, *vyděkhnoūt*, to draw breath; **vydechnouti ze sebe**, v. *z ě s ěbě*, to exhale, to force out the breath; **vdechnouti do sebe**, *vděkhnoūt d ě s ěbě*, to inhale; **oddechnouti si**, *oděkhnoūt si*, to breathe easily, to feel relief; **tráviti**, *trávit* } to digest, to con-ztráviti, *strávit* } sume; **zažívatí**, *zăžeevāt*, to digest

trávení, n. *tráveñi* } digestion
zažívání, n. *zřeževání* }
zažívací ústrojí, *zřeževatsee oostro-*
yee, digestive apparatus;
moč, m. *moch*, the urine
močení, n. *mochění*, urination
močiti, *mochit*, to urinate
stolice, f. *stolitsé*, stool, evacuation;
mítí stolici, *meet stolitsi*, to go to
 stool; to have open bowels;
výkal, *veekál*, the excrement, the
 discharge;
lejno, n. *leynō* } the dung
trus, m. *trüss* } trus
oběh krve, m. *obyeh kervě*, circulation
 of the blood;
krvácti, *kervátset*, to bleed
krvácení, n. *kervátseni*, the bleeding
měsíčné, n. *myšezechné*, the menstruation
plod, m. *plöd*, the fruit
ploditi, *plödit*, to bear (fruit etc.);
 to beget;

Duch, m. *dúkh*, the spirit; the mind
 or intellect;
duše, f. *dúshč*, the soul
duchovní, *dúkhovnēe* } spiritual,
duševní, *dúshěvnēe* } intellectual;
mysl, f. *missl*, the mind
důmysl, m. *doomissl* } the intellect
schop, m. *skhōp* }
rozum, m. *rozūm*, the reason, the
 understanding;
zdravý rozum, *zdrávee rozūm*, com-
 mon sense;
soudnost, f. *soúdnost*, the judgment

plození, n. *plözeni*, the bearing, the
 begetting;
porod, m. the childbirth
poroditi, *porödit*, to be delivered;
pracovati ku porodu, *prätssovät küp-*
orödö, to be in labor;
šestinedélí, n. *shëstined'ele*, lying-in
šestinedělka, f. *shëstined'elkă*, a
 woman in childbed;
je těhotná, *yë tchötná*, she is with
 child;
čeká se do kouta, *cheká së dö koütä*,
 she expects to be confined;
je v koutě, *yë fkoütë* } she is confined,
slehla, *slëhlä* } (in childbed);
po koutě, *pö koütë*, after childbirth,
 after confinement;
obcování, n. *obtsöváñi*, the intercourse
obcovati, *obtsövät*, to have intercourse;
pohlavní obcování, *pohlätivnēe o.*
tělesné obcování, *tëlessnē o.*
 sexual intercourse.

smysl, *smissl*, the sense
zrak, m. *zräk*, the sight
sluch, m. *slükh*, the hearing
chut', f. *khüf*, the taste
čich, *eit*, m. *chikh*, *tsit*, the smell,
 the feeling;
hmát, m. *hmät*, the touch
pamět, f. *pämyët*, the memory
smyslný, á, é *smisslnée*, sensual
smyslnost, f. *smisslnost*, sensuality
nesmysl, m. *nësmissl*, nonsense
nesmyslný, á, é *nësmisslnée*, sense-
 less, nonsensical.

rican race a black skin.

Youth has a smooth face,—old age makes wrinkles.

A high forehead, a keen eye, long moustaches, — such was the young man.

The eyes are the organ of sight, the ears (are the organ of) hearing;—the nose is the organ of smell.

Young girls usually have coral lips.

Babies have chubby cheeks.

You still have a full set of teeth (literally: "all the teeth").

I have all (my) front teeth, but a few molars are wanting;—I had them pulled.

Why did yon have them pulled? — Because they ached me; they were decayed.

A decayed tooth always aches; — it is best to pull it out.

The pulling of teeth is a painful operation,

africké černou.

Mládí má hladké líce,
— stáří dělá vrásky.

Vysoké čelo, bystré oko,
dlouhé kníry, — takový byl mladík.

Oči jsou orgán zraku,
uši sluchu; — nos je nástroj cichu.

Mladé dívky mívají korállové rty.

Děcka mají boubelaté tváře.

Vy ještě máte všechny zuby.

Mám všechny přední zuby, ale pár stoliček mi chybí; — dal jsem je vytrhnouti.

Proč jste je dal trhati? — Proto že mě bolely; byly vyžrané.

Vyžraný zub vždycky bolí; nejlíp ho vytrhnouti.

Trhání zubů je bolestná operace, — ob-

ăfritské chernoŭ.

mláđee má hlädké leetsě,
— stárshee d'elá vrásksky.

visōké chellō, bistré ōkō,
dloūhé kñeery, — tako-vee bill mläđeek.

ochi soū orgán zrăkū,
uši slăkhū; — noss yě nástroy chikhū.

mläđé d'eefty meeväyee korállové rti.

d'etskā mäyee boübelläté tvárshě.

vy yeshtě mätě fshëkh ny zuby.

mám fshëkhny prshëd-nee zuby; ďlě pár stolichek me khibee; — däl sem yě vyterhnoūt proch stě yě däl terhät? — proto že myě bolëly; billi vižräné.

vyžranee züb ditsky bolée; — neyleep hō vytrērhnoūt.

t'eháñeezvoo yě bolestná řperätsě, --obzlášť

— especially when the tooth has a big root. Children lose the milk-teeth; — they fall out of themselves. With the teeth we bite; hence they are of a very hard substance. The teeth are set (liter. "sit") in the jaw-bone. The windpipe carries the air into the lungs, where the blood is oxydized. The ribs inclose the thoracic cavity. — There are true ribs and false ribs. The spinal column is composed of links; which we call vertebrae. Burdens are most easily carried (i. e. "we carry") on shoulders. The hand is an exceedingly important member. — The hand has five fingers. The negroes usually have strong arms. Whoever walks a great deal, must have sound legs. The stubbing of the big toe causes pain.

zvlášť má-li zub velký kořen.
Děti ztrácí mléčné zuby; — vypadají samy.
Zuby kousáme; proto jsou z velmi tvrdé látky.
Zuby sedí v čelisti.
Průdušnice vede vzduch do plíc, kde krev se okysličí.
Žebra zavírají hrudní dutinu. — Jsou pravá žebra a falešná žebra.
Páteř skládá se ze článků, které nazýváme obratle.
Břemena nosíme nejsnáze na plecích.
Ruka jest úd nesmírně důležitý. — Ruka má pět prstů.
Negrové mívají silné paže.
Kdo chodí mnoho pěšky, musí míti zdřavé nohy.
Zakopnutí palce u nohy dělá bolest.

*má-li zuba velke kor-
shen.*
*děti strátsee mléchné
zuby; — vypădăyee
samy.*
*zuby koúsámě; protō
soú zvelli tverdě lát-
ky.*
zuby sēdēe fchelištěi.
*pro o dūshnī i tsě vědě
vzdūkh dō plits, gdě
kref sě okyslichee.*
*žebră zăveerăyee hrăd-
nīe dătīnă. — soú
prăvă žebră ā fălesh-
ná žebră.*
*pátersh skladá sě zě
chlánkoo, které nă-
zeevámě obrătlę.*
*brshěmenă noseemě ney-
snázě nă pletseekh.*
*rükă yest ood něsmeer-
ně doolězitee. — rükă
má pyět p erstoo.*
*něgrové meevăyee silně
pažě.*
*gdō khod'ee mnđhō
pyěshky, műsee meet
zdravé nōhy.*
*zákopnuťee páltsě ū nō-
hy dělā bōlest.*

The digestive apparatus is a vital organ. Food is digested in the stomach and in the bowels.

Zažívací ústrojí jest životní orgán.
Pokrm ztráví se v žaludku a ve střevách.

*zăžeevătsee oostroyee
yest životnēe orgán.
pokerm strávee sě v žu-
lǔdkǔ ā vě strshě-
vákh.*

VOCABULARY.

Dar, m. *děr*, the gift
tlukot, m. *tlükot*, the beating
kyslík, m. *kissleek*, oxygen
okysličiti, *okisslichit*, to oxygenate
dusík, m. *düsseek*, nitrogen
vzduch, m. *vzdúkh*, the air
pokrm, m. *pokerm*, the food
orgán, m. }
nástroj, m. *nástroy* } the organ
článek, m. *chlánek*, the link
neger, m. *neger*, the negro
mládí, n. *mládēe*, youth
mladík, m. *mládēek*, the young man
dívka, f. *d'eeafka*, the girl
látka, f. *látkǔ*, the material, the stuff;
žilka, f. *žilka*, a small vein;
pleť, f. the skin
přísloví, n. *prsheeslovee*, the proverb
plemeno, n. *płemieno* } the race
plémě, n. *plémye* }
břemeno, n. *brshěmeno*, the burden
dutý, á, é *dütee*, hollow
prudký, á, é *průdkee*, fast
prudce, adv. *průdsě*, fast, rapidly;
popudlivý, á, é *přopřudlivee*, excitable
normální, *normálñee*, normal
pravidelný, *pravidelnee*, regular
pravý, á, é *prävee*, true, right;
falešný, á, é *fälëshnee*, false

playv, á, é *plävee*, fair, blonde;
koralový, á, é *korálovee*, coral (adj.)
boubelatý, á, é *boübělătee*, chubby
bolestný, á, é *bolestnee*, painful
vyžraný, á, é *vyžrānee*, decayed
důležitý, á, é *doolěžitezee*, important
takový, á, é *täkovee*, such
nesmírně, *nësmeerñe*, exceedingly
pěšky, *pyëshky*, on foot
obsahovati, *obsähövät*, to contain
panovati, *pänovät*, to reign, to prevail;
shodovati se, *shodövät sě*, to agree
chyběti, *khibyët*, to be wanting;
trhati, *terhät*, to pull, to tear;
trhání, n. *terháñee*, the pulling
vytrhnout, *vyterhnoüt*, to pull out;
padati, *pädät*, to fall
vypadati, *vypädät* } to fall out;
vypadnouti, *vypädnouüt* }
kousati, *koüsät*, to bite
nazývati, *näzeevät*, to call (by a name)
skládati se (ze), *skládäät sě*, to be composed (of);
zavírati, *zăveerät*, to inclose (also "to shut");
zakopnouti, *zăkopnoüt*, to stub;
zakopnuti, n. *zăkopnüt'ee*, the stubbing.

Disease and cure.

NEMOC a LÉČENÍ.

Nemoc, *němots*, sickness, illness, disease;

lehká nemoc, *lěhká* *n.* light disease; **těžká nemoc**, *ťežká* *n.* acute or dangerous disease;

nemocen, *ena*, *cno němotsen* } sick, **nemocný**, *á*, *é*) *nemotsnee* } ill, dis-

těžce nemocen, *ťeshtsě* *n.* very sick, dangerously sick;

býti nemocen, *beet němotsen* } to be **stonati**, *stonat* } sick ;

roznemoci se, *rözněmōtsi sě* } to fall **rozstonati se**, *röstonat sě*, } sick ; to be taken sick;

choroba, *f. khřrobā*, ailment, affection;

chorobný, *á*, *é khřrobnee*, ailing, affected;

marod, (coloq.) *mǎrod*, ailing, sickly ;

maroditi, *mǎrođit*, to be ailing;

neduh, *m. nědūh* } ailment, affected ;

neduživost, *f. nědūživost*, } tions, infirmity, disorder ;

neduživý, *á*, *é nědūživee*, ailing, infirm ;

neduživec, *m. nědūživets*, } sickly or infirm

maroda, *m. mǎrodă* } person ;

mrzák, *m. merzák*, cripple

zmrzačiti, *zm̄erzăchit*, to cripple

zmrzačen, *a*, *o***) *zm̄erzăchēn* } crippled condition ; **zmrzačený**, *á*, *é zm̄erzăchēne* } pled

zmrzačenost, *f. zm̄erzăchēnost*, the crippled condition ;

rána, *f. ránă*, the wound

raniti, *rāñit* } to wound **poranitl**, *porāñit* }

raněný, *á*, *é rāñenee*, wounded

poranění, *n. porāñenēe* } the wound-úraz

m. oorăz } ing, a hurt or injury ;

ublížiti, *úbleežit* } to hurt,

uškoditi, *úshkođit* } to injure ;

uhoditi, *úhodit*, to strike, to hurt by striking ;

pohmožditi, *pōhmožđit*, to bruise ;

pohmoždění, *n. pōhmožđeňee*, the bruising, a bruise ;

uskřípnouti, *úskrsheepnoňt*, to jam, to squeeze ;

uskřípnutí, *n. úskrsheepnūtēe*, a contusion by squeezing ;

říznouti, *rsheeznoňt*, to cut

říznutí, *n. rsheeznuňtēe* } a cut ;

řez, *m. rshěz* }

píchnouti, *peekhnoňt* } to stab, to pierce, to prick ;

bohdnoti, *bodnoňt* } to pierce, to prick ;

kousnouti, *koüsnoňt*, to bite

kousnutí, *n. koüsnuňtēe*, a bite .

*) **Nemocný** is the definite, **nemocen** the indefinite adjective. See Note 2 on page 103.

) **Zmrzačen is the passive participle (see Lesson XXXVII), from which the adjective **zmrzačený** is derived.

Lekař, m. *lékarsh*, the physician
doktor, m. *doktōr*, the doctor
lékařství, n. *lékarsh-stwee*, the medical profession;
lékařský, *lékarshskee*, medical
porodní lékař, *pōrodñee lékarsh*, the accoucheur
porodní bába, *p. bábă* } the midwife
babička, *bábibchka* }
ranojíč, m. *rānhøyich*, the surgeon
zubní lékař, *zübñee lékarsh*, the dentist
vyléčiti, *vyléchit*,
vyhojiti, *vyhøyit* } to cure, to heal
uzdraviti, *üzdrävit*
vyléčení, *vyhojení*, *uzdravení*, the cure
uzdraviti se, *üzdrävit sě* } to get
pozdraviti se, *pozdrävit sě* } well,
vystonati se, *vystönat sě* } to recover;
umřiti, *ümrsheet*,
zemřiti, *zemrsheet* } to die
skonati, *skonat*

umíratí, *ümeerät*, to be dying;
vypustiti ducha, *vypüsťit dăkhă*, to breathe one's last;
smrt, f. *smert*, the death
náhlá smrt, *náhlá s.*, sudden death
prohlédnouti, *prohlédnout* } to examine,
proskoumati, *proskoūmat* } to probe;
vyšetřiti, *vyshëtrshit*
raditi se, *rădít sě*, to consult
předepsati, *prshëdëpsät*, to prescribe
dieta, *de-ată*
mírnost v jídle, *meernost v-yeedle* } the diet
scházeti, *skházet*
chřadnouti, *khrshădnoūt* } to be sinking;
sbíratí se, *sbeerät sě*, to be recovering;
hubnouti, *hübnoūt*, to lose flesh;
tloustnouti, *tloüstnoūt*, to gain flesh;
slábnouti, *slábnoūt*, to grow weak;
siliti, *seelit*, to gain strength;
slabost, f. *släbost*, weakness
síla, f. *seelă*, strength.

Bolest, f. *bolest* } the pain,
bolení, n. *bolëñi* } the ache;
bolení břicha, *b.brshikhă*, belly-ache
kolika, f. *kolikă*, the colic
mám bolení, I have a pain in the bowels or stomach;
bolení hlavy, *b. hlävy*, head-ache
 ,, *zubů*, *b. zübů*, tooth-ache
bolest v životě, *b. vživoře*, pain in the abdomen;
 ,, **v kříži**, *b. fkrshee-ži*, pain in the small of the back;

bolest v zádech, *b. vzádëkh*, pain in the back;
 ,, **v noze (v nohou)**, *b. vnözë (v-nöhoū)*, pain in the leg, or foot (in the legs, or feet);
 ,, **v ruce (v rukou)**, *b. vrütsë (v-rükoū)*, pain in the hand, or arm (in the hands, or arms);
bolest u srdece, *b. üserdsë*, pain in the heart-region;
 ,, **uvnitř**, *b. üvnitř*, pain inside

bolestný, á, é *bolestnee*, painful
 bolavý, á, é *bolávee*, sore
 bolák, m. the sore
 boule, f. *boułč*, a boil, a bump;
 vřed, m. *vrshěd*, ulcer
 krtice, pl. *kerťitsě*, scrofula
 rak, m. *răk*, cancer
 otok, m. *otök*, a swelling;
 oteklý, á, é *otéklee*, swelled, swollen
 oteci, *otetsi*, to swell
 horký, á, é *horkee*, hot
 horkost, f. { the heat, the feverishness
 rozpálenost, f. } ver, the feverishness

Zápal, m. *zápăł* { inflammation
zánět, m. *záñet* }
zapálený, á, é *zápálenee* { inflamed
zanícený, á, é *záñeetsčnee* }
zápal plic, *zápăł plits*, inflammation
 of the lungs;
zápal mozku, z. *mőzkű*, inflammation
 of the brain;
 „, **mozkové blány**, z. *mőzkővę*
 blány, meningitis;
zápal střev, z. *strshěf*, inflammation
 of the bowels;
zápal pobřišnice, z. *pobrshishňitsě*,
 peritonitis;
 „, **pohrudnice**, z. *pohrūdňitsě*,
 pleurisy;
souchotě, pl. *soňkhoſe*
úbytě, pl. *oobyťe* { the con-
 sumption;
tuberkule, pl. *tüberkülę*
ochroma, *ókhromá* { paralysis
ochrnutí, *ókhernütēe* }
mrvíce, f. *mertvitsě*, apoplexy
záškrť, m. *záshkert*, diphtheria

rozpálen, a, o *rospálěn*, feverish;
horečka, f. *horěchkă* { the ty-
horká nemoc, *horká němots* } phus
hlavnička, f. *hlavňichkă* { fever ;
zimnice, f. *zimnítsě*, the ague
žlutá zimnice, *žlútá z.* the yellow-
 fever;
mraziti, *mrázit*, to chill
mrazení, n. *mrázění*, a chill, a shiver
mrazí mě, *mrázee myě*, I feel a chill;
třásti se zimou, *trshást sě zimoū*, to
 shiver with cold.

krup, m. *krüp*, the croup
psotník, m. *psottñeek*, the fits
spála, m. *spálă* { the measles
šarlát, m. *shárlát* }
osutiny, pl. *ossăťiny*, the chicken-
 pox
neštovice, pl. *neshtövitsě*, the small-
 pox
očkovati, *óchkovăt*, to vaccinate
očkování, *óchkováñi*, vaccination
očkovaný, á, é *óchkovanee*, vacci-
 nated
výraz, m. *veerăz*, eruption
vyražený, á, é *vyraženee*, full of
 eruption;
kožní nemoc, f. *kožňee němots*, skin-
 disease;
lišej, m. *lishey*, the lichen
mol, m. the ringworm
svrab, m. the itch
svrběti, *sverbyět*, to itch
strup, m. *strüp*, the scab, the surf;
strupovitý, á, é *strupovitee*, scabby

hostec, m. *hostēts* } rheumatism
revma, n. *revmā* }
hosteňy, *hostechnee* } rheu-
revmatický, *revmātitskee* } matic
srdeční vada, f. *serděchñee vădă*,
 heart-desease;
vodnatelnost, f. *vădnătellnost*, drop-
 sy;
vodnatelný, á, é *vădnătellnee*, drop-
 sical
záduch, m. *zádăkh*, asthma
zádušlivý, á, é *zádăshlivee*, asthmatic
kašel, m. *kăshell*, the cough
modrý kašel, *modreek.*, the whoop-
 ing cough
kašlati, *kăshlăt*, to cough
vyhazovati, *vyhăzōvăt*, to throw up;
dáviti, *dávit* } to vomit
blíti, *bleet* }
dávení, n. *dáveñi* } the vomiting;
blítí, n. *blítee* }

Zlomiti, *zlomit* } to break
zlámati, *zlámăt* }
zlomený, á, é *zломенеe*, broken
zlámanina, f. *zlámăñină* } a broken
zlomenina, f. *zlõm.....* } bone, a
puklá kost, f. *púklá kost*, a cracked
 bone;
vymknouti, *vymknoût*, to dislocate;
vymknouti kloub, v. *kloûb*, to sprain
 a joint;
vymknutí, n. *vymknút'ee*, a disloca-
 tion, a sprain;
srovnati kost, *srõvnăt kost*, to set a
 bone;

křeče, pl. *krshěžhě*, cramps
mdloba, f. faintness, fainting fit;
mdlý, á, é *mdlée*, faint;
omdleti, *öndlët*, to faint, to swoon;
omdlévání, n. *öndlëváñi*, fainting
 fits, swooning.
nezáživnost, f. *nězázivnost*
špatné trávení, n. *shpătné* } indi-
 tráveñi } gestion
záživný, á, é *záživnee*, digestible
nezáživný, *nězázivnee*, indigestible
větry, pl. *vyětry* } wind, flătu-
nadouvání, n. *nădouváñi* } leuce;
nadýmání, n. *nădeemáñi* }
nadmutý, á, é *nădmătee*, flatulent
běhavka, f. *byěhăfka* } the
průjem, m. *prooyem* } diarrhea
zástava, f. *zástřvă* } stoppage in
těžká stolice, *teshká* } the bowels,
stolitsé, } constipation,
úplavice, f. *ooplăvitsě*, dysentery.

dáti do desek, dát dō dĕssek, to splint
obvázati ránu, *öbvázăt ránă*, to dress
 a wound;
obvazek, m. *öbvăzek*, a dressing, a
 bandage;
průtrž, m. *protoersh*, the rupture
průtržní pás, m. the truss
hrb, m. *herb*, a hump, a hunch;
hrbáč, *herbách*, a humpback;
hrbatý, á, é *herbătee*, humpbacked;
kulhati, *kălhăt*, to walk lamely;
kulhavý, á, é *kălhăvee* } lame
chromý, á, é *khromee* }
dopadati, *dăpădăt*, to halt,

It is said that Mr. Hanuš is sick.

Is he laid up?—Yes, he took to his bed.

Is he very sick? — I think it is serious.

Call a physician.—Send for a doctor.

We have sent for him. — The doctor has been here already.

When was Mr. Hanuš taken sick?—Yesterday morning; all at once he felt a chill, then he felt feverish.

What is the trouble? — What disease has he?

I think it is inflammation of the lungs.

That would be dangerous.—What does the physician say?

The doctor thinks that he has inflammation of the lungs.

Then I pity him.

How is Mr. Swoboda to-day? is he better?

Always the same thing; — no better, no worse; — there is no change.

Pan Hanuš je prý nemocen.

Leží? — Ano, ulehnil.

Je mu tuze zle? — Myslím že je to povážlivé.

Zavolejte lékaře. — Pošlete pro doktora.

Poslali jsme pro něj. — Doktor už tu byl.

Kdy se pan Hanuš rozstonal? — Včera ráno; z nenadání dostal mrazení, pak horkost.

Co je mu? — Nač se rozstonal?

Myslím že na zánět plic.

To by bylo nebezpečné. — Co povídá lékař?

Doktor myslí že má zápal plic.

To ho lituju.

Jak je panu Svobodovi dnes? Je mu líp?

Pořád stejně; — ani líp, ani hůř; — nic se to nemění.

pán hanuš yě prey němotsén.

ležee? — ānō, ūlěhnūl.

yě mū toozě zlě? — misleem že yě tō pōvážlivé.

zăvoleytyt lékárshě. — pōshlětě prō dōktorā. pōslāli smět prō ūney. — dōktor ūsh tū bill.

gdy sě pán h. rostnäl? — fcherá ránō; zněnádáni dostál mrázenní, pák horkost.

tsō yě mū? — nāch sě rostnäl?

misleem že nā zánet plits.

tō bi billō něbespěchné. — tsō poveedá lékarsh?

dōktor mislee že má zápal plits.

tō hō lituyū.

yák yě pánū swobodoví dness? yě mū leep?

porshád steyñe; — āní leep, āní hoorsh; — níts sě tō nemyeñee.

It does not grow worse,
— it doesn't grow
better.

What disease has he?—
What is his disease?
—What ails him?

The physician himself
doesn't know yet; —
until it develops.*)—
It is not known what
will come of it.

I hope it will not be so
bad.

I hope he will recover.
— Perhaps he will
soon get well.

I don't know if he will
get over it. — Who
knows if he will get
well.

He is well along in
years already.

Well, he needs good
nursing.— Give him
the best care possible.

We nurse him faith-
fully.—We tend him
as best we can.

Yes, tend him as well

Nehorší se to, — ne-
lepší se to.

Co má za nemoc? — Ja-
kou má nemoc? —
Nač stůně?

Lékař sám neví ještě;
— až jak se to uká-
že. — Neví se co z
toho bude.

Doufám že nebude to
tak zlé.

Doufám že z toho vy-
jde. — Snad se brzo
uzdraví.

Nevím vyjde-li z toho.
— Kdož ví jestli z
toho vyjde.

Už je v letech.

Inu, potřebuje dobré
ošetření.—Dejte mu
všemožnou péči.

Ošetřujeme ho pilně.
— Sloužíme mu co
nejlíp můžeme.

Ano, služte mu co

něhorshee sě tō — ne-
lepshee sě tō.

tsō má ză němots? —
yäkoū má němots? —
näch stooñe?

lēkarsh sám něvee yesh-
te; — äsh yäk sě tō
ükáže. — něvee sě tsō
stöhō bûdë.

doûfám že něbûdë tō
täk zlé.

doûfám že stöhō veedë.
— snäd sě berzö ü-
zdrävee.

něveem veedëli stöhö. —
gdôž vee yestli stöhö
veedë.

üsh yě vletëkh.

inü, potrshëbýě döbré
oshëtrshëñi. — deytë mň
fshëmožnoú péchi.

oshëtrshëyëmë hō pil-
ñe. — sloûžeeemë mň tsō
neyleep moožemë.

änö, slështë mň tsō

*) **Až jak se to ukáže,** — until it shows itself or develops, — is in fact an elliptical sentence, meaning : “*We must wait, until it develops*”. Sentences of this character are frequently used; for instance :

Až jak bude, “until (we see) how it will be;” — “(it depends upon) how it will be”.

Až jak to dopadne, “until (we see) how it will come out”; — (it depends upon) how it will come out”.

as you can. — Nurse him in every possible manner.

We are with him day and night.

Has the doctor prescribed for him? — Yes, he wrote a prescription.

Have you sent to the drug-store? — We sent there right away. — The druggist prepared it immediately.

The patient takes his medicine regularly.

I hope to God that he will get well.

I hope that he will soon be on his legs.

I fear that he will soon be "on the board" (i. e. dead).

I am afraid that nothing will help him.

I fear that he will die.

Is it true that Mr. Alesh died?

I am sorry to say it is true.

When did he die? — He died at midnight. — He died toward morning.

možná. — Obslužte ho se vším.

Jsme u něj ve dne v noci.

Předepsal mu doktor?
— Ano, napsal recept.

Poslali jste do lékárny? — Poslali jsme tam hned. — Lékárník to připravil okamžitě.

Pacient užívá pravidelně.

Dá bůh že se pozdraví.

Doufám že bude brzo na nohou.

Bojím se že bude brzo na prkně.

Bojím se že nic mu nepomůže*).

Obávám se že umře.

Je to pravda, že pan Aleš umřel?

Bohužel, je to pravda.

Kdy zemřel? — Skonal o půlnoci. — Skonal k ránu.

možná. — *obsluště hō sě fsheem.*

smě ū ūney vě dně vnotsi.

prshěděpsäl mū dōktor?
— *ānō, nāpsäl rēt-sept.*

pōslāli stě dō lékárny?
— *pōslāli smě tām hněd.* — *lékárñik tō prshiprāvil ōkāmži-te.*

pātsient ūzeevá prāvi-delñé.

dá booh že sě pozdrávee.

dořfám že břdě b ērzō nā nōhoǔ.

boyeem sě že břdě b ērzō nā pērkñe.

boyeem sě že ūits mū ně-přmoože.

obávám se že ūmrshč.

yě tō prāvdā že pān A-leš ūmrshell?

bōhūžel, yě tō prāvdā!

gdy zemrshell?? — skonāl ū poolnotsi. — skonāl kránū.

*) See Note 1 on page 36, about double negation.

What did he die of? —
Of inflammation of
the lungs.

Very few get over that,
— at his age.

Indeed very few! —
There was no help for
him. — The doctor
said so right off.

He said: There is no
help for him; — the
desease has been neg-
lected.

He neglected it. — He
sent for the doctor
too late.

He should have sent for
the doctor sooner. —
When the doctor
came, it was too late.

A desease must not be
neglected.

Old Mrs. Hoshek died
this morning.

She died suddenly, —
of heart desease.

She was taken sick and
in half an hour it was
all over with her.

That was a sudden
death.

It is better than to suf-
fer long.

Preserve us from long
suffering!

**Nač umřel? — Na zapá-
lení plie.**

**Z toho málo kdo vy-
jde, — v jeho věku.**

**Ba málo kdo! — Nebylo
mu žádné pomoci. —
Doktor povídal to
hned.**

**Pravil: Není mu po-
moci; — nemoc je za-
nedbána.**

**Zanedbal to. — Poslal
pro doktora pozdě.**

**Měl poslati pro dokto-
ra dříve. — Když dok-
tor přišel, bylo poz-
dě.**

**Nemoc nesmí se zane-
dbati.**

**Stará paní Hošková
skonala dnes ráno.**

**Zemřela náhle, — na
srdeční vadu.**

**Přišlo jí zle a za půl
hodiny bylo po ní.**

To byla náhlá smrt.

**Je to lepší než trápit
se dlouho.**

**Jen ne dlouhé trápe-
ní!**

**náhla ūmrshell? — ná
zăpáleñi plits.**

**stohř málō gdō veedě,
— vyěhō vyěkū.**

**Bř málō gdō! — nebillo
mū žádné pomotsi. —
dōctor pōveeděl tō
hněd.**

**pravil: neyñi mū po-
motsi; — němots yě
zānedbánă.**

**zānedbäl tō. — pōsläl
pro doctörä pozdē.**

**myěll pōslāt pro doctō-
rā drsheevě. — gdyž
doctör prshishell,billō
pozdē.**

**němots něsmee sě ză-
nedbāt.**

**stárá păñi hoshkōvá
skonálă dness ránō.**

**zemrshellă náhlě, — ná
sérdechñee vădū.**

**prshishlō yee zlé a ză
pool hod'iny billo pō
ñi.**

tō billă náhlá smert.

**yě tō lepshee nesh trá-
pit sě dloúhō.**

yen ně dloúhē trápěñi.

Chronic consumption
is a slow disease; —
acute consumption
has a quick run.

Drowning is a cruel
death: — so is strang-
ling. — Hanging is an
easy death, if the neck
is broken.

A. took his own life; —
he committed suicide

He drowned himself; —
he hanged himself. —
he poisoned himself;
— he shot himself; —
he cut his throat; —
he thrust a knife into
his breast.

And why did he do it?
— Most likely he was
insane.

Chronické souchotiny
jsou zdlouhavá ne-
moc; — akutní soucho-
tě mají rychlý běh.

Utopení je těžká smrt;
udušení taky. — O-
běsení je lehká
smrt, zlomí-li se
vaz.

A. vzal si život; — spá-
chal samovraždu.

Utopil se; — oběsil se;
otrávil se; — zastře-
lil se; — podřezal si
krk; — vrazil si nůž
do prsou.

A proč to udělal? —
Nejspíš byl šílený.

khronitské soúkhoťiny
soúzdlouhává němots; —
— ākutnēe soúkhoťe
mäyee rykhlee byěh.
útōpeñi yě ūeshká smert;
— ūdūshēñi tāke. —
obyeshēñi yě lěhká
smert, zlomee-li sě
váz.

A. vzäl si život; — spá-
khäl sámövräždä.
útöpil së; — öbyësil së;
— otrávil së; — ză-
strshëlil së; — pod-
rshëzäl si kerk; —
vräzil sì noož dö per-
soü.

ā proch tō ūđeläl? —
neyspeesh bill sheelë-
nee.

VOCABULARY.

Nemocný, m. *němotsnee* }
pacient, m. *pätsiěnt* } the male patient;
nemocná, f. *němotsná* } the female patient;
pacientka, f. *pätsiěntkă* } the patient;
lékárna, f. *lékárňa* } the drug store,
apatyka, f. *äpatikă* } the pharmacy;
lékárník, m. *lékárňik* } the druggist;
apatykář, m. *äpatikársh* } the apothecary;
horkost, f. *horkost*, the fever heat;
mrazení, n. *mrázěñi*, the chill;
předpis, m. *prshédpis* } the prescrip-
receipt, m. *retsept* } tion, receipt,
the recipe.
předepsati, *prshéděpsät*, to prescribe

připraviti, *prshipravít*, to prepare;
péče, f. *péchë*, the care
pečovati (o), *pěchovět*, to care (for);
ošetření, n. *oshětrshēñi*, the nursing
ošetřovati, *oshětrshěvět*, to nurse,
to tend;
sloužiti, *sloužit* } to serve, to wait
obsloužiti, *obsložit* } on, to tend;
potřebovati, *potrshěběvět*, to want,
to need;
báti se, *bát sě*, to fear
obávati se, *obávět sě*, to apprehend
trápiti se, *trápit sě*, to suffer

trápení, n. *trápění*, the suffering
zanedbati, *zánedbáť*, to neglect
zanedbán, a, o, neglected
měnit se, *myřnit sě*, to change
nemění se, *nemyřněe sě*, it does not
 change;
horšiti se, *horšit sě*, to grow worse
nehorší se, *nehorshee sě*, it does not
 grow worse;
ukázati, *úkázat*, to show
ukáže se, *úkážę sě*, it will show it-
 self;

vyjít z toho, *ve-yeet stohō*, to come
 out of it;
nebezpečí, n. *něbespěchee*, the danger
nebezpečný, á, é *něbespěchnee*, dan-
 gerous
okamžik, m. *okamžik*, the moment
málo kdo, *málō gdō*, very few people
bohužel, *böhuzell*, alas; I am sorry
 to say;
vaz, m. *văz*, the back of the head;
 the neck.

Drugs and medicines.

LÉČIVA a LÉKY.

Míra, f. *meeră*, the measure
váha, f. *váhă*, the weight
měřiti, *myérshit*, to measure
vážiti, *vážit*, to weigh
míchatati, *meekhät*, to mix
prosíti, *proseet* } to garble
přebrati, *prshébrát* } to garble
libra, f. *libră*, a pound
unce, f. *úntsě*, an ounce
lot, m. (about half an ounce);
kvintlík, m. *quintleek*, (about $\frac{1}{5}$ of
 an ounce);
grán, m. a grain
lžice, f. *lžeetsě* or *žeetsě*, a spoon, a
 spoonful;

Prášek, m. *práshek*, a powder
 „ **na zuby**, p. *nă zuby*, tooth-p.;
 „ **šumivý**, p. *shümivee*, Seidlitz-
 powder;
 „ **perský**, Persian powder;

lžička, f. *lžeechkă* or *žeechkă*, a small
 spoon; a small spoonful;
kárová lžíčka, f. a coffee or tea
 spoonful;
čajový šálek, m. *chayovee shálek*, a
 tea-cup;
sklenice, f. *skleñitsě*, a glass
vinná sklenice, f. wine-glass
hrstka, f. *herstkă* } a hand
přehoušle, f. *prshéhořshlě* } ful
špetka, f. *shpetkă*, a pinch
kapka, f. *kăpkă*, a drop
kapky, pl. *kăpky*, drops
pět kapek, *pyět kăpek*, five drops;etc
dávka, f. *dáfkă*, a dose.

prášky, pl. *práshky*, powders
pilulka, f. *pillulkă*, a pill
pilulky, pl. pills
kašička, f. *kăshichkă*, a poultice
těstičko, n. *těstichkō*, a paste

mazání, n. *mázání*, an ointment
 mast, f. *mást*, salve
lektvar, m. confection
tinktura, f. *tinctooră*, tinctoria
flastr, m. *fläster* } plaster
náplast, m. *náplast* }
fizikátor, m. vesicatory
olej, m. *oléy*, oil
extrakt, m. extract
výstřelek, m. *veestrshělek*, spirit
semeno, n. *seménō* } seed
semínko, n. *seemeenkō* }
list, m. *list*, leaf
listí, n. *list'ee*, leaves
kořen, m. *korshěn*, root
kořinek, m. *korsheeněk*, little root
bobule, f. *bobülě*, bulb
kůra, f. *kooră*, bark, peel
šťáva, f. *shtávă*, juice
bylina, f. *billină*, herb
lékařská bylina, *lékarshská b.*, medicinal herb;
odvar, m. decoction
nálev, m. *nálef* } infusion
výmok, m. *veemok* }

Aloe, n. *ăloě*, aloes
anjelika, f. *ănyellică*, angelica
anýz, m. *ăneez*, anise
arabská guma, f. gum arabic
arnika, *prha*, f. arnica
Baldrian (odolen, kozlík), m. water-avens;
balšám, **balzám**, m. *bälshám, bälzám*, balsam
bavlna, f. *bäv'elnă*, cotton

roztok, m. *rostök*, solution
dávidlo, n. emetic
počistovadlo, n. *pochistovădlō*, purgative
lehký, á, é *lehkee*, light, soft, easy
prudký, á, é *prűdkee*, drastic
projímový, á, é *proyeemăvee*, laxative
silicí, seelitsee, tonic
silivka, f. *silifkă*, a tonic
pro spaní, pro spăni, soporific
narkotický, narkotiskee } narcotic
omamující, omämüyeetsee }
močohnavý, mochöhnăvee, diuretic
pijavka, f. *piyäfkă*, a leech
pijavky, pl. *piyäfky*, leeches
baňka, f. cupping-glass
příjemný, á, é *prshee-yemnee*, agreeable, pleasant;
odporný, á, é *odpornee* } nauseating
ošklivý, á, é *oshklivee* }
ošklivost, f. *oshklivost*, nausea
kyselina, *kissellină*, acid
kysličník, *kisslichñeek*, oxide
síran, m. *seerän*, sulphate.

bedrník, m. *bed erñik*, pimpernel
bezový květ, m. *bězovee kvyět*, elder flowers;
běloba, f. *byělobă*, white lead;
bílkovina, f. *beelkővină*, albumen
blín, m. *bleen*, henbane
bobko-třešňě, f. cherry-laurel
bolehlav, m. *bolěhlăv*, hemlock
boží tráva (řecké seno), fenugreek seed

brambořík (svinský chleba, svinský ořech), sow-bread;
broskvové listí, n. peach-leaves;
brntnák obeený, m. borage
bříza, f. *brsheeză*, birch, (*bitula alba*);

Celík, m. *tsellik*, golden-rod
cesmina (lesní kopřiva), f. holly
cink, m. *tsink*, zink
citron, m. *tsitron*, lemon
citronová kůra, f. lemon peel
citronová šťáva, f. lemon juice
cukr, m. *tsük'er*, sugar
cukr hroznový, glucose
cukr mléčný, ts. *mléchnee*, sugar of milk;
cukr olověný, ts. *olovyčnee*, sugar of lead.

Dávičný kámen, m. *dávichnee kámen*, tartar emetic;
dehet, m. *děhēt*, tar
divizna, f. *d'iviznă*, mullein
dobrá mysl, f. see **marjánka**;
dračí krev, f. *drăchee krăf*, dragon's blood;
draslík, m. (**kaliwm**, n.), *drăsslēek*, potassium
draslo, n. see **salajka**;
dřevo myší, n. *drshěvō mishee*, bitter-sweet
dřevo sladké, liquorice
dřín, m. *drsheen*, dogwood
dřistal, m. barberry
drnavec, m. *dernăvets*, wall-pellitory
drozdí, see **kvasnice**;
dubinky, pl. nútgall, galls;

durman, m. (panenské jablko pichlavé), stramonium seed;
dusík, m. *düsseek*, nitrogen
dusiènan olovnatý, nitrate of lead.

Ether, m. éter, ether
euforbiwm, eūforbiūm, euphorbia.

Feníkl, m. fennel
fialka, f. *fiälkă*, violet
fík, m. *feek*, fig
fosfor, m. phosphorus.

Gdoulové semeno, m. quince seed;
granátové jablko, n. pomegranate
guma arabská, f. gum arabic
 " elasticá, f. gum elastic

Heřmánek, m. *hershmánek*, chamomile

horčice, f. *horchitsě*, mustard
hořec, m. *horshets*, gentian
houba, f. *hořbă*, sponge
houby, pl. mushrooms,
hřebíček, m. *rshëbeecek*, cloves
hulevník, m. hedge-mustard

Chinin, m. *khinin*, quinine
china, f. { cinchona, Pe-
chinník pravý, m. { chinník pravý, m. ruvian bark;
chlorové vápno, n. *khlorové vápnō*, chloride of lime;

chmel, m. *khmell*, hops.

Ibiš (proskurník), m. *ibish*, marsh-mallow

Jalovec, m. *yăllověts*, juniper
jaterník, m. *yăterñik*, liverwort

jed,	<i>yěd,</i>	{ poison
utrejch,	<i>útrejkh</i>	
jelení roh,	<i>yelleñee rōh,</i>	hartshorn
“	<i>lůj,</i>	<i>y. looy,</i> hart's tallow
jeráb,	<i>yersháb,</i>	mountain ash;
jetelice,	<i>f. (janovec,</i>	m.) broom tops
jód,	<i>m. yód,</i>	iodine.
 Kafr,	<i>m käfer,</i>	camphor
kalamín,	<i>m. calamine</i>	
kalanka,	<i>f. pinkroot</i>	
kamenec,	<i>m. kămeněts,</i>	alum
kampeška,	<i>f. kămpeshkă,</i>	logwood
kastoreum,	<i>n. castor</i>	
kaštan,	<i>m. kăshtăn,</i>	horse-chestnut;
kaučuk,	<i>m. India rubber;</i>	
klejt,	<i>(kysličník olovnatý) m. kleyt,</i>	
	<i>oxide of lead;</i>	
klejicha bulvatá,	<i>butterfly-weed</i>	
kmín,	<i>m. kmeen,</i>	caraway seed;
kmín vodní,	<i>k. vodñee,</i>	water-hem-
	<i>lock (fine-leaved);</i>	
konítrud,	<i>m. hedge-hyssop</i>	
konopí,	<i>n. kōnopee,</i>	hemp
konopí indické,	<i>k. inditské,</i>	Indian
	<i>hemp;</i>	
konopný extract,	<i>m. extract of hemp</i>	
kopytník tupolistý,	<i>m. asarum Eu-</i>	
	<i>ropaeum;</i>	
kopr,	<i>m. kopér,</i>	dill
kořalka,	<i>f. see pálenka;</i>	
korek,	<i>m. cork</i>	
kořen hadí,	<i>m. korshén hřd'ee,</i>	bistort
“	<i>maliny,</i>	blackberry root;
“	<i>omanu,</i>	elicamppane
“	<i>omějový,</i>	aconite root;
 kosatec,	<i>m. kossätets,</i>	blue flag, iris
		<i>versicolor;</i>
kozinec,	<i>m. kozinets,</i>	tragacanth
kozlik odolen,	<i>m. valerian</i>	
kožovkvet,	<i>m. queen's root;</i>	
křen,	<i>m. krshén,</i>	horse-radish
krevnice,	<i>f. krěvñitsě,</i>	bloodroot
křída,	<i>f. krsheedă,</i>	chalk
kroupy,	<i>pl. kroupy,</i>	pearl barley;
krtičník,	<i>m. kertčichñeek,</i>	figwort
krušinka,	<i>krushinkă,</i>	dyer's weed, genista;
 krusíček, (pampalík),	<i>m. marigold</i>	
kůra dubová,	<i>f. koora dřubová,</i>	black-
		<i>oak bark;</i>
“	<i>divoké třešně,</i>	wild cherry bark
“	<i>vrbová,</i>	<i>k. verbová,</i> willow bark;
“	<i>jilmová,</i>	<i>k. yilmová,</i> elm bark;
“	<i>červené jilmy,</i>	slipperyelm bark
kvasnice,	<i>pl. kvaçsñitsě,</i>	yeast
květ,	<i>m. kwyet,</i>	flowers
květel,	<i>f. kwyetell,</i>	common toad flax
kyprej,	<i>m. kiprey,</i>	loosestrife
kyslík,	<i>m. kissleek,</i>	oxygen
kyselina,	<i>f. kisselină,</i>	acid
“	<i>citronová,</i>	citric acid
“	<i>karbolová,</i>	carbolic acid;
“	<i>sanytrová,</i>	nitric acid;
“	<i>solná,</i>	muriatic acid;
“	<i>vínová,</i>	tartaric acid.
 Lep na ptáky,	<i>m. bird-lime</i>	
lentyšek,	<i>m. mastic</i>	
levandule,	<i>f. lavender</i>	
líh,	<i>m. leeh,</i>	alcohol
lílek červený,	<i>see dřevo myší;</i>	
limonka,	<i>f. marsh rosemary;</i>	

listí bobkové, n. laurel leaves;
 lomilhnát, m. common groundsel;
 lopuch, (hořký luppen) m. burdock
 lůj, m. looy, tallow;
 „, jelení, hart's tallow;
 „, skopový, mutton suet
 lžičník, m. lžichník, common seur-
 vy-grass;
 lék proti hlistám, vermifuge.

Mák, m. poppy-seed
 mandle hořké, pl. măndlă horshké,
 bitter almonds;
 „, sladké, sweet almonds;
 mařena, f. mărshĕnă, madder
 marjánka, f. măryánkă, common
 marjoram;
 máta, (marulká) f. catnep
 máta peprná, f. peppermint
 máta kadeřavá, pennyroyal
 med, m. honey
 měď, f. myěd. copper
 medokvět, m. mědokvycět, marsh
 trefoil, buckbean;
 medvědice obecná, medvyěd'itsě o-
 betsňá, bearberry leaves;
 mejlí, n. (mišpule, f.) meylee, mistle-
 toe
 melasa, f. molasses
 mléko, n. milk
 mlékový punč, milk-punch, toddy;
 morušová šťáva, mulberry juice;
 mouka bílá, f. moňkă beelá, wheat
 flour;
 „, černá, m. cherná, rye flour;
 „, ovesná, m. ověssná, oatmeal;

mrkev, f. merkef, carrot seed;
 mydlo, n. meedlō, soap
 „, mazavé, soft soap
 „, amygdalinové, amygdaline
 soap;
 „, mandlové, almond oil soap;
 myrrha, f. myrrh
 Naháč, m. see ocún;
 námel, m. ergot
 náprstník červený, m. foxglove
 narcis kadeřavý, m. daffodil
 nátržník, m. tormentil
 netík, m. see ženský vlas;
 netýkalka, f. touch-me-not
 nové koření, n. nové korshění, all-
 spice;
 nickamínek, see skalice;
 nátrium, see sodík.
 Ocet, m. otset, vinegar
 ocún, m. otsoon, colchicum seed;
 odolen, m. valerian
 olej, m. öley, oil
 „, bavlněný, cotton-seed oil
 „, z bergamotek, oil of bergamot
 „, citronový, lemon oil
 „, dymianový, oil of thyme, oil of
 origanum;
 „, hořčičný, oil of mustard
 „, heřmánkový, chamomile oil
 „, jantarový, oil of amber
 „, kafrový, camphor oil
 „, kokosový, cocoa-nut oil
 „, koprový, oil of dill
 „, krotonový, croton oil
 „, lněný, flaxseed oil

olej mandlový, almond oil
 „ olivový,
 „ dřevěný } olive oil
 „ brabancový
 „ ricinový, castor oil
 „ růžový, oil of roses
 „ sesamový, benne oil
 „ skořicový, cinnamon oil
 „ terpentinový, oil of turpentine
 „ z volské nohy, neats-foot oil
 olovo, n. *olovč*, lead
 ořech, m. *oršehk*, nut
 „ muškátový, nutmeg
 orlíček, m. *orleeček*, columbine
 osládič, m. *oslád'ich*, male fern
 ožanka, f. (gamandr), germander.

Pálenka obyčejná, f. whisky
 „ vinná (francouzská), brandy
 pampeliška (smetanka), f. dandelion
 paprika, f. red pepper, cayenne p.
 pekelný kamínek, m. lapis infer-
 nalis;
 pelynek, m. wormwood
 peltrám, m. pellitory
 pepř, m. *pěprsh*, black pepper
 petružel, f. parsley root
 pijavky, pl. f. *piyáfk*, leeches
 pížmo, n. *peežm*, musk
 plavuň, f. lycopodium
 plieník, m. *plitsník*, Iceland moss;
 ploštičník, m. black snakeroot, ci-
 micifuga;
 pomoranč, m. *pomoránch*, orange
 pomorančový květ, orange flowers;
 pomorančová kůra, orange peel;

popel z kostí, m. *popell skoství*, bone
 ash;
 posed, m. white bryony
 potaš (draslo), see salajka;
 potměchut, f. } bittersweet
 psí víno červené, n. }
 protěž, f. cudweed, life-everlasting;
 pryskyřice, f. *pryskirshits*, resin,
 rosin;
 pryskyrky, see španělské mouchy;
 psí rmen, m. mayweed
 pukavec (vlčí mák), m. *pukávets*,
 red-poppy petals;
 puškvorec, m. *púškhworets*, sweet
 flag;
 Rauta, f. *răútă*, rue
 rebarbora, f. *rebarböră*, rhubarb
 rozinky, pl. f. raisins
 rozmarina, f. rosemary
 rozrazil, m. speedwell
 rtuť, f. *rtútă*, mercury
 rulík zlomocný, m. deadly night-
 shade, belladonna root;
 rum myrtový, m. bay-rum
 rumělka, f. cinnabar
 růže stolistá, f. hundred-leaved
 rose.
 Sadee, m. *sădet*, eupatorium, thor-
 oughwort;
 sádlo, n. lard
 salajka, f. *sálájkă*, potash
 salmiak, m. sal ammoniac
 sanytr, m. *sănyt'r*, saltpeter
 semeno lněné, n. flaxseed, linseed;
 „ tykové, pumpkin seed;

semínko citvárové, European worm-seed;
senes, m. purging cassia;
senesové listí, n. senna leaves;
seno řecké, n. *seno rshětské*, fennugreek;
sesamové listí, n. benne leaf;
síra, f. *seeră*, sulphur, brimstone;
síran, m. *seerăñ*, sulphate
síran draselnatý, sulphate of potash
síran měďnatý, sulphate of copper;
sirob, m. sirup
skalice bílá, f. *skällitsë beelú*, white vitriol;
skila, f. squile
skořice, f. *skorshitsë*, cinnamon
“ **bílá**, canella
sladká vrbka, f. bittersweet
slíz, m. *sleez*, common mallow
smola, f. pitch
sodík, m. (*natrium*), n. sodium
soda suchá, f. (*suchý nátron*, ky-
 sličník sodnatý), dry soda,
 protoxide of sodium;
soda žíravá, (*nátron žíravý*, hydrát
 sodnatý), caustic soda, hydrate of soda;
sporyš, m. see **železník**;
starék, m. see **lomihnát**;
sůl kuchynská, f. *sool k.*, common salt;
“ **hořká**, (*Glauberova*), Glauber's salt, Epsom salt;
“ **morská**, bay salt;
“ **křištálová**, nitrate salt;
suřík, m. red oxide of lead;
sylačec, m. *svlăchets*, scammony.

Šafrán, m. *shăfrán*, saffron
šalvěj, m. *shălvę̄y*, sage
šípek, m. *sheepék*, dog-rose, hip;
šišák, m. *shishák*, scullcap
škrob, m. *shkrob*, starch
Škrobovina americká, f arrow-root
škumpa jedovatá, f. poison-oak
španělské mouchy, pl. f. Spanish flies, cantharides;
špargl, m. *shpargl*, asparagus
šťovík, m. *shťovík*, sorrel
švestky, pl. f. *shvěstky*, prunes.
Tabák, m. *tăbák*, tobacco
tavola, f hardhack
terpentýn, m. *terpenteen*, turpentine
tinktura arniková, f. tincture of arnica:
tis, m. common European yew tree;
tojest, f. dog's-bane
tolije, f. *tolliyē*, parnassia palustris;
tomel virginský, persimmon
trán jaterní, m. cod-liver oil;
trnka, f. *ternkă*, wild plumtree;
trojpecka, f. *troypetskă*, fever root
třemdava, f. dictamnus, bastard dittany;
třezalka, f. St. John's wort;
tuk velrybí, m. spermaceti
turan, m. fleabane, erigeron.
Uhel dřevěný, m. charcoal
uhel zvířecí, animal charcoal; bone-black;
uhlík, m. *ühleek*, carbon
uhličitan hořečnatý, m. carbonate of magnesia;

uhličitan sodnatý, carbonate of soda
užanka, f. hound's tongue.

Vanilka, f. vanilla

vápno, n. lime; quicklime;
vápno chlorové, chloride of lime;
vápno karbolové, carbolate of lime;

vavřín, m. laurel tree;

vejce, n. *veytsě*, egg

bílek, m. *beelek*, the white

žloutek, m. *žloňtek*, the yolk

vinný kámen, m. cream of tartar;

vino bílé, n. *veenö beełé*, white wine

“ **červené**, v. *chervěné*, red wine,

virginská hadovka, f. Virginia
snakeroot

vítod, m. *veetod*, bitter polygala;

vlašťovičník, m. *vlăšt'ovichñik*, ce-
landine

voda čistá, f. *võdă chissťá*, pure water

voda minerální, mineral water

koupel, f. *koǔpell* { bath

lázeň, f. *lázeň*

vodička, f. *vod'ichkă*, wash, lotion;

vodička na oči, v. *nă ochi*, eye-wash

vosk bílý, m. white wax

vosk žlutý, yellow wax

vraní oko, n. *vrăňee okō*, paris quad-
rifolia;

vratič, m. *vrátich*, tansy

výstřelek, m. *veestrshellek*, spirit

“ **pižmový**, spirit of musk;

“ **terpentinový**, spirit of
turpentine;

vyzí klí, n. *vizee klee*, isinglass.

Zázvor, m. ginger

zázvor divoký, wild ginger

zeměžluč, f. *zemyěžlúč*, common
centaury;

zerav, m. *zerăf*, arbor vitae;

zimostráz, m. box plant;

zmíjovec, m. *zmeeyđvets*, skunk cab-
bage;

žábňík, m. *žábñik*, water-plantain

žebříček, m. *žebrsheecheck*, yarrow

železnice lysá, s. snake-head, turtle-
head;

železník, m. *železñik*, vervain

ženský vlas, m. maidenhair

žlučovolská, f. *žluch volská*, ox-gall

žlutidlo, n. turmeric

žtutodřev, m. prickly-ash.

At home.

DOMA.

I like domestic com-
fort.

We have a comfortable
home on tenth street.

We have a hall, five
rooms and a kitchen

**Miluju domácí poho-
dlí.**

**Máme pohodlný domov
na desáté ulici.**

**Máme síň, pět pokojů
a kuchyň dole, a**

*millüyü domátsee po-
hodlee.*

*mámě pohodelnée dō-
mof nă děsáté úlitsi.*

*mámě seeň, pyět pokř-
yoo ā kükhiň dōlę,*

down stairs, and four bedrooms upstairs.

The stairs have a railing.

We have new furniture,—tables, chairs, sofas and beds.

The writing-desk and library stand in the front room.

The windows have both shutters and curtains.

On the walls there are pictures in frames.

Our clothes-press is very handy.

The fuel we keep down cellar. — Hard and soft water is in the house.

We have a good stove and the chimney does not smoke.

It is time to eat. — The meal is ready.

The table is spread; — everything is on the table: dishes, plates, forks, knives.

Come and eat; — sit down by the table.

Hand (thou) me that chair. — Hand (you) me the soup; I shall deal it out.

čtyry ložnice nahore.

Schody mají zábradlí.

Máme nový nábytek,— stoly, židle, pohovky a postelee.

Psací stůl a knihovna stojí v přední světnici.

Okna mají okenice i záslonky.

Na stěnách jsou obrazy v rámech.

Naše šatnice je tuze příručná.

Palivo máme ve sklepě. — Tvrdá i měkká voda je v domě.

Máme dobré kamna a komín nekouří.

Je čas k jídlu. — Jídlo je hotovo.

Je prostřeno; — všecko je na stole: mísy, talíře, vidličky, nože.

Pojďte jísti; — sedněte ke stolu.

Podej mi tu sesli. — Podejte mi polívku; já rozdám,

ă shtiri ložnítsě náhorshě.

skhödy mäyee zábradlee.

mámě novee nábytěk, — stolly, židlě, pohofky ā postellě.

psátsee stool ā kñihovnă stoyee fp r shědñee swyčetñitsi.

oknă mäyee okēñitsě e zásłony.

nă sťenákh soř obrázy vrámekh.

năshě shătñitsě yě toozě prsheatruchná.

pálivō mámě vě sklepyč. — tverdá e myěká vodă yě vdōmyč.

mámě dobré kămnă ā komeen někoúrshee.

yě chăss k-yeedlă. — yeedlă yě hotđvř.

yě prostršenř. — fshořtsko yě nă stollě: meešy, tăleershě, vidlichky, nože.

podřtě yeest; — sedñetě kě stollă.

poděy me tă sessli. podžytě me poleefkū; yá rōzdám,

Is it not salt enough?

— Here is the salt;
take some more salt.

The meat is cut; — I
shall cut up the roast
into pieces.

Help yourself; — here
is roast goose,—here
is fried chicken.

Take a piece of bread.

Do you eat pastry? —
Sometimes.

Do you want a cup of
coffee? — or a cup of
tea?

Is the coffee sweet e-
nough? — Here is su-
gar.

After a meal a cigar
tastes well.

Will you smoke? — Here
are cigars; light one.

Hand me the matches.
— There in the cor-
ner is a spittoon.

It is growing dark. —
It is dark. — Make a
light.

Here is a candle-stick
and a candle.—Light
the lamp; — light the
gas.

**Není dost slaná? — Zde
je sůl; přisolte si.**

**Maso je nakrájeno; —
rozdělím pečení na
porce.**

**Poslužte si; — zde je
pečená husa, — zde
smažené kuře.**

**Vemte si kousek chle-
ba.**

Jíte pečivo? — Někdy.

**Chcete šálek kávy? —
anebo šálek čaje?**

**Je káva dost sladká? —
Zde je cukr.**

**Po jídle chutná dout-
ník.**

**Budete kouřiti? — Tu
jsou cigara; zapalte
si.**

**Podejte mi sirky. —
Tam v koutě je pli-
vátko.**

**Stmívá se. — Je tma. —
Udělejte světlo.**

**Zde je svícen a svíčka.
— Rozžete lampu; —
rozžete plyn.**

*neyňi dost slaná? — zdě
yě sool; prshisoltě si.*

*mässö yě nákráyňo; —
rozd'eleem pěcheňi nă
portse.*

*poslūšhtě si; — zdě yě
pěchěná hüssä, — zdě
smážené kürshě.*

vemtě si kořsek khlěbä.

yeetě pěchivo? ñegdy.

*khtsétě shálek kávy? —
ănebō shálek chăyě?*

*yě kávă dost slădká? —
zdě yě tsük̄er.*

*př yeedlě khütná doüt-
ník.*

*budětě koürshit? — tū
soň tsigară; zăpăltě
si.*

*poděytě me seerký. —
tăm fkořťe yě pli-
vátko.*

*stmeevá sě. — yě tmă. —
uđelěytě swyěllo.*

*zdě yě sweetsěn ā sweech-
kū. — rožetě lămpū;
— rožetě plyn.*

It is growing chilly,
isn't it? — Make a
fire.

There is a fire already
in the stove.

It is late; — let us go to
sleep.

It is time to go to bed.

Is the bed made? — The
beds are made for all.

I shall lie down on the
sofa. — Do as you
please.

Undress; — take off
your clothes; — pull
off your boots; here
is the boot-jack.

Sleep well. — Good
night!

It is time to get up. —
Our folks are up.

Wencel is still sleeping;
— wake him up, or
he will oversleep.

How did you sleep? —
I slept well.

Didn't that noise wake
you up? — I slept
fast; nothing disturbed
me.

I had a bad night; —
I could not fall asleep
very long; — I only
fell asleep towards
morning.

**Dělá se chladno, je-li
pravda? — Zatopte.**

Už je oheň v kamnech.

**Je pozdě; — pojďme
spat.**

Je čas jít do postele.

**Je ustlán? — Je ustlá-
no pro všechny.**

**Já si lehnou na sofa. —
Jak chcete.**

**Odstrojte se; — sylék-
něte se; — zujte se,
— tu je zouvák.**

**Spěte dobře. — Dobrou
noc!**

**Je čas vstáti. — Naši
jsou zhůru.**

**Václav posud spí; —
zбуд'te ho, sice za-
spí.**

**Jak jste spal? — Spal
jsem dobře.**

**Nebudil vás ten hluk?
— Spal jsem tvrdě;
— nic mě nebudilo.**

**Já měl zlou noc; —
nemohl jsem usnou-
ti dlouho; — usnul
jsem teprvě k ránu.**

**Dělá sě khládno, yelli
právdă? — zátoptě.**

úsh yě ohěñ fkámněkh.

**yě pozd'e; — podmě
spřt.**

yě chäss yeet dő postellě.

**yě ūstlán? — yě ūstlá-
nō pro fshěkhny.**

**yá si lehnū nā sofā. —
yák khtsětě.**

**odstroytě sě; — svlékňe-
tě sě; — züytě sě; —
tū yě zořvák.**

**spyetě döbrshě. — döbroū
nots.**

**yě chäss fstát. — nashi
soū zhoorū.**

**vátslāv posud spee; —
zbüd'itě ho, sitsě zá-
spee.**

**yák stě späl? — späl
sem döbrshě.**

**nebüd'il váss ten hlük?
— späl sem tverd'e;
níts myě nebüdilo.**

**yá myěll zlou nots; —
nemohel sem ūsnout
dložhō; — ūsnul sem
tepervé kránū,**

Henry says he never
shut his eyes (i.e. had
no sleep at all).

Jindřich povídá že ani
oka nezamhouřil.

yindrshikh poveedá že
aňi okă nězamoř-
rshil.

VOCABULARY.

Síň, f. *seeň*, the hall
schody, pl. m. *skhody*, the stairs
zábradlí, n. the railing
stěna, f. *sřenă*, the wall
šatnice, f. *shătnitsë*, the clothes
press;
kumbál, m. *kümbál*, the closet
kout, m. *koút*, the corner
okenice, f. *okéňitsë*, the blind
záslona, f. *záslonă*, the curtain
domácí, *dörnátsee*, domestic
nábytek, m. the furniture
stoly, m. *stöly* } tables
tabule, f. *täbülë* }
psací stůl, *psätsee stool*, the writing-
desk
židle, f. *židlë* } the chair or chairs;
sesle, f. *sesslë* }

pohovka, f. *pöhofkă* } the lounge
sofa, n. *sofă* }
obraz, m. *obrăz*, the picture
rám, m. the frame
Palivo, n. *pällivõ*, the fuel
kamna, pl. *kämndä*, the stove
komín, m. *komeen*, the chimney
kouřiti, *koärshít*, to smoke
oheň, m. *öheň*, the fire;
svícen, m. *sweetsën*, the candlestick
svíčka, f. *sweechkă*, the candle
plyn, m. the gas
rozžíti, *rožeet*, to make a light;
zapáliti, *zäpálit*, to light
sirka, f. *seerkă*, a match
cigaro, n. *tsigäro* } a cigar
doutník, m. *doütñik* }
plivátko, n. *plivátko* } spittoon.
plivník, m. *plivñik* }

Prostríti, *prostrsheet*, to set the table;
mísa, f. *meesă*, the dish
talíř, m. *täleersh*, the plate
šálek, m. *shálek*, the cup
sůl, *sool*, the salt
slaný, á, é *slănee*, salt, salted;
přisoliti, *prshi-solit*, to put in some
more salt;
sladký, á, é *slădkee*, sweet

nakrájeti, *năkráyet*, to cut in pieces;
rozděliti, *rozđelit*, to divide
rozdati, *rozđat*, to deal out;
pečivo, n. *pëchivo*, the pastry
pečený, á, é *pëchenee*, roasted
smažený, á, é *smäženee*, fried
husa, f. *hüssă*, goose
kuře, n. *kürshë*, chicken.

Stmívati se, *stmeerăt sě*, to grow dark;
odstrojiti se, *odstroyit sě*, to undress
zouti se, *zööt sě*, to pull off one's boots;
zouvák, m. *zoüvák*, the boot-jack
ustlati, *üstlät*, to make the bed;
usnouti, *üsnoüt*, to fall asleep;
zaspati, *zöspät*, to oversleep
buditi, *büd'it*, to wake, to disturb;

zbuditi, *zbüd'it*, to wake up, to call;
vstati, *f'stút*, to get up;
zhůru, *zhooră*, up;
nahoře, *nähorshë*, up stairs;
dole, *dölë*, down stairs;
tvrdě, *tverd'e* } fast
pevně, *perñe* }
hluk, m. *hlük*, noise
je-li pravda? *yelli prävdë?* isn't it so?

Buying and selling.

KOUPĚ A PRODEJ.

How much is this? —
 What is the price of it? — How much does it cost?

What do you sell it for? —
 What do you want for it? — What do you ask for it? — How much shall I give you for it?

What is the price? —
 A dollar and ten cents. — A dollar and a quarter.

Two dollars and a half. — Two and a half dollars.

Five dollars sixty cents

It costs a little over six dollars.

Is it worth that much?

Zač je to? — **Co to stojí?** — **Co to koštujе?**

Po čem to prodáváte?
Co za to chete? — **Co za to žádáte?** — **Co vám za to dáme?**

Jaká je cena?
Dollar deset centů. — **Dollar a čtvrt.**

Dva dollarů a půl. — **Půl třetího dollaru.**

Pět dollarů šedesát centů.

Stojí to něco přes šest dollarů.

Stojí to za to?

zäck yě tő? — tsö tő stoyee? — tsö tő kosh-tüyě?

pö chem tő prodáváte? tsö zä tő khtsét? — tsö zä tő žádát? — tsö vám zä tő dá? —

yäká yě tsenä? dollär desset sentoo. — dollär a shtwert.

dva dolläry a pool. — pool trshëföhö dollä-rü.

pyët dolläroo shëdessút sentoo. stoyee tő ñetsö prshës shest dolläroo. stoyee tő zä tő?

I think it is; — why should it not be?

It seems to me too much. — I think it is dear.

That is too much. — That is too dear. — I won't give so much.

That is too much; — will you take off something?

You must take off something.

I shall not take off anything. — I cannot take off anything.

We have a fixed price. — We sell at a fixed price.

It is cheap. — It is low-priced.

I shall get it cheaper elsewhere.

You will not get it cheaper anywhere.

I will try it. — I don't want to haggle. — I don't like to haggle over the price.

That is the lowest price; — it cannot be any cheaper.

Myslím že stojí; — proč by nestálo?

Mně se to zdá moc. — Myslím že je to drahé.

To je moc. — **To je drahé.** — Tolik nedám.

To je tuze mnoho; — slevíte něco?

Něco musíte sleviti.

Neslevím nic. — Nemohu sleviti nic.

Máme pevnou cenu. — Prodáváme za pevnou cenu.

Je to laciné, — **Je to levné.**

Dostanu to levněji jinde.

Nedostanete to levněji nikde.

Zkusím to. — Nechci smlouвати. — Nerad smlouvám.

To je nejnižší cena; — nemůže být lacinější.

misleem že stoyee; — *proch be nestálo?*

myě sě tō zdá mots. — *misleem že yě tō dráhē.*

tō yě mots. — *tō yě dráhē.* — *tolik nědám.*

tō yě toozě mnohō; — *slěveetě ñetsō?*

ñetsō műseetě slevit.

něslěveem ñits. — *němōhři slevit ñits.*

mámě pevnoū tsenū. — *prodávámě ză pevnou tsenū.*

yě tō lätsiné. — *yě tō levné.*

dostanu tō levñey yindě.

nedostanetě tō levñey nigdě.

skřuseem tō. — *někhtsi smloúvát.* — *nerad smloúvám.*

tō yě neyñishee tsenă; — *němoože beet lätsi-ñeyshee.*

What do you wish? —
What is your pleasure?

What can I do for you?
Have you satchels for sale? — I want to buy a satchel.

I would like to get a nice traveling bag.

We have a stock of them. — We have a large choice.

Show me some. — I wish to see them.

This is the best kind we have. — They are good.

This one is nice. — This will suit you.

How much is it? — What is the price?

Four dollars and a half.
— That is the regular price.

That is a little too much.
— don't you think so?

I do not think so.

I will give four dollars for it. — Will you sell it for that?

I cannot. — I cannot take off anything.

The price is fixed.
Then I will not buy it.
— Do as you please;

Co si přejete? — Co ráchte?

**Čím mohu sloužiti?
Máte tašky na prodej?
— Chci koupit tašku.**

Rád bych nějakou pěknou kabelu.

Máme je na skladě. — Máme velký výběr.

Ukažte mi některé. — Podívám se na ně.

Tohle je nejlepší druh co máme. — Ty jsou dobré.

Tahle je pěkná. — Ta se vám hodí.

Zač je? — Co stojí?

Čtyry dollary a půl. —

To je pravidelná cena.

To je trochu moc; — nemyslíte?

Nemyslím.

Dám za ni čtyry dollary. — Dáte ji za to?

Nemohu. — Nemohu nic sleviti.

**Cena je pevná.
Teda ji nekoupím. — Jak vám libo. — Ne-**

tsō si prshčyetě? — tsō rāchtě?

*cheem mohū složit?
mátě tříshky nă prodey?
— khtsi koūpit tříshkū.*

*rád bikh nákoū pyěknou kábellú.
mámě yě nă sklád'ě. — námě velkee reebyěr.*

*ůkřishtě me řekteré. — po-
děevám sě nă ře.*

tōhlě yě neylepshee druh tsō mámě. — ty soū dobré.

tāhlě yě pyěkná. — tā sě vám hořee.

záčh yě? — tsō stoyee?

shtiry dolláry ā pool. —

tō yě pravidelná tsēná.

tō yě trokhū mots; — nemisleetě?

*nemisleem.
dám zři ři shtiry dolláry — dáte ye zři tō?*

nemohū. — nemohū řits slěvit.

*tsená yě pevná.
tědě ye někoúpeem. — yák vám leebö. — ney-*

—it is not dear at that price.

You will not get it elsewhere. — They have not got them elsewhere.

They are not to be had elsewhere. — Only I alone have them for sale.

They have not got these goods on hand anywhere.

I keep honest goods on hand.

Small profits, quick sales — that is my motto.

Small but frequent profits.

Have you some pocket-books?

We have a large stock. — What kind do you wish, — expensive? — cheap?

What is the price of these? — How much are they? — How do you sell them?

A dollar a piece. — They are good and lasting.

Those are dearer; a dollar and a half.

ní drahá za tu cenu.

**Jinde ji nedostanete. —
Jinde je nemají.**

**Nejsou jinde k dostání.
— Jenom já je mám
na prodej.**

**Nemají to zboží na
skladě nikde.**

Já držím poctivé zboží.

Malý zisk, rychlý prodej,—to je mé heslo.

Malý výdělek, ale častý.

Máte nějaké tobolky?

**Máme velkou zásobu.
— Jaké cheete, —
drahé? — laciné?**

**Zač jsou tyhle? — Po
čem jsou? — Po čem
je prodáváte?**

**Po dollaru kus. — Jsou
dobré a trvanlivé.**

**Tam ty jsou dražší; po
dollaru a půl.**

ni dráhá zá tu tsenů

**yindě ye nědostánětě. —
yindě yě nemäyee.**

**neysoň yindě gdostáňi.
— yenom yá yě mám
nă prodey.**

**nemäyee tō zbožee nă
sklădě nígdě.**

yá deržeem potstívivé zbožee.

málee zisk, rykhlee prodey,—tō yě mé hesslō.

málee veed'elek átlě chässtee.

mátě nákké třbolky?

**mámě velkoň zásobu. —
yáké khtsětě, — dráhě? — lätsiné?**

**zách soň tyhlě? — po
chem soň? — po chem
yě prodávátě?**

**pō dollärū küss. — soň
dobré a terovanlivé.**

**tām ty soň dráshee; pō
dollarū a pool.**

They are somewhat better.

I will take one;— wrap it up for me.

Here is the money; give me back.

There is fifty cents coming to you.— Here is half a dollar back.

I should like to buy a few tons of coal; but I have no money.

I will take it on credit; — will you trust me?

I do not trust anybody; —I sell only for cash.

I give no credit. — I want cash.

I want to have no bad debts.

I need money. — I am raking up money to buy goods;—I do not want to borrow.

For cash one buys cheap.

How is business? — So so;— tolerably good.

Have the goods a ready sale?—I have a good sale, but a small profit.

Jsou trochu lepší.

Vezmu si jednu;— za-balte mi ji.

Tu jsou peníze; dejte mi zpátky.

Přijde vám padesát centů.— Zde je půl dolaru zpátky.

Rád bych kočknil páru tun uhlí; ale nemám peníze.

Vezmu ho na dluh; — počkáte mi?

Nečekám žádnému; — prodávám jen za hotové.

Nedávám kredit.— Chci hotové.

Nechci mít žádné špatné dluhy.

Potřebuju peníze. — Sháním peníze na zboží; nechci se dlužit.

Za hotové koupí se lácino.

Jak jde obchod?— Tak tak; — projde to.

Jde zboží na odbyt? — Mám dobrý odbyt, ale malý zisk.

soř trokhř lepshee

vezmě si yednū; — zří-bálte me ye.

tř soř peñeez; deytě me spátky.

prsheedě vám păděssát sentoo. — zdě yě pool dollárř spátky.

rád bikh kočknil pártuň ūhlee; ále němám peñeez.

vezmě hř nř dlooh; — pochkátič me?

něcheckám žádnémř; — prodávám yen zř hotové.

nědávám credit.— khtsi hotové.

nekhtsi meet žádné shpátne dloohy.

potrshěbūjř peñeez. — sháñeem pěñeez nř zbožee; — někhtsi sě dlžit.

zř hotové kočpeesě lătsinř.

yák dě obkhřd? — ták tak; — proydě tō.

dě zbožee nř odbyt? — mám dōbree odbyt, ále mălee zisk.

I often sell at a loss.—
I have a loss on my sales.
That is bad. — Have you a large stock?
I have still many goods on hand; — I expect again fresh goods; — they are on the way.
I was in New York to make purchases.
Did you make a good bargain? — I am satisfied.

Prodávám často se škodou. — Mám na tom ztrátu.
To je zlé. — Máte velkou zásobu?
Mám ještě hodně zboží; — čekám zase čerstvé zboží; — je už na cestě.
Byl jsem v New Yorku nakupovat.
Koupil jste dobré? — **Jsem spokojen.**

prodávám chăsstő sě shkodoü. — mám nă tom strátu.
tō yē zlé. — mátě velkoü zásobu?
mám yeshťe hodnē zbožee; — chekám zăss cherstvē zbožee; — yě ūsh nă tsesťe.
bill sem vnew-yorku nă kúpovat.
koüpil stř döbrshē? — sem spokoyěn.

VOCABULARY.

Na skladě, nă sklăd'ě, on hand;
odbyt, m. sale (of goods);
zisk, m. profit
škoda, f. shkodă } loss
ztráta, f. strátă } loss
taška, f. tăshkă } satchel,
kabela, f. kăbellă } traveling bag;
tobelka, f. tōbolkă, pocket book;
heslo, n. hesslō, motto
pevný, á, é pevnee, fast, fixed;
trvati, tervăt, to last
trvanlivý, á, é tervănlivee, lasting.

Stojí to, stoyee tō, it costs, it is worth;
koštaje, koshty়ě, it costs
dostati, dostăt, to get
dostanu, dostănu, I shall get;

dostanete, dōslănenětě, you will get;
je k dostání, yě gdostáñi, is to be got; is to be had;
držeti, deržet, to keep
hoditi se, hodit' sě, to suit; to fit;
sleviti, slëvit, to take off;
smlouvati, smloüvăt, to haggle; to bargain;
sloužiti, sloüžit, to serve
dlužiti se, dlüžit sě } to borrow
vydlužiti se, vydlüžit sě } to borrow
počkatı, pochkăt, to wait, to trust;
nečekám, něchekám, I do not wait; I do not trust;
nakupovati, năkúpovat, to make purchases;
zabaliti, zábălit, to wrap up.

In a grocery store.
U GROCERISTY.

I want some groceries.
Please, command;—we
have fresh goods of
all kinds.

Give me a pound of
coffee, two pounds
of sugar and a pack-
age of chicory.

Anything else?

Five pounds of rice,
half a dozen of lemons
and some spices.

How do you sell eggs?
Twenty cents a dozen.
Give me two dozen of
eggs, three quarts of
kerosene and a pint
of sirup.

How do you sell kero-
sene by the gallon?

I will take a bottle of
mustard, a pound of
raisins, a pound and
a half of dried apples.

Besides, I want four
ounces of pepper.

Send me a sack of flour
and five pounds of
barley.

I want the best kind of
flour, — patent flour.

Chei nějaké grocerie.
Poroučejte; — máme
čerstvé zboží všeho
druhu.
Dejte mi libru kávy,
dvě libry cukru a
paklíček cikorie.

Ještě něco ?

Pět liber rýže, půl tu-
etu citronů a nějaké
koření.

Zač prodáváte vejce?

Dvacet centů tucet.

Dejte mi dva tuety va-
jec, tři kvarty pe-
troleje a pint siro-
bu.

Zač prodáváte petro-
lej na gallony?

**Vezmu si lahev horčí-
ce, libru rozinek,**
půldruhé libry kří-
žál.

Ještě chei čtyry unce
pepře.

Pošlete mi pytel mou-
ky a pět liber krup.

Chci nejlepší druh
mouky, — patentní
mouku.

khtsi nákké grocerie.
poroūcheytě; — mámě
cherstvé zbožee fshě-
hō druhū.
deytě me librū kávy,
dryě libry tsūkrū ā
pákleecheck tsikorič.

yeshťe ñetsč?

pyět liber reyže, pool
tütstü tsitrónoo ā ná-
ké korshěñi.

zăch prodávátě veylsč?
dvătset sentoo tütset.

deytě me dvă tütsty vă-
yets, trshi quarthy pě-
trolejč ā pint siro-
bū.

zăch prodávátě petrolej
nă gallony?

vezmū si lăhev horchit-
sč, libră rōzinék,
pool druhé libry
krsheežál.

yeshťe khtsi shtiry ūn-
tsč pěprshč.

poshlětě mi pytel moúky
ā pyět liber krup.

khtsi neylepshee druh
moúky, — pătentňee
moúkū.

A bushel of potatoes
and a peck of onions.

Give me five cents
worth of cinnamon,
five cents worth of
mace and ten cents
worth of ginger.

**Bušl bramborů a pek
cibule.**

**Dejte mi za pět centů
skořice, za pět cen-
tů kyvětu a za deset
centů zázvoru.**

*bušhelbrāmboroo ā peck
tsibūlč.*

*detyt me zā pyět sentoo
skorshitsč, zā pyět
sentoo kwyětu ā zā
desset sentoo zázvoru.*

VOCABULARY.

Note. Many articles sold in groceries are to be found under the heading "Drugs and medicines".

Cukr kouskový, tsūker košskovee,
crushed sugar;

,, **zrnkový, ts. zernkovee,** granu-
lated sugar;

,, **utlučený, ts. ütlüchenee,** pul-
verized sugar;

,, **hnědý, ts. hñedee,** brown sug-
ar;

káva pražená, kávā präžená, roast-
ed coffee;

,, **mletá, k. mlétá,** ground coffee

koření, n. korshēní, spice

nové koření, allspice

květ, m. kwyět, mace

dymíán, m. thyme

šafrán, m. shšfrán, Spanish saffron

rozinky, pl. f. raisins

drobné rozinky, currants

křížaly, pl. f. krsheežály, dried ap-
ples;

**sušené švestky, pl. f. súshěně shwest-
ky,** prunes

cibule, f. tsibūlč, onions

česnek, m. chessnek, garlic

zázvor loupaný, bleached ginger-
root;

zázvor neloupaný, unbleached gin-
ger-root;

**prášek na pečení, práshek nā pě-
cheñi,** baking powder;

kvasnice, pl. kwassnítsč } yeast;

droždí, n. droždēe

suché kvasnice, dry yeast;

lisované kv., compressed yeast;

salajka, f. sáläykă, saleratus

prací soda, f. prätsce sodă, washing
soda;

kornout, m. kornoút, paper cornet;

paklik, m. päkleek, package;

paklíček, m. päkleeček, small pack-
age;

balík, m. bäléek, bundle, parcel;

zabaliti, zábálit } to pack up

zapakovati, zápakovát } to pack up

zavázati, závázat, to tie up;

svázati, svázat, to bind or tie to-
gether.

Garments.*ODĚV.*

Dry goods have a ready sale.

I intend to start a dry goods store.

My brother has a clothing store.

He employs many tailors.

The tailor makes (*liter.* sews) clothes.

Thread and needle, scissors and shears, a thimble, a sad-iron and a press-board are his tools.

Nowadays much sewing is done on the machine.

The sewing machine is a useful invention.

It is an American invention.

I need a suit of clothes.
— I want a new suit.

Take my measure.

The cutter takes measure and cuts the cloth

What sort of stuff do you want?

Show me your patterns
This wears well.

Loketní zboží jde rychle na odbyt.

Hodlám založit stržní krám.

Můj bratr má oděvní krám.

Zaměstnávámnoho kreyčích.

Kreyčí šije šaty.

Nit a jehla, nůžky a velké nůžky, náprstek, cihlička a kozájsou jeho nástroje.

Dnes mnoho šije se na stroji.

Šicí stroj jest užitečný vynález.

Jest to americký vynález.

Potřebuju oblek. — Chci nový oblek.

Vemte mi míru.

Kraječ bere míru a nákrájí sukno.

Jakou látku chcete?

**Ukažte mi své vzory.
Tohle se dobrě nese.**

*loketníe zbožee dě rikhlě
nā odbyt.*

*hodlám založit strshiz-
níe krám.*

*můy bräter má od'evníe
krám.*

*zamyestnávámnoho
kreycheekh.*

kreychee she-yě shaty.

*nit a yehlă, nooshky a
velké nooshky, nápr-
stek, tsihlichkă a kō-
ză soň yehř nástroyě.*

*dness mnoho she-yě sě
nā stroyi.*

*shitsee stroy yest ūži-
technee vynález.*

*yest tō āmeritske vyná-
lez.*

*potrshěbūyū oblek. —
khtsi novee oblek.*

vemtě me meerū.

*kráyěch berě meerū a
nákráyee sūkno.*

yakoř látku khtsetě?

*ükashtě me své vzory
tohlě sě döbrshě nessę.*

How will you have your coat made(i.e.sewed)?

After the present fashion.

Try your coat on.

It pinches me under the arms—It is too tight.

It is too wide round the waist. — It makes folds.

The skirts are long enough.—It has pockets behind and breast-pockets.

Make me a pair of pants Get it done pretty soon; — take a good stuff.

Do you want lining in your pants?

I do not want any lining. — Without lining.

Jak chcete míti kabát ušitý?

Dle nynější mody.

Zkuste váš kabát.

Svírá pod pažema. — Je tuze těsný.

Je tuze volný v půli. — dělá faldy.

Šosy jsou dost dlouhé.

— **Má kapsy v zadu a kapsy na prsou.**

Udělejte mi pář kalhot

Zhotovte je hezky brzo; — vemte dobrou látku.

Checete podšivku do kalhot?

Nechci žádnou podšivku. — Bez podšívky.

yák khtsetě meet kábát ūshitee?

dlč nyñeyshee mody.

skústě vásh kábát.

sweerá pod păžemă. — yě toozě ťessnee.

yě toozě volnee fpooli. — dělá faldy.

shössy soū dost dlouhé.

— má kăpsy vzădă ā kăpsy nă persoū.

üđeleytě me pář kălhot.

zhotoflč yě hesskee berzō; — remtě dăbroū látku.

khtsetě podshifkū dč kălhot?

nekhtsi žádnoū podshifkū. — běs podshifky.

VOCABULARY.

Kabát, m. *kábát*, the coat

frak, m. *frák*, a dress-coat

svrchník, m. *sverkhñik*, an over-coat

zimník, m. *zimñik*, a greatcoat

plášt, m. *pláshť*, a cloak

kalhoty, pl. } pants, trousers;

spodky, pl. } pants, trousers; **nohavice,** f. *nohávitsě*, leg of the pants;

vesta, f. *vestă*, the vest

kazajka, f. *kăzăykă*, the jacket

bunda, f. *bündă*, the sack-coat

límeč, m. *leemets*, the collar

laple, f. *lăplě*, the lapel

rukáv, m. *rükáf*, the sleeve

šos, m. *shoss*, the skirt

šeď, m. *shěf*, the seam

štich, m. *shтих* } a stitch

steh, m. *stěh*

podšivka, f. *podshifkă*, the lining

záplata, f. *záplătă*, the patch

kapsa, f. *kăpsă*, the pocket
knoflík, m. *knofleek*, the button
knoflíková dírka, the button-hole.

Prádlo, n. linen, underclothing;
košile, f. *koshillĕ*, the shirt
spodní košile, *spodñee k.*, the under-
 shirt

podvlečky, pl. } the drawers
spodní kalhoty

punčochy, pl. f. *pŭnchokhy*, the
 stockings, the socks;

podvazky, pl. *podvăsky*, the garters

šandy, pl. f. *shăndы* } the

še, pl. f. *shlē* } suspenders

šátek, m. *shátek*, kerchief

š. na krk, sh. *nă kerk*, neckerchief

š. do kapsy, sh. *dă kăpsy*, pocket

handkerchief;

mašle na krk, *măshlę nă kerk*, a
 necktie.

Sukno, n. *săknă*, cloth, broadcloth;

samet, m. *sănmăt*, velvet

pliš, m. *plish*, plush

atlas, m. *ătlăss*, satin

hedvábí, n. *hedvábee*, silk

plátно, n. linen

kartoun, m. *kartoň*, cotton, print;

šňůra, f. *shňooră*, cord

civka, f. *tsifkă*, a spool

klubko, n. *klübko*, a ball

přadýnko, n. *prshădeenko*, a skein

hrubá nit, f. *hrübá ñit*, a coarse
 thread;

tenká nit, a fine thread;

hrubá jehla, f. h. *yěhlă*, a coarse
 needle;

tenká jehla, a fine needle;

štěpovací jehla, *shtepovătsee yěhlă*,
 darning needle;

drát (na pletení), m. knitting needle;

stříhati, *strshihăt*, to cut with a pair
 of scissors;

žehliti, *žehlit*, to iron.

Klobouk, m. *kloboŭk*, the hat

ženský klobouk, a bonnet, a lady's
 hat;

čepec, m. *chěpets*, the hood

čepice, f. *chěpitsě*, the cap

cilindr, m. *tsilinder*, a beaver, a
 silk hat;

nízký klobouk, *ñeeskee kloboŭk*, a
 low hat.

Švadlena, f. *shvădlenă*, a needle-
 woman

šíčka, f. *shichkă*, a sewing-girl

modistka, f. a milliner

modnízboží, *modñee zbožee*, millinery

šaty, pl. *shăty*, a dress

život, m. *život*, the waist, the bust;

šnerovačka, f. *shñerovăchkă*, the
 corset, the bodice;

spodnička, f. *spodñichkă*, the petti-
 coat

košile (ženská), *koshillĕ*, the chemise

karnýr, m. *karneer*, a flounce

karnýrek, m. a ruffle

pentle, f. *pentlĕ*, a ribbon

mašle, f. *măshlę*, a sash

mašlička, f. *măshlichkă*, a bow
klička, f. *klichkă*, a loop
krajky, pl. *krăky*, lace
obrubá, f. *obrăbă*, hem, border;
pinta, f. *pintă*, belt
závoj, m. *závoy* {
flór, m. *floor*, } the veil
rouška, f. *roúshkă*, }
černý flór, *chernee floor*, crape

týl, m. *teel*, mosquito bar;
pera na klobouk, pl. plumes
perka, pl. tips
rukavičky, pl. f. *rükävich-ky*, } gloves
rukavice, pl. f. *rükävitsë*,
pár rukavíc, *pár rükävits*, a pair of
gloves;
štucel, m. *shtütsell*, a muff.

Shoemaking.

OBUVNICTVÍ.

Obuv, f. *obúv*, footgear
obuvník, *obúvñik* } shoemaker
švec, *shwets* }
obuvnický krám, *obúv-nitskee krám* } boot and
ševoovský krám, *shef tsofskee k.* } shoe store;
bota, (pl. *boty*), f. *bottă*, boot
střevíce, (pl. *střevice*), m. *shtrshě-vets*, shoe
pár bot, a pair of boots;
pár střeviců, a pair of shoes;
botky (*ženské*), pl. gaiters
pantofle, pl. *păntoflă*, slippers
svrchní střevíce, *swerkhñee strshě-vitsë*, overshoes.

Holínka, f. *holeenkă*, leg of a boot;
podešev, m. *poděshef*, the sole

kramflek, m. } the heel
podpatek, m. }
nárt, m. the vamp
přaska, f. *prshässkă*, the buckle
kanice, f. *kăñitsë*, shoe-lace, shoe-
string;
floky, pl. pegs
nejtky, pl. *neytky*, brass nails
šroubek, m. *shroúbek*, a screw
lastyng, m. serge
dratev, f. *drătef*, waxed thread;
potěh, m. *pōtēh*, strap
knejp, m. *kněyp*, knife
kladivo, n. *klăd'ivă*, hammer
kopyto, n. *kopytă*, last
štipee, *shťiptsë*, a pair of pincers;
nádobí ševoovské, n. *nádöbee shef-tsofské*, findings
kůže, f. *koožë*, leather.

Diverse trades. ROZLIČNÁ ŘEMESLA.

Barvíř, *barveersh*, dyer
barvíř domů, house painter
bednář, *bednársh*, cooper
cihlář, *tsihlársh*, brickmaker
cukrář, *tsúkrársh*, confectioner
čalouník, *cháloʊñik*, upholsterer
doutníkář, *doútñikársh*, cigar-maker
dlaždič, *dláždīch*, paver
formář, *formársh*, moulder
hodinář, *hod'inársh*, watchmaker
havíř, *háveersh*, miner
kameník, *kámeñik*, stone-cutter
klempíř, *klempeersh*, tinner
knihař, *kñihärsh*, bookbinder
kloboučník, *kloboučhñik*, hatter
kolář, *kolársh*, wagon-maker
kotlář, *kotlársh*, boiler-maker
kovář, *kovársh*, blacksmith
koželuh, *koželüh*, tanner
kožešník, *kožeshñik*, furrier
krejčí, *kreychee*, tailor
kufrář, *küfrársh*, trunk-maker
lakýrník, *läkeerñik*, laquerer
litec, *litets*, founder
malíř, *mäleersh*, painter
mydlář, *mydlársh*, soap-maker
mlynář, *mlynársh*, miller
natěrač, *näťeräch*, painter
obuvník, (*švec*), *obúvñik*, (*shvets*),
shoemaker
pekař, *pekarsh*, baker
plynovodník, gas-fitter
puškař, *pushkarsh*, gunsmith
řezník, *rshězñik*, butcher

rybář, *rybársh*, fisherman
rytec, *rytets*, engraver
sazeč, *sázech*, typesetter
sedlář, *sedlársh*, saddler
sekerník, *sekerñik*, millwright
sládek, brewer
sochař, *sokharsh*, sculptor
stavitel, builder
strojník, *stroyñik*, machinist
tesař, *tessarsh*, carpenter
tiskař, *tisskarsh*, printer
tkadlec, *kădlets*, weaver
truhlář, (*stolař*), *tráhlársh*, cabinet-maker
zahradník, *záhradñik*, gardner
zámečník, *zámechñik*, locksmith
zedník, *zedñik*, stone-mason, brick-layer;
zlatník, *zlătnik*, goldsmith.

Barvířství, n. *barveershstwee*, the dyer's trade;
bednářství, n. *bednárshstwee*, the cooper's trade;
doutníkářství, *doútñikárstwee*, cigar-making;
krejčovství, *kreychofstwee*) the tailor's trade, tai-
krejčovina, *kreychowină* loring;
ševcovství, *shéftsof-* stwee, the shoemaker's trade,
ševcovina, *shéftsovina* shoemaking;
sazečství, *sázechstwee*, type-setting; etc.

On the farm. NA FARMĚ.

I want to go on a farm.
Do you want to be a
farmer?

Yes; I want to buy
land.

What is land worth in
this neighborhood?

What are improved
farms worth?

Fifty to sixty dollars an
acre, and over.

How is the soil? — The
soil is good, fertile.

Good land all over.

What is the character
(or "lay") of the land?

The land is level, (flat,
broken, hilly).

The land is loamy, —
sandy.

Black loam, — mixed
with sand.

Gravel at the bottom, —
in some places clay.

Rich land; — poor land.

That land is bad —
swampy; — it has no
drainage.

That land looks poor.
— Everything grows
here; — but it wants
manuring.

Chci na farmu.
Chcete býtí farmerem?

**Ano; chci koupiti po-
zemek.**

**Co stojí pozemky v tom-
to okoli?**

**Co stojí vzdělané far-
my?**

**Padesát až šedesát dol-
larů akr, i více.**

**Jaká je půda? — Půda
je dobrá, úrodná.**

Samá dobrá zem.

Jaká je poloha?

**Půda je rovná, (plochá,
lomená, kopčitá).**

**Zem je hlinitá, — pís-
čitá.**

**Černá hlína, — smícha-
ná s pískem.**

**Štěrk vespod, — někde
jíl (mazník).**

**Bohatá půda; — chudá
půda.**

**Ten pozemek je špat-
ný, — bahnitý; —
nemá odpad.**

**Ta půda vypadá hubená. — Všechno zde
rostě; — ale musí se
hnouti.**

khtsi nā farmū.

khtsētē beet farmerem?

*ānō; khtsi koǔpit pōzě-
mek.*

*tsō stoyee pozemky ftom-
tō okolee?*

*tsō stoyee vzděláné fur-
my?*

*păděssát āsh shěděssát
dollāroo āk'er, eveetsě.*

*yáká yě poodā? — poodā
yě dōbrá, oorodná.*

sámá dōbrá zem.

yáká yě polohā?

*poodā yě rovná, (plokhá,
lomená, kopchitá).*

*zem yě hlīnitá, — pees-
čitá.*

*cherná hleenā, — smee-
khäná speeskiem.*

*sh̄terk vespod, — ūnegdě
yeel (mázñik).*

*bohātā poodā; — khūdá
poodā.*

*ten pozemek yě shpätnee
— băhñitee,; — němá
odpād.*

*tā pooda vypadá hubená. — fsh̄ekhnō zdě
rostě; — ālē mūsee sč
hnouit.*

How will the harvest
be? — good? — bad?

How does grain look? —
Grain shows a good
stand.—Wheat stools
out thickly.

Rye is in bloom.—Bar-
ley is heading.

Wheat has lodged;— the
rainstorm laid it flat.

It has a good ear;—the
berries are plump.

Corn is poor; — early
corn looks better
than late corn.

Have you a great deal
of corn? — We have
twenty acres of it.

We planted it towards
the end of May. — I
think it will pick up.

Our neighbor planted
corn in the sod. —
How does it grow? —
Poorly.

How is the pasture? —
Poor.

Everything is parched
up. — Hay will be
short.

Do you raise a great
deal of stock?

About fifty head.

What do you feed (to
your stock)?

Jaká bude úroda?—do-
brá? — špatná?

Jak stojí obilí?— Obilí
stojí dobře. — Pše-
nice nasazuje hustě.

Žito je ve květu.—Ječ-
men vymetá.

Pšenice lehla; — ten
liják ji položil.

Má dobrý klas;— zrno
je jadrné.

Kuknřice je špatná; —
ranná korna je lepší
než pozdní.

Máte mnoho korný? —
Máme jí dvacet a
krů.

Sázeli jsme ji ke konci
máje. — Já myslím
že se sebere.

Soused sázel kornu do
drnu. — Jak roste?
— Mizerně.

Jaká je pastva? — Hu-
bená.

Všecko je vyprahlé. —
Sena bude málo.

Chováte mnoho dobyt-
ka?

Asi padesát kusů.

Čím krmíte?

yáká būdě oorodā?—dō-
brá? — shpätná?

yák stoyee obilee? — o-
bilee stoyee dōbrsh̄.
— pshěñitsě năssăzű-
yě hüssle.

žitō yě vě kwyetü. —
yechmen vymetá.

pshěñitsě lehlă;—ten li-
yák ye položil.

má dōbree klăss;—zer-
nō yě yăderné.

kükürshitsě yeshpätná;
— răna kornă yě lep-
shee nesh pozdñee.

mátě mnohō korný? —
mámě ye dwătset ā-
kroo.

sázelli smě ye kě kontsi
máyč. — yá misleem
že sě seberě.

soūsed sázel kornă dō
dernă. — yák roste?
— mizerñe.

yáká yě păstvă? — hū-
běná.

fshëtsko yě vyprahlé.—
sennă būdě málō.

khovátě mnohō dōbyt-
kă?

ăssi pădessát küssoo.
cheem kermeeč?

What do you feed your stock upon?	Co dáváte dobytku žráti?	tsř dávátič dōbytku žrát?
What do you feed to your horses.	Čím krmíte koně?	cheem kermeetě koñe?
Do you fatten your stock for the butcher (<i>bíter</i> . ‘for meat’)?	Krmíte dobytek na maso?	kermeetě dōbytek nă măssō?
Last year I fattened fifteen head of beef-steers.	Loni vykrmil jsem patnáct volů na maso.	loñi vykermil sem pătnátst voloo nă măssō.
I feed many hogs for the market.	Krmím mnoho prasat pro trh.	kermeem mnohō prăssăt pro terh.
I have a stock farm not far from here.	Mám dobytčí farmu nedaleko odtud.	mám dōbitchee farmă nedăleko otüd.
There is a creek on it; — but now it is almost dry.	Je na ní potok; — ale teď je skoro suchý.	yě nă ñee pōtok; — ále teď yě skorō sūkhee.
This is a dry year (a dry season);—there is no moisture (no rain).	Je suchý rok; — není vláhy.	yě sūkhee rok; — neyñi vláhy.
A wet year(wet season) is better.	Mokrý rok je lepší.	mokree rok yě lepshee.
There is a great deal of insects this year.	Je síla hmyzu letos.	yě seelă hmiză letoss.
Grasshoppers we never had;— neither did we have chinch bugs.	Kobylky nikdy jsme neměli; — polní štěnice také ne.	kobylky ñigdy smě němyelli; — pollñee shťenice tăké ně.
Farming implements cost a great deal.	Rolnické náradí stojí mnoho.	rolñitské nárshăllée stoyee mnohō.
At present we have machines for everything	Ted' máme stroje na všecko.	ted' mámě stroye nă fshëtskō.
Farming is improving.	Rolnictví se zvelebuje.	rolñitstvее sě zvelébùyě.

VOCABULARY.

Note. From the preceding lessons the student is familiar with a great many words and phrases relating to agriculture. To repeat the same in the following vocabulary would be a waste of space.

LAND and HARVEST.

Půda a žen.

Dolina,	f. <i>dollinā</i>	bottomland
úpad,	m. <i>oopăd</i>	
výšina,	f. <i>veeshinā</i> ,	upland
svah,	m. <i>svăh</i> ,	slope
stráň,	f. <i>stráñ</i> ,	bluff
rokle,	f. <i>rocklē</i> ,	ravine, gully;
mez,	f. <i>měz</i> ,	boundary, line;
pěšina,	f. <i>pyěshinā</i>	path
stezka,	f. <i>steskă</i>	
lávka,	f. <i>láfkă</i> ,	footbridge
mostek,	m. <i>mőstek</i>	little bridge
můstek,	m. <i>moostek</i>	
kanál,	m. <i>kănál</i> ,	culvert
strouha,	f. <i>stroūhă</i> ,	ditch
břeh,	m. <i>brshěh</i> ,	bank
hráz (hráze),	f. <i>hráz</i> ,	dam.

Orati,	<i>orăt</i> ,	to plow
vláčeti,	<i>vláchet</i> ,	to harrow
přeorati,	<i>prshěorăt</i> ,	to backset
přivláčeti,	<i>prshi-vláchet</i> ,	to scour
oráč,	m. <i>orách</i> ,	plowman
brázda,	f. <i>brázdă</i> ,	furrow
kolej,	f. <i>kolley</i> ,	rut
hnojiti,	<i>hnoyit</i> ,	to manure

hnojivo,	n. <i>hnoyivō</i> ,	manure,
hnůj,	m. <i>hnooy</i>	
mrvá,	f. <i>mervă</i>	dung;
zaseti,	<i>zăsset</i> ,	to sow, to seed (with);
zaseto,	<i>zăssetō</i> ,	sown, seeded;
sázeti,	<i>sázet</i> ,	to plant
zasázeti,	<i>zăssázet</i> ,	
zasázeno,	<i>zăssázetō</i> ,	planted
žíti,	<i>žeet</i> ,	to reap, to mow;
požíti,	<i>požeet</i>	
sekati,	<i>sekăt</i>	to cut
posekati,	<i>pösekăt</i>	
skliditi,	<i>sklid'it</i> ,	to harvest
sláma,	f. <i>slámă</i> ,	straw
snop,	m. <i>snöp</i> ,	sheaf
vázati,	<i>vázăt</i> ,	to bind
stoh,	m. <i>stöh</i> ,	stack
stohovati,	<i>stöhovăt</i> ,	to stack
kupa sena,	<i>küpă sennă</i> ,	hay-stack
kupka sena,	<i>küpkă s.</i> ,	hay-rick
voziti,	<i>cozit</i>	to haul,
svážeti,	<i>svážet</i>	
droliti se,	<i>drolitsă</i> ,	to shed, to shell;
zralý, á,	é <i>zrălee</i> ,	ripe
přezralý, á,	é <i>prshězrălee</i> ,	over-ripe.

PLANTS.

Rostliny.

Tráva,	f. <i>trávă</i> ,	grass
plevel,	m. <i>plëvell</i> ,	weeds
pleti,	<i>plet</i> ,	to weed
koukol,	<i>koükol</i> ,	cockle
jetel,	m. <i>yetell</i> ,	clover
pohanka,	f. <i>pohänkă</i> ,	buckwheat
proso,	n. <i>prossō</i> ,	millet

hrách,	m. <i>hrákh</i> ,	pease
boby,	<i>böby</i>	beans
fazole,	<i>fäzolë</i>	
čočka,	f. <i>chochkă</i> ,	lentils
řepa,	f. <i>rshěpă</i>	beets
řípa,	f. <i>rsheepă</i>	
řepa pro dobytek,		rutabaga

vodnatka, f. turnips
 keř, m. *kersh*, shrub
 živý plot, živee plot, hedge
 háj, m. *háy*, grove
 houština, f. *hoúština*, thicket,
 copse;
 chrastí, n. *khrásťi*, brushwood,
 undergrowth;

pařez, m. *párshés*, stump
 klada, f. *kládă*, trunk
 větev, f. *vyčtef*, branch, bough;
 větička, f. *vyčtvičkă*, twig
 ratolest, f. spring
 kácteti stromy, kátset} to fell(trees)
 porážeti ,, porážet} to fell(trees)

TEAMS and DOMESTIC ANIMALS.

Potah a domáci zvířata.

Potah, m. *pörtäh*, a team
 pář koní, pár koñee, a pair of horses
 pář volů, pár voloo, a yoke of oxen
 pář mladých volů, a pair of steers;
 na koni, ná koñi, on horseback;
 jeti na koni, yet ná koñi, to ride a
 horse;
 jeti s koñma, yet skoñmá, to drive
 horses;
 zapřahnouti, záprsháhnoút, to har-
 ness;
 uvázati, ūvázít, to hitch
 náklad, m. náklid, the load
 nakládati, nákládát, to load
 skládati, skládát, to unload
 uváznouti, ūváznoút, to get fast, to
 stick fast;
 splašti se, splašhit sě, to run away
 lekatí se, lekát sě, to shy
 zarážlivý kùn, zarážlivee kooñ, a
 balky horse;
 zlý kùn, zlee kooñ, a vicious horse;
 klus, m. *klüss*, trot
 krok, m. pace
 krmiti, *kermit*, to feed
 napojiti, nápojít, to water.

Klisna, f. *klissná* } brood mare;
 hřebice, f. *hrshébitsé* }
 hřebná, *hrshébná*, with foal;
 hříbě, n. *hrsheebyé*, foal
 hřebeček, m. *hrshébček*, colt
 hřebička, f. *hrshébichkă*, filly
 eucati, *tsütsát*, to suckle
 eucák, m. *tsütsák*, a suckling
 hřebec, m. *hrshébets*, } stallion
 hengst, m. *hengst* } stallion

Kráva, f. *krávă*, cow
 dojnice, f. *doyñitsé*, milch cow;
 jalovice, f. *yállovitsé*, heifer
 tele, n. *tellé*, calf
 bulík, m. *bulleek*, bull calf;
 jalovička, f. *yállovichkă*, heifer calf
 roční, *rochñee*, yearling
 stelná, *stelná*, with calf;
 jalová, *yállová*, farrow
 pometati, *pömetät*, to slink, to slip
 the calf;
 běhati se, *byěhát sě*, to be bulling;
 to want the bull;
 býk, m. *beek* } bull
 bejk, *běyk* } bull

Ovce, f. *oftsě*, sheep
bahnice, f. *băhñitsě*, ewe
beran, m. *berău*, ram, buck;
jehně, n. *yěhñē*, lamb
bahnění, n. *băhñenī*, lambing season
vlna, f. *velnă*, wool
stříhání, n. *strsheelháñi*, shearing.

Prase, n. *prăssě* } pig, hog;
vepr, m. *veprsh* } pig, hog;
kanec, m. *kănets*, boar
svině, f. *sweeně*, sow
sele, n. *sellě* } sucking
podsvinče, n. *podsvinchě* } pig.

Mezek, m. *mězek*, mule
osel, m. *ősell*, donkey
koza, f. *kőză*, goat, she-goat;
kozel, m. *kőzell*, he-goat
kůzle, n. *koozlě*, kid
pes, m. *pess*, dog
čuba, f. *chřbă*, bitch
štěně, n. *shťeňe*, whelp

TOOLS and
Nástroje

Vůz, m. *vooz*, wagon
kolو, *kollă*, wheel
kolečko, n. *kollechkă*, wheelbarrow
ráf, m. tire
náboj, m. *náboy*, hub
náprava, f. *nápravă*, axletree
špice, f. *shpitsě*, spokes
voj, f. *voy*, pole
vojky, *voyky*, shafts
hamovák, m. *hămovák*, brake
pera, pl. n. *peră*, springs
sedadlo, n. *sedădlă*, seat

kočka, f. *kăchkă*, cat
kocour, m. *kotsoř*, tom-cat.
Drůbež, f. *drooběsh*, poultry
slepice, f. *slepitsě*, hen, chicken;
kvočna, f. *kvōchnă*, clucking hen;
kuře, n. *koorshě*, chick, young
chicken;
kohout, m. *kohoūt*, rooster
kachma, f. *kăkhnă* } duck
kačena, *kăchenă*, } duck
kačer, m. *kăcher*, drake
husa, f. *hüssă*, goose
houser, m. *hoüsser*, gander
housata, pl. *hoüssati*, goslings
krocan, m. *krotsă*, turkey-cock
krúta, f. *krootă*, turkey-hen
páv, m. *páf*, peacock
pávice, f. *pávitsě*, peahen
hnízdo, n. *hñeedzđ*, nest
nesti vejee, *nest veystsě*, to lay eggs;
lhínoti se, *leehnoūt sě*, to hatch.

MACHINES.
a stroje.

kšír, m. *ksheer*, harness
oprať, f. *oprăt*, line
sedlo, n. *sedlă*, saddle
uzda, f. *oozdă*, bridle
ohlávka, f. *ohláfkă*, halter
popruh, m. *poprüh*, girt
čabraka, f. *chăbrăkă*, horse-cloth
třemen, m. *trshĕmen*, stirrup
hřebíče, *hrshě-beeltsě*, curry-comb
bič, m. *bitch*, whip
bičiště, n. *bitchishťe*, whip-stick.

Saně, pl. *săñe*, sleigh
sanice, f. *săñitsë*, runner, (also:
 sleighing);
korba, f. *korbă*, cutter
řezačka, f. *rshězăchkă*, straw-cutter,
 feed-cutter;
řezanka, f. *rshězánkă*, chopped
 straw;
brány, pl. harrow, drag;
válee, m. *válets*, roller
pluh, m. *plooh*, plow
radlice, f. *rädlitsë*, plowshare
kleče, pl. *kléchë*, handles
krajadlo, n. *kráyädlö*, coulter
řetěz, m. *rshěťez*, chain
pospěchy, pl. *pospyčky* } culty-
podrývač, m. *podreevach* } vator
kosa, f. *kossă*, scythe
motyka, f. hoe
špičatá motyka, *shpichătă* m., pick-
 axe
rýč, f. *reech*, spade
lopata, f. *lopătă*, shovel
hrábě, pl. *hrábyě*, rake
hrabati, *hrábit*, to rake
podávky, pl. *podáfkы*, hayfork
vidle, pl. *vidlë*, pitchfork
seykra, f. *sekyră*, axe
seykryka, f. hatchet

pila, f. <i>pillă</i>	<i>pillkă</i>	} saw
pilka, <i>pillkă</i>		
ruční pilka, <i>răchñee pillkă</i>	hand saw	
nebozez, m. bore, auger;		
Mlatidlo, <i>mlăťidlö</i>	<i>mlăťichkă</i>	} threshing
mlatička, <i>mlăťichkă</i>		
mlátití, <i>mlăťit</i> , to thresh		
mlácení, n. <i>mlátseñi</i> , threshing		
mlatič, m. <i>mlăťich</i> , thresher		
förf, m. <i>föfer</i> , fanning mill;		
sečka, f. <i>sechkă</i> , grain-drill		
žací stroj, m. <i>žătsee stroy</i> , mower		
sekací stroj, <i>sekătsee stroy</i> , reaper		
samovazač, m. <i>sămovăzăch</i> , self- binder		
rám, m. frame		
sýto, n. <i>seetö</i> , sieve		
řešeto, n. <i>rshěshëtö</i> , screen		
řemen, m. <i>rshěmen</i>	<i>pruh</i>	} belt
pruh, m. <i>prooh</i>		
tyč, f. <i>tich</i> , rod		
panty, pl. m. <i>pănty</i> , hinges		
zuby, pl. m. <i>züby</i>	<i>păltsë</i>	} cogs
palce, <i>păltsë</i>		
žlábek, m. <i>žlábek</i> , spout		
mlynek, m. <i>mleynek</i> , mill		
loupač (na kukuřici), m. <i>loüpăch</i> , corn-sheller;		
loupati, <i>loüpăt</i> , to shell.		



PART IV.

Bohemian grammar.

1. ORTHOGRAPHY.

SECTION 1.—The full Bohemian alphabet, as given in the first Part, contains the following vowels : **a**, **á**, — **e**, **é**, **ě**, — **i**, **í**, **y**, **ý**, — **o**, **ó**, — **u**, **ú**, **ů**.

The other letters are consonants. There is only one diphthong: **ou**, **oů**. When **ou** occurs in a compound word, ending one and beginning the next syllable, it is not a diphthong and must be divided: **použiti** (**po-užiti**), **př-ůžit**, to use, to make use off; **samouk** (**samo-uk**), **sámo-ůk**, a self-educated man.

An accute accent (or comma) over a vowel marks a long sound: **kam**, **kám**, where to; **kámen**, **kámen**, a stone.

A ring over the vowel **u** (**ü**) is also a prolongation mark: **sup**, **süp**, a hawk; **sül**, **sool**, the salt.

When a word begins with a long **u**, the accute accent is used: **úrok**, **oorok**, the interest. In such cases the vowel **ú** may be and frequently is changed into the diphthong **ou**: **ourok**, **oůrok**.

The accented vowel **ě** has always the short sound of **yě**: **svět**, **swyět**, the world.

The vowels **a**, **o**, **u**, **y**, are called *hard*; the vowels **e**, **ě**, **i**, are called *soft*.

SECTION 2.—The consonants are divided into three classes :

hard consonants, — **h**, **ch**, **k**, **r**, **d**, **n**, **t**;

soft consonants, — **c**, **č**, **č'**, **j**, **ñ**, **ř**, **š**, **ť**, **ž**;

neutral consonants, — **b**, **f**, **l**, **m**, **p**, **s**, **v**, **z**.

After the hard consonants the hard vowel **y** is always used :

hynu , <i>hinnū</i> , I am perishing;	výdyt', <i>dýt'</i> , <i>dít'</i> , but, to be sure;
chyba , f. <i>khibā</i> , a mistake, a fault;	nynčko (nyní) , <i>ninchkō</i> , now, at present;
kyt , m. <i>kit</i> , putty	
ryba , f. <i>ribā</i> , a fish	tykev , f. <i>tiukef</i> , a pumpkin.

When the sound is long, an accented **ý** is used : **hýbati**, *heebăt*, to move; **tichý (á, é)**, *tikhee*, quiet; **rýti**, *reet*, to spade, to dig, to root; **dým**, m. *deem*, smoke; **týrati**, *teerăt*, to misuse, to torment.

In such cases the vowel **ý** is usually changed into **ej (ěy)**, in common pronunciation : **hejbati**, *hĕybăt*; **tichej**, *tikhey*; **rejti**, *rĕyt*; **dejm, děym**; **tejrati**, *tĕyrăt*.

Words derived from foreign languages, also foreign names, make an exception, their original spelling being retained : **historie**, *historiě*, history; **Amerika**, **Riga**, etc.

The soft consonants are always followed by the soft vowel **i** (or **í**, when the sound is long) :

cit , m. <i>tsit</i> , the feeling
čin , m. <i>chin</i> , the deed
divoký*), <i>d'ivokee</i> , wild
jistý , <i>yistee</i> , certain
nie , <i>ñits</i> , nothing
řimsa , f. <i>rshimsă</i> , a cornice
šikovný , <i>shikovnee</i> , smart, clever;
tisk , m. <i>ťisk</i> , the printing
život , m. <i>život</i> , the life

cíl , m. <i>tseel</i> , the goal
číslo , n. <i>cheesslo</i> , the number
díl , m. <i>d'eel</i> , a part
jísti , <i>yeest</i> , to eat
hníti , <i>hñeet</i> , to rot
říci , <i>rsheetsi</i> , to say
šíti , <i>sheet</i> , to sew
tíže , f. <i>ťeežě</i> , the weight
žíla , f. <i>žeelă</i> , the vein.

The neutral vowels are followed by the soft **i** or **í**, with the following exceptions :

b : **aby**, *by*, that; **bych**, *bys*, etc, that I, that thou, etc.; **bylina**, f. the plant; **bystrý**, quick, sharp; **býti**, to be; **kobyla**, the mare; **obyčej**, m. the custom.

I : **lysý**, bald; **lysina**, f. bald spot, or white spot; **lýko**, n. the bast; **lyska**, f. the coot; **mlýn**, m. the mill; **oplývati**, to abound; **pely-**

*) The soft consonants **đ**, **ñ**, **ť** lose their accent, when followed by **i**, **í** or **ě**, and are written simply **d**, **n**, **t**. See Part I, section 2.

něk, m. the wormwood; **plyn**, m. the gas; **plynouti**, to glide; **plytvati**, to waste; **polykati**, to swallow; **slyšeti**, to hear; **vzlykati**, to sob.

m : **hmuz**, m. the insects; **my**, we; **mýdlo**, n. the soap; **mýliti**, to mislead, to confuse; **mýliti se**, to mistake; **omyl**, m. a mistake; **mysl**, f. the mind; **mysliti**, to think; **myš**, f. the mouse; **mýti**, to wash; **smyčec**, m. the fiddle-stick; **smykatí**, to drag; **zamykati**, to lock up.

n : **nyní**, now.

p : **kopyto**, n. the hoof; **netopýr**, m. the bat; **pýcha**, f. the pride; **pykati**, to regret; **pyl**, m. the pollen; **pýr**, m. the quick-grass; **pysk**, the lip; **pytel**, the sack; **třpytiti**, to glitter; **zptyovati**, to search, to inquire.

s : **osyka**, f. the aspen; **osypky**, pl. the measles; **posýlati**, to send; **syčeti**, to hiss; **syehravý**, chilly; **syn**, m. the son; **sypati**, to pour; **sýpka**, f. the granary, the bin; **sýr**, m. the cheese; **syrový**, raw; **syrup**, the syrup; **sysel**, m. the gopher; **syt, nasycen**, full, satiated.

v : **povyk**, m. the noise; **vy**, you; **vydra**, f. the otter; **výheñ**, f. the forge; **vykýr**, m. the dormer-window; **výr**, m. the horn-owl; **vysoký**, high; **výti**, to howl; **vyza**, the sturgeon; **zvyk**, the habit; **žvýkati**, to chew.

z : **brzy**, soon; **jazyk**, the tongue; **nazývati**, to call, to name.

SECTION 3.—As in English, the spelling makes sometimes a great difference of meaning, though the pronunciation may be identical. For instance :

býti, *beet'i* or *beet* (colloquially *běyt*), to be

mýti, *meet'i* or *meet* (colloq. *měyt*), to wash

my, *me*, we

vy, *ve*, you

výr, *veer*, (colloq. *rěyr*), the horn-owl

výti, *veet'i* or *veet* (colloq. *rěyt*), to howl

bítí, *beet'i* or *beet*, to beat

mítí, *meet'i* or *meet*, to have

mi, *me*, to me

ví, *vee*, he knows

vír, *veer*, the whirl-wind

vítí, *veet'i* or *veet*, to wind.

SECTION 4.—The Bohemian verb shows a distinction of gender in the past tense*). In the plural, there is only an orthographical distinction

*) See Note 2, Lesson IX.

between the masculine and *feminine* gender, the latter always terminating in **y**. For instance :

<i>mASCULINE</i>	<i>fEMININE</i>
byli jsme , we were	byly jsme , we were
byli , they were	byly , they were
měli jsme , we had	měly jsme , we had
měli , they had	měly , they had
muži měli , the men had;	ženy měly , the women had
hoši viděli , the boys saw;	holky viděly , the girls saw.

The same is true of verbs relating to *inanimate* nouns of the masculine gender, or names of lifeless things : **stromy vyrostly**, the trees grew up; **domy shořely**, the houses burned down.

SECTION 5. — The general rule of Bohemian spelling is : A sound for every letter and a letter for every sound, and no silent letters*). From this rule there are but few exceptions. In some words the initial letter **j** is silent :

jdu , <i>dū</i> , I go	jmeno , n. <i>menō</i> , the name
jsem , <i>sem</i> , I am	jmenovati , <i>menōvāt</i> , to name
jsme , <i>smě</i> , we are	jmění , n. <i>myčni</i> , the property.

The letter **d** is also silent in a few cases: **deera**, *tserā*, the daughter, **srdee**, n. *sertsě*, the heart.

In some cases the letters **k**, **s**, **t**, **v**, **z**, **ž** modify their sound in order to facilitate pronunciation:

kdo , who, — <i>gdō</i>	v peci , in the oven, — <i>spetsi</i> ;
kdy , when, — <i>gdy</i>	bez peněz , without money, — <i>běs</i>
s bohem , farewell, — <i>zbōhem</i>	<i>pěñez</i> ;
kletba , f. the curse, — <i>kledbā</i>	zpívati , to sing, — <i>speevāt</i> .

SECTION 6. — The prepositions **s** and **z** (**se**, **ze**) are governed by the following rule :

When the tendency is *from above downwards* **s** or **se** is used: **spadl s okna**, **s nebe**, **se stromu**, *spǎdl soknā*, *snebě*, *sě stromě*, — he fell from the window, from heaven, from the tree.

*) See Part III, Note 1.

When the tendency is from below upwards, or from the inside to the outside, **z** or **ze** is employed : **vylezu ze studně**, I shall crawl up from the well; **vyndal jsem peníze z kapsy**, (*skápsy*), I took the money from my pocket, or out of my pocket; **vyskočím z okna ven**, I shall jump out of the window.

SECTION 7. — It is a vulgar English custom to place the sound of **h** before initial vowels : *heye* (eye), *Hengland* (England). In Bohemian a similar vulgar custom obtains, namely that of placing the letter **v** before an initial **o**. We hear, for instance :

von ,	instead of on (he)	vokno ,	instead of okno (window)
vona ,	" " ona (she)	voko ,	" " oko , (eye)
vono ,	" " ono (it)	vosel ,	" " osel , (ass).

This vulgarity must be carefully avoided in writing as well as speaking. On the other hand, when the letter **v** belongs to the root of the word, care must be taken not to omit the same :

voda, water; **voják**, soldier; **vosk**, wax; **voskovati**, to wax.

SECTION 8. — In writing, words have often to be divided in syllables. The principal rules to be observed are the following :

a) A consonant standing between two vowels belongs to the next syllable : **o-ba**, both; **o-ko**, the eye; **kla-da**, the log.

b) A consonant succeeding the letter **l** or **r** also belongs to the next syllable : **vl-na**, *velnă*, the wool; **hr-dlo**, *herdlō*, the throat.

c) Two vowels, if they do not form the diphthong **ou**, are always divided : **Ma-ri-e**, *măriē*.

d) Compound words are divided according to their component parts : **bez-hlavý** (**bez-hla-vý**), headless; **roz-ličný** (**roz-lič-ný**), different; **okamžik**, the twinkling of an eye; a moment.

Other rules are less important and are sometimes sinned against even by the best writers.

SECTION 9. — The use of capital letters follows the same rules as in English, excepting that adjectives derived from the names of countries or nations do not, in Bohemian, commence with a capital letter (**anglický**, English; **český**, Bohemian; etc.); neither does the personal pronoun **já** (I) use a capital letter.

2. ETYMOLOGY.

SECTION 1. — The Bohemian language has seven cases, the nature of which is sufficiently explained in Note 5, on page 82.

SECTION 2. — The declension of Bohemian nouns differs in regard to *gender*, and also in regard to *termination*.

Nouns of the masculine gender, moreover, form two classes : (a) names of living creatures, or *animate* nouns; (b) names of lifeless beings, or *inanimate* nouns.

According to this division there is also a slight difference in their declension.

DECLENSION OF MASCULINE NOUNS.

SECTION 3. — The first declension of nouns of the masculine gender is fully shown by the following examples*):

	Animate	Inanimate
	Singular number.	
<i>nominative</i>	syn, the son	strom, the tree
<i>genitive</i>	syn-a, of the son;	strom-u, of the tree;
<i>dative</i>	syn-u, -ovi, to the son	strom-u, to the tree;
<i>accusative</i>	syn-a, the son	strom, the tree
<i>vocative</i>	syn-e**), son !	strom-e, tree !
<i>locative</i>	syn-u, -ovi, (in) the son	strom-u, (in) the tree;
<i>instrumental</i>	syn-em, with the son;	strom-em, with the tree.
	Plural number.	
<i>nom.</i>	syn-i, -ové, the sons	strom-y***), the trees
<i>gen.</i>	syn-ü, -üv, of the sons;	strom-ü, -üv, of the trees;
<i>dat.</i>	syn-üm, to the sons;	strom-üm, to the trees;
<i>acc.</i>	syn-y, the sons	strom-y, the trees
<i>voc.</i>	syn-i, -ové, sons !	strom-y***), trees !
<i>loc.</i>	syn-ech, (in) the sons;	strom-ech, (in) the trees;
<i>inst.</i>	syn-y, with the sons;	strom-y, with the trees.

*) Compare Note 3, on page 55; also Note 1, on page 69.

**) In this particular case the common usage is synu ! o son ! Sy-nu můj, o my son !

***) It has also the long termination ové, when used as an *animate* noun, especially in poetic language: stromové se klonili, the trees bowed.
— O stromové, promluyte ! o trees, speak out !

The first masculine declension (*ten syn, ten strom*) comprises nouns ending in hard or neutral consonants.

SECTION 4.—The second declension of nouns of the masculine gender is presented in full by the following examples:

	<i>Animate</i>	<i>Inanimate</i>
	Singular.	
<i>nom.</i>	muž , the man	meč , the sword
<i>gen.</i>	muž-e , of the man;	meč-e , of the sword;
<i>dat.</i>	muž-i, -ovi , to the man;	meč-i , to the sword;
<i>acc.</i>	muž-e , the man	meč , the sword
<i>voc.</i>	muž-i , man!	meč-i , sword!
<i>loc.</i>	muž-i , (in) the man;	meč-i , (in) the sword;
<i>inst.</i>	muž-em , with the man;	meč-em , with the sword.
	Plural.	
<i>nom.</i>	muž-i, -ové , the men	meč-e*), the swords
<i>gen.</i>	muž-ů, -ův , of the men;	meč-ů, -ův , of the swords;
<i>dat.</i>	muž-ům , to the men;	meč-ům , to the swords;
<i>acc.</i>	muž-e , the men	meč-e , the swords
<i>voc.</i>	muž-i, -ové , men!	meč-e*), swords!
<i>loc.</i>	muž-ích , (in) the men;	meč-ích , (in) the swords;
<i>inst.</i>	muž-i , with the men;	meč-i , with the swords.

The second masculine declension (*ten muž, ten meč*) comprises nouns ending in soft consonants or in **el** (for inst. **učitel**, the teacher).

SECTION 5.—Nouns of the first declension, terminating in **h, ch, k, r**, change these hard consonants into **z, š, c, ř**, in the *nominative* case of the plural number, as explained in Note 3 on page 70, to which we refer.

SECTION 6.—Nouns of the first declension ending in **ek** eliminate the vowel **e** in the inflected cases, as stated in Note 2 on page 80. For instance :

svědek, *swyědek*, the witness; **svědka**, *swyědkă* (not **svědeka**), of the witness; **svědku** or **svědkovi**, to the witness; etc. — (Plural:) **svědci** or **svědkové**, the witnesses; **svědků**, of the witnesses; **svědkům**, to the witnesses; etc.

*) It may also have the long termination (**mečové**), when used as an animate noun, especially in solemn or poetical language.

The same is true of nouns ending **et** and **en**. The nouns **loket** (the yard, *or* the elbow) and **den** (the day) follow in their declension the example of **meč**:

loket, the yard; **lokte**, of the yard; **lokti**, to the yard; etc.

den, the day; **dne**, of the day; **dni**, to the day; etc.

In the plural, **den** is quite irregular: **dni** or **dnové**, the days; **dní** or **dnův**, of the days; **dnům**, to the days; **dni** or **dny** (accus.), the days; **dnech**, (in) the days; **dněmi** or **dny**, with the days.

SECTION 7. — The vowel **ü**, when it occurs in the nominative, changes into **o** in the inflected cases: **kůñ**, the horse; **koně**, of the horse; **koni** (*or* **koñovi**), to the horse; etc. — See Note 4 on page 56.

SECTION 8. — Nouns ending in **el** are mostly declined like **muž** or **meč**; for instance: **učitel**, the teacher; **učitele**, of the teacher; **učiteli**, (-**ovi**), to the teacher; etc.

Přítel (the friend) has in the nominative plural **přátelé** (the friends); in the genitive **přátele**, of the friends. —

The word **peníze** (the money) is a plural noun: **peněz**, of the money; **penězům**, to the money; **v penězích**, in the money; **penězi**, with the money.

DECLENSION OF FEMININE NOUNS.

SECTION 9. — The first declension of nouns of the feminine gender (*ta žena*) is shown by the following example*):

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	žen-a , the woman	žen-y , the women
<i>gen.</i>	žen-y , of the woman	žen , of the women
<i>dat.</i>	žen-ě , to the woman	žen-ám , to the women
<i>acc.</i>	žen-u , the woman	žen-y , the women
<i>voc.</i>	žen-o , woman!	žen-y , women!
<i>loc.</i>	žen-ě , (in) the woman	žen-ách , (in) the women
<i>inst.</i>	žen-ou , with the woman	žen-ami , with the women.

All nouns of the feminine gender ending in **a** belong to this declension.

SECTION 10. — There are some masculine nouns terminating in **a**, which follow this declension in the singular, excepting the dative and locative cases, which have the long masculine form. For instance: **vévod-a**, the duke; **vévod-y**, of the duke; **vévod-ovi**, to the duke; etc.

*) Compare Note 3 on page 60.

In the plural number, such nouns follow the first masculine declension: **vévod-ové**, the dukes; **vévod-ův**, of the dukes; **vévod-ům**, to the dukes; etc. (See "plural" of first declension of masculine nouns.) — Some masculines ending in a take in the nominative plural always the short form **i** or **é**; for instance: **basista**, the basso; **basisti** (or **basisté**), the bassoes.

SECTION 11. — Nouns of the feminine gender ending in **ě**, belong to the **second** declension (*ta země*), which is as follows*):

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	zem-ě , the earth	zem-ě , the earths
<i>gen.</i>	zem-ě , of the earth	zem-í , of the earths
<i>dat.</i>	zem-i , to the earth	zem-ím , to the earths
<i>acc.</i>	zem-i , the earth	zem-ě , the earths
<i>voc.</i>	zem-ě , earth!	zem-ě , earths!
<i>loc.</i>	zem-i , in the earth	zem-ěch , (in) the earths
<i>inst.</i>	zem-i , with the earth	zem-ěmi , with the earths.

SECTION 12. — Nouns of the feminine gender ending in a *consonant* (*tu dañ*), belong to the **third** declension, which has two branches showing a slight divergence at least in the written language, if not always in common discourse; hence we subjoin two examples:

	Singular	
<i>nom.</i>	kost' , the bone	dañ , the tax
<i>gen.</i>	kost-i , of the bone	dan-ě , of the tax
<i>dat.</i>	kost-i , to the bone	dan-i , to the tax
<i>acc.</i>	kost , the bone	dañ , the tax
<i>voc.</i>	kost-i , bone!	dan-i , tax!
<i>loc.</i>	kost-i , (in) the bone	dan-i , (in) the tax
<i>inst.</i>	kost-i , with the bone	dan-i , with the tax.

	Plural	
<i>nom.</i>	kost-i , the bones	dan-ě , the taxes
<i>gen.</i>	kost-i , of the bones	dan-i , of the taxes
<i>dat.</i>	kost-em , to the bones	dan-ím , to the taxes
<i>acc.</i>	kost-i , the bones	dan-ě , the taxes
<i>voc.</i>	kost-i , bones!	dan-ě , taxes!
<i>loc.</i>	kost-ech , (in) the bones	dan-ěch , (in) the taxes
<i>inst.</i>	kost-mi , with the bones	dan-ěmi , with the taxes.

*) Compare Note 3 on page 60.

Nouns terminating in ěñ drop the vowel e in the inflected cases; for instance: lázeň, the bath; lázně, of the bath; lázni, to the bath; etc.

DECLENSION OF NEUTRAL NOUNS.

SECTION 13. — The first declension comprises nouns of the neutral gender ending in o (*to slovo*). They are declined as follows*):

	Singular		Plural
<i>nom.</i>	slov-o, the word		slov-a, the words
<i>gen.</i>	slov-a, of the word		slov, of the words
<i>dat.</i>	slov-u, to the word		slov-ům, to the words
<i>acc.</i>	slov-o, the word		slov-a, the words
<i>voc.</i>	slov-o, word!		slov-a, words!
<i>loc.</i>	slov-ě, (-u) (in) the word		slov-ech, (-ích), (in) the words
<i>inst.</i>	slov-em, with the word		slov-y, with the words

SECTION 14. — The second neutral declension embraces nouns ending in e and ě (*to pole*, *to poupě*). It has two branches, differing somewhat in their inflected endings, as will be seen from the subjoined two examples**).

	Singular.		
<i>nom.</i>	pol-e, the field		poup-ě, the bud
<i>gen.</i>	pol-e, of the field		poup-ěte, of the bud
<i>dat.</i>	pol-i, to the field		poup-ěti, to the bud
<i>acc.</i>	pol-e, the field		poup-ě, the bud
<i>voc.</i>	pol-e, field!		poup-ě, bud!
<i>loc.</i>	pol-i, (in) the field		poup-ěti, (in) the bud
<i>inst.</i>	pol-em, with the field		poup-ětem, with the bud.

	Plural.		
<i>nom.</i>	pol-e, the fields		poup-ata, the buds
<i>gen.</i>	pol-i, of the fields		poup-at, of the buds
<i>dat.</i>	pol-ím, to the fields		poup-atům, to the buds
<i>acc.</i>	pol-e, fields		poup-ata, the buds
<i>voc.</i>	pol-e, fields!		poup-ata, buds!
<i>loc.</i>	pol-ich, (in) the fields		poup-atech, (in) the buds
<i>inst.</i>	pol-i, with the fields		poup-aty, with the buds.

*) Compare Note 2 on page 65.

**) Compare Note 2 on page 65.

The following nouns are declined like *poupě*: **hrabě**, the count, (**hraběte**, of the count; **hrabata**, the counts); **kníže**, the prince; **pachole**, the little boy; **děvče**, the girl; **vnuče**, the grandchild; — **zvíře**, the animal; **dobyťe**, the beast; **hríbě**, the foal; **jehně**, the lamb; **kotě**, the kitten; **kůzle**, the kid; **káče**, the duckling; **kuře**, the chick; **hádě**, the young snake; **house**, the gosling; **tele**, the calf; — **doupě**, the den; **koště**, the broom; **vole**, the crop (the craw).

The nouns **břemeno**, the burden; **rameno**, the arm or upper arm; **semeno**, the seed; **temeno**, the crown of the head, — and some others, have also a short form: **břímě**, **rámě**, **símě**, **témě**. The declension of these shortened nouns deviates somewhat from the above examples of the second neutral declension, for which reason a full paradigm is subjoined:

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	símě , the seed	sem-ena , the seeds
<i>gen.</i>	sem-ene , of the seed	sem-en , of the seeds
<i>dat.</i>	sem-eni , to the seed	sem-enům , to the seeds
<i>acc.</i>	símě , the seed	sem-ena , the seeds
<i>voc.</i>	símě , seed!	sem-ena , seeds!
<i>loc.</i>	sem-eni , (in) the seed	sem-enech , (in) the seeds
<i>inst.</i>	sem-enem , with the seed	sem-eny , with the seeds.

SECTION 15.— The **third** declension of neutral nouns is characterized by the terminal **i**:

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	znamen-i , the sign	znamen-i , the signs
<i>gen.</i>	znamen-i , to the sign	znamen-i , of the signs
<i>dat.</i>	znamen-i , to the sign	znamen-ím , to the signs
<i>acc.</i>	znamen-i , the sign	znamen-i , the signs
<i>voc.</i>	znamen-i , sign!	znamen-i , signs!
<i>loc.</i>	znamen-i , (in) the sign	znamen-ich , (in) the signs
<i>inst.</i>	znamen-ím , with the sign	znamen-ími , with the signs.

This declension embraces also: 1. *Feminine* nouns terminating in **i**, like: **paní**, the mistress or lady; **biblí**, (also **bible**), the bible; but these nouns retain the terminal **i** in the instrumental of the singular number: **s paní**, with the lady. — 2. Some *masculine* nouns ending in **i**: **rukojmí**, the surety.

SECTION 16. — There is a *dual* number in Bohemian, limited in the modern language to the names of parts of the human body, which appear in pairs : **oči**, the eyes; **uši**, the ears; **ruce**, the hands; **nohy**, the feet; **prsá**, the breasts; **ramena**, the arms; **kolena**, the knees. They are declined in the dual number as follows :

<i>nom.</i>	oč-i , the eyes	uš-i ,	rue-e ,	noh-y	prs-a ,
<i>gen.</i>	oč-í , of the eyes	uš-í ,	ruk-ou ,	noh-ou	prs-ou
<i>dat.</i>	oč-ím , to the eyes	uš-ím ,	ruk-ám ,	noh-ám	prs-úm
<i>acc.</i>	oč-i , the eyes	uš-i ,	rue-e ,	noh-y	prs-a
<i>voc.</i>	oč-i , eyes!	uš-i ,	rue-e ,	noh-y	prs-a
<i>loc.</i>	oč-ích , (in) the eyes	uš-ích ,	ruk-ou ,	noh-ou	prs-ou
<i>inst.</i>	oč-ima , with the eyes	uš-ima ,	ruk-ama ,	noh-ama	prs-oma .

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

SECTION 17. — There are two leading classes of adjectives : definite and indefinite.

Definite adjectives present two subdivisions : 1. adjectives with a changing termination, according to gender : **dobr-ý** (*muž*), **dobr-á** (*žena*), **dobr-é** (*dítě*), — the good man, the good woman, the good child; 2. adjectives with the same termination in all three genders : **dnešn-í** (*vítr*) **dnešní** (*zima*), **dnešní** (*parno*), — to-day's wind, to-day's cold, to-day's heat.*)

Indefinite adjectives are either derived from definite adjectives, being only a different form of the same ; for instance : **zdravý**, **zdravá**, **zdravé**, healthy or well (definite); **zdráv**, **zdrává**, **zdrávo** (indefinite)**) ;

Or they are so-called possessive adjectives, derived from nouns : (**otec**, the father) **otec-ův**, **otec-ova**, **otec-ovo**, the father's; (**matka**, the mother) **matč-in**, **matč-ina**, **matč-ino**, the mother's***).

SECTION 18. — Definite adjectives with a changing termination are declined in the following manner****) :

*) Compare Note 1 on page 85, and Note 1 on page 94.

**) Compare Note 2 on page 103.

***) Compare Notes 2 and 3, on pp. 94, 95.

****) Compare Note 1, on page 85.

Singular.

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>
<i>nom.</i>	dobr-ý muž, a good man;	dobr-á žena;	dobr-é dítko
<i>gen.</i>	dobr-ého muže, of a good man	dobr-é ženy;	dobr-ého dítka
<i>dat.</i>	dobr-ému muži, to a good man	dobr-é ženě;	dobr-ému dítku
<i>acc.</i>	dobr-ého muže, a good man;	dobr-ou ženu,	dobr-é dítko
<i>voc.</i>	dobr-ý muži, good man !	dobr-á ženo !	dobr-é dítko !
<i>loc.</i>	dobr-ém muži, (in) a good man	dobr-é ženě;	dobr-ém dítku
<i>inst.</i>	dobr-ým mužem, with a good man	dobr-ou ženou;	dobr-ým dítkem.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	dobr-í muži, good men	dobr-é ženy	dobr-á dítka
<i>gen.</i>	dobr-ých mužů, of good men	dobr-ých žen	dobr-ých dítek
<i>dat.</i>	dobr-ým mužům, to good men	dobr-ým ženám	dobr-ým dítkám
<i>acc.</i>	dobr-é muže, good men	dobr-é ženy	dobr-á dítka
<i>voc.</i>	dobr-í muži, good men !	dobr-é ženy	dobr-á dítka
<i>loc.</i>	dobr-ých mužích, (in) good m.	dobr-ých ženách	dobr-ých dítkách
<i>inst.</i>	dobr-ými muži, with good men	dobr-ými ženami	dobr-ými dítkami.

Note 1. The hard consonants **h**, **ch**, **k**, **r**, are changed in the nominative plural of the *masculine* gender into the soft consonants **z**, **š**, **c**, **ř**, when the adjective qualifies an *animate* noun : **dobrý** muž, — **dobr-í** muži; **velký** hoch, — **velcí** hoši. The terminations **eký** and **ský** change into **čtí** and **ští**: **německý** (sing.) — **němečtí** (plur.); **český** (sing.) — **čeští** (plur.).

In common discourse, however, this rule is neglected.

Note 2. When the adjective qualifies a masculine *inanimate* noun, it agrees in the nominative and accusative plural with the feminine gender: **dobré stromy**, good trees; and the accusative singular is like the nominative: **dobrý strom**.

SECTION 19. — Definite adjectives, having the same termination (**i**) in all genders and both numbers, are declined in the following manner*):

* Compare Note 1, page 94.

	Singular		Plural
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>
<i>nom.</i>	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í
<i>gen.</i>	dnešn-ího	dnešn-í	dnešn-ího
<i>dat.</i>	dnešn-ímu	dnešn-í	dnešn-ímu
<i>acc.</i>	dnešn-ího	dnešn-í	dnešn-í
<i>voc.</i>	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í
<i>loc.</i>	dnešn-ím	dnešn-í	dnešn-ích
<i>inst.</i>	dnešn-ím	dnešn-í	dnešn-ími

Note. When the adjective qualifies a masculine *inanimate* noun, the accusative singular is like the nominative. We say: čekám dnešního hosta, I wait for to-day's guest; but: "čekám dnešní list", I wait for to-day's paper.

SECTION 20. — Indefinite adjectives like **zdráv** (from **zdravý**), **vesel** (from **veselý**), etc. *) are now used only in the nominative and accusative cases. Possessive adjectives have the following declension:

	Singular		
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>
<i>nom.</i>	bratr-ův , my brother's	bratr-ova	bratr-ovo
<i>gen.</i>	bratr-ova , of my brother's	bratr-ovy	bratr-ova
<i>dat.</i>	bratr-ovu , to my brother's	bratr-ově	bratr-ovu
<i>acc.</i>	bratr-ova , my brother's	bratr-ovu	bratr-ovo
<i>voc.</i>	bratr-ův! brother's !	bratr-ova !	bratr-ovo !
<i>loc.</i>	bratr-ovu (-ově) in my brother's	bratr-ově	bratr-ovu
<i>inst.</i>	bratr-ovým , with my brother's	bratr-ovou	bratr-ovým.

Plural

(Only three cases differ, the other four being identical. In conversation there is no difference at all.)

<i>nom.</i>	bratr-ovi , my brother's	bratr-ovy	bratr-ova
<i>gen.</i>		bratr-ových	
<i>dat.</i>		bratr-ovým	
<i>acc.</i>	bratr-ovy	bratr-ovy	bratr-ova
<i>voc.</i>	bratr-ovi !	bratr-ovy !	bratr-ova !
<i>loc.</i>		bratr-ových	
<i>inst.</i>		bratr-ovými	

*) See Note 2, page 103.

Note 1. — When the possessive adjective qualifies a masculine *inanimate* noun, the accusative singular is like the nominative: *vidím bratrův dům*, “I see my brother’s house”; and the nominative and vocative plural have a final **y**, like the feminine gender: **bratrový domy**, “my brother’s houses”.

Note 2. — The adjective **páně** is not inflected: **leta Páně 1890**, in the year of our Lord 1890; — **chrám Páně**, the Lord’s house; — **večeře Páně**, the Lord’s supper; — **dům páně Hodanův**, Mr. Hodan’s house.

Note 3. — Possessive adjectives formed from feminine nouns and having the termination **in** (fem. **ina**, neut. **ino**)*), are declined like those formed from masculine nouns: **bratrův**, **bratrova**, **bratrovo**.

In their formation hard consonants are softened down in the usual manner: **mat-ka**, the mother; **mat-čin** (**matčina**, **matčino**), the mother’s.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

SECTION 21. — The comparison of adjectives is fully explained in Notes 1 and 2, Lesson XXII. The termination **ký** changes into **čí**, in the second and third degree: **hezký**, nice; **hezčí**, nicer; **nejhezčí**, nicest.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

SECTION 22.—*Personal pronouns.**)

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	já , I	ty , thou	on , he; ono , it	ona , she
<i>gen.</i>	mě (mne) of me	tě (tebe)	jeho (ho)	jí
<i>dat.</i>	mi (mně) to me	ti (tobě)	jemu (mu)	jí
<i>acc.</i>	mě (mne) me	tě (tebe)	jeho (ho , jej); je , it	ji
<i>loc.</i>	mně , in me	tobě	něm	ní
<i>inst.</i>	mnou , with me	tebou	ním (jím)	ní (jí)

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	my , we	vy , you	oni , (fem. ony ; neut. ona) they
<i>gen.</i>	nás , of us	vás	jich
<i>dat.</i>	nám , to us	vám	jím
<i>acc.</i>	nás , us	vás	je
<i>loc.</i>	nás , (in) us	vás	nich
<i>inst.</i>	námi (with) us	vámi	nimi (jimi)

*) See Note 3, page 95.

*) Compare Note 1 on page 102, and Note on page 106.

SECTION 23.—*Possessive pronouns.*)*

Singular.

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	můj	má (moje)	mé (moje)	nás	naše	naše
<i>gen.</i>	měho	mé (mojí)	měho	našeho	naší	našeho
<i>dat.</i>	mémú	mé (mojí)	mémú	našemu	naší	našemu
<i>acc.</i>	měho (inan. můj)	mou (moji)	mé (moje)	našeho (inan. nás)	naši	naše
<i>voc.</i>	můj	má (moje)	mé (moje)	nás	naše	naše
<i>loc.</i>	mém	mé (mojí)	mém	našem	naší	našem
<i>inst.</i>	mým	mou (mojí)	mým	naším	naší	naším.

Plural.

(Cases showing no difference of gender are left in blank.)

<i>nom.</i>	moji (moje)	mé (moje)	má (moje)	naši (naše)	naše	naše
<i>gen.</i>	mých			našich		
<i>dat.</i>	mým			našim		
<i>acc.</i>	mé (moje)	mé (moje)	má (moje)	naše		
<i>voc.</i>	moji (moje)	mé (moje)	má (moje)	naši (naše)	naše	naše
<i>loc.</i>	mých			našich		
<i>inst.</i>	mými			našimi		

SECTION 24. — *Indicative pronouns.**)*

Singular

Plural

	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	<i>kdo</i>	<i>co</i>
<i>nom.</i>	ten	ta	to	ti	ty	ta	kdo	co
<i>gen.</i>	toho	té	toho	těch			koho	čeho
<i>dat.</i>	tomu	té	tomu	těm			komu	čemu
<i>acc.</i>	toho (ten)	tu	to	ty	ty	ta	koho	co
<i>loc.</i>	tom	té	tom	těch			kom	čem
<i>inst.</i>	tím	tou	tím	těmi			kým	čím

SECTION 25. — The relative pronouns **který** (fem. **která**, neut. **které**) and **jenž** (fem. & neut. **jež**), are translated by *which* or *that*.The pronoun **který**, **á**, **é** is declined like the definite adjective **dobrý**, **á**, **é**; the pronoun **jenž** is declined as follows:

*) Compare Lessons XXV and XXVI.

**) Compare Note 1 on page 115, and Note 5 on page 82.

	Singular		Plural <i>of all three genders.</i>
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	
<i>nom.</i>	jenž	jež	již (masc.), jež (f. & n.)
<i>gen.</i>	jehož	již	jiehž
<i>dat.</i>	jemuž	již	jimž
<i>acc.</i>	jehož (jejž)	již	jež
<i>loc.</i>	(v) němž	(v) niž	(v) nichž
<i>inst.</i>	jímž	již	jimiž

NUMERALS.

SECTION 26. — The *cardinal* numeral **jeden** (fem. **jedna**, neut. **jedno**) is declined like **ten (ta, to)**:*)

	Singular		Plural <i>of all three genders.</i>
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	jeden	jedn-a	jedn-o
<i>gen.</i>	jedn-oho	jedn-é	jedn-oho
<i>dat.</i>	jedn-omu	jedn-é	jedn-omu
<i>acc.</i>	jedn-oho (inan. jeden)	jedn-u	jedn-o
<i>loc.</i>	jedn-om	jedn-é	jedn-ech
<i>inst.</i>	jedn-ím	jedn-ou	jedn-ím

The declension of **dva** (fem. & neut. **dvě**), **tři**, **čtyři** (fem. & neut. **čtyry**) is sufficiently explained in Note 1, page 122.

The numerals **pět**, **šest**, **sedm** until **devadesát devět** (*five till ninety nine*) take in all cases an **i**, except the accusative and vocative, which are like the nominative. For instance: **pět mužů**, five men; **pěti mužů**, of five men (or “of the five men”); **pěti mužům**, to five men; **v pěti mužích**, in five men; **s pěti muži**, with five men.

In the nominative and accusative they are *always* followed by the *genitive case* of the noun: **pět mužů** (or **mužův**), five men; **šest holek**, six girls; **sedm dětí**, seven children.

*) See Note 2 on page 116.

Numerals like *twenty one*, *twenty two*, *twenty three*, and so forth, may be rendered in Bohemian in two ways : 1. — **dvacet jeden**, **dvacet dva**, **dvacet tří**, etc.,*) in which case both parts are inflected : **dvaceti dvou**, of twenty two; **dvaceti dvěma**, to twenty two; etc.

2. — **jeden-a-dvacet**, **dva-a-dvacet**, **tři-a-dvacet**, etc., *one and twenty*, *two and twenty*, *three and twenty*; etc., but usually written together: **jedenadvacet**, **dvaadvacet**. In this case only the second part is inflected : **jedenadvaceti**, of twenty one, to twenty one; **s jedenadvaceti**, with twenty one.

Sto (one hundred) is declined like the neutre noun **slovo**, excepting that in connection with **dvě** (two) it retains the *dual* number in the nominative and accusative : **sto**, **sta**, **stu**, etc. (a hundred, of a hundred, to a hundred); **dvě stě**, two hundred; **dvou set**, of two hundred; **dvěma stům**, to two hundred; **o dvou stech**, about two hundred; **s dvěma sty**, with two hundred.

Tisíc (one thousand) is declined like the masc. noun **meč** : **tisíce**, of a thousand; **tisíci**, to a thousand; **s tisícem**, with a thousand.

SECTION 27. — *Ordinal* numerals, **první** or **prvý**, **druhý**, **třetí**, etc; (first, second, third,) are declined like adjectives of a corresponding termination, i. e. like **dobrý**, **á**, **é** or **dnešní**.**))

The same rule obtains in relation to the *special* and *multiplicative* numerals : **dvojí**, **trojí**, etc. (twofold, threefold); **dvojnásabný**, **trojnásobný**, etc. (double, treble).

The neutral form of special numerals : **čtvero**, **patero**, **desatero**, etc., is declined like the neutre noun **slovo**; for instance : **desatero přikázání**, the ten commandments; **desatera přikázání**, of the ten commandments; **v desateru přikázání**, in the ten commandments; etc.

The *names* of numbers : **jednotka** (the figure one), **dvojka** (the figure two), **trojka** (the figure three), etc., are declined like the fem. nouns ending in **a** : **žena**.

SECTION 28. — The indefinite numeral **všecken** (also **všecek** or **všecken**))***), all, has the following declension :

*) See page 120.

**) See Note 3 on page 124.

***) See Note 1 on page 127.

Singular.

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>
<i>nom. & voc.</i>	všechen	všechna	všechno
<i>gen.</i>	všeho	vší	všeho
<i>dat.</i>	všemu	vší	všemu
<i>acc.</i>	všeho (inan. všechen)	všechnu	všechno
<i>loc.</i>	všem	vší	všem
<i>inst.</i>	vším	vší	vším

Plural.

<i>nom. & voc. masc.</i>	všichni	<i>gen.</i>	všechn	<i>in all</i>
<i>(masc. inan.)</i>	všechny	<i>dat.</i>	všem	
<i>fem.</i>	všechny	<i>loc. (ve)</i>	všech	
<i>neut.</i>	všechna	<i>inst.</i>	všemi	
<i>acc., masc. & fem..</i>	všechny	<i>acc. neut.</i>	všechna	<i>three genders.</i>

The indefinite numeral **veškerý, á, é** has the same meaning as **vše-chen, na, no (all)**, and is declined like adjectives of the same termination (**dobrý, á, é**).

VERBS.

SECTION 29. — 1. The verb is said to be subjective, when the action or condition is strictly confined to the subject: **sedím**, I am sitting; **běhám**, I am running; **růže kvete**, the rose is blooming.

2. It is called objective, when the action relates to another person or thing: **slunce zahřívá zemi**, the sun is warming the earth; **učitel chválil žáka**, the teacher praised the scholar; **důvěřuj v Boha!** trust in God!

The objective verb is *transitive* or *intransitive*.

The transitive verb is accompanied by the accusative case without any preposition: **učitel chválí žáka**, the teacher is praising the scholar; **matka vede dceru**, the mother is leading her daughter.

The intransitive verb is accompanied by the accusative case with a preposition: **důvěřuj v Boha**; or by some other case with or without a preposition: **lakomec baží po bohatství**, the miser craves for riches; **žák poslouchá učitele**, the scholar obeys his teacher.

3. A verb is called reflexive, when the action reverts to the subject. Such verbs are accompanied by the reflexive pronoun **se**: **Modli se!**

pray! *Chlapec se strojí*, the boy is dressing (himself). **Radujeme se z toho**, we are rejoicing over it.

But sometimes the pronoun *se* expresses the *passive* mood, and not a reflected action : *maso se jí*, the flesh is eaten; **jablka se česají**, the apples are being picked; **pole se orá**, the field is being plowed.

4. Impersonal verbs express an action or condition regardless of the person or thing, from which it proceeds : **prší**, it rains, it is raining; **rozednívá se**, it dawns, (the day is breaking).

SECTION 30. —The classification of the Bohemian verbs in regard in to the character of the action is fully explained in Lesson XXXIX.

Tense-inflection shows a difference in the *time* of the action or condition. There are three tenses :

1. *The present tense (přítomný čas)*: **píšu**, I write, I am writing; **pes štěká**, the dog barks, the dog is barking.

2. *The past tense (minulý čas)*: **psal jsem**, I wrote, I was writing; **pes štěkal**, the dog barked, the dog was barking.

The past tense may be *continuous*, when a continued past action is expressed: **šel jsem**, I went, I was going; or *finite*, when a finished action is expressed : **přišel jsem**, I came.

3. *The future tense (budoucí čas)*: **budu psátí**, I shall write, I shall be writing; **pes bude štěkatí**, the dog will bark, the dog will be barking.

The future tense may also be either *continuous*: **budu psátí**; or *finite*, when a completed future action is to be expressed: **napišu**, I shall write out.

The Bohemian verb, like the English, has an indicative mood: **mluvím**, *I speak*; a subjunctive or conditional mood: **mluvil bych**, *I should speak*; and an imperative mood: **mluv! speak!**

SECTION 31. — There is only one auxiliary verb in Bohemian: **býti**, to be. — But certain verbs are used in connection with other verbs, to make a complete assertion or declaration; for instance : **musiti**, must; **smíti**, may, dare; **moci**, can; **ráčiti**, please; etc. We say : **musím jítí**, I must go; **smím mluvit?** may I speak? **račte vejítí!** please to come in!

SECTION 32. — The Bohemian verb has *six conjugations*, fully illustrated in Lessons XXXI — XXXV incl.

The auxiliary verb **býti**, aiding in the formation of the past and future tenses, is conjugated thus :

Present: jsem, jsi, jest; jsme, jste, jsou.

Imperative: bud', bud'me, bud'te.

Past participle: byl, byla, bylo; byli, byly, byla.

Subjunctive: bych, bys, by; bychom (bysme), byste, by.

Future: budu, budeš, bude; budeme, budete, budou.

*Present transgressive**): jsa, jsouc, jsouc; jsouce; (being).

Past transg.: byv, byvši, byvši; byvše; (having been).

Future transg.: buda, budouc, budouc; budouce; (to be, expecting to be).

*) This participial construction occurs only in the written language; it is explained in Note 4, page 164.

SECTION 33. — Table of the six conjugations.

I. Termination ti directly attached to the root.							II. Term. -outi	III. Termin.
	Person	nés-ti to carry	pí-ti to drink	tří-ti to rub	péc-i*) to bake		min-outi to pass	hled-ěti to look, to look after
Indicative mood	1	nes-u	pij-u (-i)	tr-u	pek-u	min-u	hled-ím	
	2	nes-eš	pij-eš	tř-eš	peč-eš	min-eš	hled-íš	
	3	nes-e	pij-e	tř-e	peč-e	min-e	hled-í	
	1	nes-eme	pij-eme	tř-eme	peč-eme	min-eme	hled-íme	
	2	nes-ete	pij-ete	tř-ete	peč-ete	min-ete	hled-íte	
	3	nes-ou	pij-ou (f)	tr-ou	pek-ou	min-ou	hled-í	
	Plur. Sing.							
	2	nes	pij	tři	peč	miň	hled'	
	1	nes-me	pij-me	tř-eme	peč-me	miň-me	hled'-me	
	2	nes-te	pij-te	tř-ete	peč-te	miň-te	hled'-te	
Imperative	masc.	nes-l	pi-l	tře-l	pek-l	minu-l	hled-ěl	
	fem.	nes-la	pi-la	tře-la	pek-la	minu-la	hled-ěla	
	neut.	nes-lo	pi-lo	tře-lo	pek-lo	minu-lo	hled-ělo	
	masc.	nes-li	pi-li	tře-li	pek-li	minu-li	hled-ěli	
	fem.	nes-ly	pi ly	tře-ly	pek-ly	minu-ly	hled-ěly	
	neut.	nes-la	pi-la	tře-la	pek-la	minu-la	hled-ěla	
	Plur. Sing.							
	masc.	nes-en	pi-t	tře-n	peč-en	minu-t	hledě-n	
	fem.	nes-ena	pi-ta	tře-na	peč-ena	minu-ta	hledě-na	
Active participle	neut.	nes-eno	pi-to	tře-no	peč-eno	minu-to	hledě-no	
	masc.	nes-eni	pi-ti	tře-ni	peč-eni	minu-ti	hledě-ni	
	fem.	nes-eny	pi-ty	tře-ny	peč-eny	minu-ty	hledě-ny	
	neut.	nes-ena	pi-ta	tře-na	peč-ena	minu-ta	hledě-na	
	Plur. Sing.							
	masc.	nes-a	pij-e	tr-a	pek-a	min-a	hled ě	
	fem.	nes-ouc	pij-íc	tr-ouc	pek-ouc	min-ouc	hled-íc	
	neut.	nes-ouc	pij-íc	tr-ouc	pek-ouc	min-ouc	hled-íc	
	m. f. n.	nes-ouce	pij-íce	tr-ou	pek-ouce	min-ouce	hled-íce	
Present transgressive	masc.	nes	pi-v	tře v	pek	min-uv	hledě-v	
	fem.	nes-ši	pi-vši	tře-vši	pek-ši	min-uvši	hledě-vši	
	neut.	nes-ši	pi-vši	tře-vši	pek-ši	min-uvši	hledě-vši	
	m. f. n.	nes-še	pi-vše	tře-vše	pek-še	min uvše	hledě-vše	
	Plur. Sing.							

*) Popularly *pecti*, originally *pékti*.

III. -eti or -eti	IV. Termin. -iti	V Termin. -ati			VI Termin. -ovati
haz-eti to throw	čin-iti to do	vo-ati to call	maz-ati to rub	hn-áti to drive	mil-ovati to love
ház-ím	čin-ím	vol ám	maž-u (-i)	žen-u	miluj-u (-i)
ház-íš	čin-íš	vol-áš	maž-eš	žen-eš	miluj-eš
ház-í	čin-í	vol-á	maž-e	žen-e	miluj-e
ház-íme	čin-íme	vol-áme	maž-eme	žen-eme	miluj-eme
ház-íte	čin-íte	vol-áte	maž-ete	žen-ete	miluj-ete
ház-ejí	čin-í	vol-ají	maž ou (-í)	žen-ou	miluj-on (-í)
házej	čiň	volej	maž	žeň	miluj
házej-me	čiň-me	volej-me	maž-me	žeň-me	miluj-me
házej-te	čiň-te	volej-te	maž-te	žeň-te	miluj-te
háze-l	čini-l	vola-l	maza-l	hna-l	milova-l
háze-la	čini-la	vola-la	maza-la	hna-la	milova-la
háze-lo	čini-lo	vola-lo	maza-lo	hna-lo	milova-lo
háze-li	čini-li	vola-li	maza-li	hna-li	milova-li
háze-ly	čini-ly	vola-ly	maza-ly	hna-ly	milova-ly
háze-la	čini-la	vola-la	maza-la	hna-la	milova-la
háze-n	čině-n	volá-n	mazá-n	hná-n	milová-n
háze-na	čině-na	volá-na	mazá-na	hná-na	milová-na
háze-no	čině-no	volá-no	mazá-no	hná-no	milová-no
háze-ni	čině-ni	volá-ni	mazú-ni	hná-ni	milová-ni
háze-ny	čině-ny	volá-ny	mazá-ny	hná-ny	milová-ny
háze-na	čině-na	volá-na	mazá-na	hná-na	milová-na
háze-je	čině	vola-je	maž-e	žen-a	miluj-e
háze-jíc	čině-ic	vola-jíc	maž-ic	žen-ouc	miiuj-ic
háze-jíc	čině-ic	vola-jíc	maž-ic	žen-ouc	miluj-ic
háze-jíce	čině-ice	vola-jíce	maž-ice	žen-ouce	miluj-ice
háze-v	čini-v	vola-v	maza-v	hna-v	milova-v
háze-vši	čini-vši	vola-vši	maza-vši	hna-vši	milova-vši
háze-vši	čini-vši	vola-vši	maza-vši	hna-vši	milova-vši
háze-vše	čini-vše	vola-vše	maza-vše	hna-vše	milova-vše.

SECTION 34.—Irregular verbs.

Jeti, to ride, to drive;—*present*, jedu, jedeš, jede, jedeme, jete, jedete, jedou; *imper.* jed', -me, -te; *active partic.* jel, -a, -o; *passive partic.* jet, -a, -o; *pres. transg.* jed-a, -oue, -ouce; *supine*, jet (to ride);

jíti, to go;—*pres.* jdu, jdeš, jde, jdeme, jete, jdou; *imper.* jdi, jdě-me, jdě-te; *act. part.* šel, šla, šlo; *pres. transg.* jda, jdouc, -ce; *sup.* jit (to go);

chtítí, to want;—*pres.* chci, chceš, chce, chceme, chcete, chtějí; *imper.* chtěj, chtěj-me, -te; *act. part.* chtěl, -a, -o; *pres. transg.* chtěj-e, -íe, -ice; *past. transg.* chtěv, -ši, -še; *sup.* chtět (to want);

míti, to have;—*pres.* mám, máš, má, máme, máte, mají; *imper.* měj, měj-me, měj-te; *act. part.* měl, -a, -o; *pres. transg.* maj-e, -íe, -ice; *past. transg.* měv, -ši, -še;

spáti, to sleep;—*pres.* spím, spíš, spí, spíme, spíte, spí; *imper.* spi, spě-me, -te; *act. part.* spal, -a, -o; *pres. transg.* spě, spíc, spíce; *past. transg.* spav, -ši, -še; *sup.* spat (to sleep);

státi se, to happen, to become;—stanu se, staneš se, stane se, stan-eme, -ete, -ou se; *imper.* staň se, -me, -te se; *act. part.* stal, -a, -o se; *pres. transg.* stav, -ši, -še se; (*stává se*, it happens, is impersonal);

viděti, to see;—vidím, vidíš, vidí, vidíme, vidíte, vidí; *imper.* viz, -me, -te; *act. part.* viděl, -a, -o; *passive part.* viděn, -a, -o; *present transg.* vid-a, -oue, -ouce.

SECTION 35.—The derivation and comparison of adverbs is explained in Notes 2 and 3, on page 128.

Prepositions govern or require particular cases.

The *genitive* case, responding to the question **čí?** **koho?** **čeho?***), is governed by the following prepositions, and adverbs used as prepositions:

bez, without	do, to, till, until;	krom { aside from,
dle { according to;	od, from	kromě { except;
podle { next to;	u, at, by;	kolem { round,
vedle, next to, along-	z, ze, from, out of;	okolo { around;
side of;		vůkol

*) See Note 5, page 82. In the genitive case the question **koho?** *whose?* was inadvertently omitted.

vně , outside of;	daleko , far	výše , higher
vnitr , inside of;	stranu , about	prostřed , amidst
blízko , near	níže , lower	místo , instead of.

The *dative* case (responding to the question **komu?** **čemu?**) is governed by the following:

k	proti , against	naproti , towards, a-
ke {	k vůli , for the sake of;	gainst, opposite;
ku		vstříce , towards.

The *accusative* case (responding to the question **koho?** **co?**) is governed by the following:

mimo , besides, past;	pro , for	skrze , through.
ob , over	přes , over, across;	

The *locative* case (responding to the question **v kom?** **v čem?** **o kom?** **o čem?** etc.) is always governed by the preposition **při**, *by, at*; and in most instances by the following prepositions:

v {	o , about, on;	po , after, by, during.
ve	na , on, upon, for;	

The preposition **v** or **ve**, when it occurs before a word beginning with the letter **v**, is often changed into **u**; for instance : **u velikém počtu** (instead of **ve velikém počtu**), *in a large number*, or "in large numbers."

The above five prepositions often require the *accusative* case; for example : **na potupu**, *for disgrace*, i. e. "in order to disgrace or dishonor"; **bojí se o život**, *he fears for his life*.

The prepositions **mezi**, between, among; **nad**, over, above; **pod**, under, below; **před**, before, — govern either the *accusative* or the *instrumental* case : **půjdú mezi lidí**, I shall go among people; **byl jsem mezi lidmi**, I was among people.

The preposition **s**, **se** governs the *genitive* case, when it means *from, off*: **spadl s vozu**, **se stromu**, he fell from the wagon, from the tree; and it governs the *instrumental* case, when it means *with*: **pojd' se mnou**, come with me; **šli jsme za nim**, we went after him, we followed him.

Za governs the *genitive* case, when it means *during, in*: za času Washingtona, in the time of Washington; — it governs the *accusative* case, when it means *for*: koupil jsem to za dollar, I bought it for a dollar; — and it governs the *instrumental* case, when translated by *behind, after*: pojď za mnou, come behind me; přijdu za tebou, I will come after thee.

In rare instances it requires the accusative case : nejsem s to posloužiti vám, I cannot (I am not able to) accommodate you.

CONTENTS.

	Page
Why this book has been written.....	5
The Bohemian language.....	7
The Bohemians in the United States.....	8
Part I.	
General observations.....	12
The Bohemian alphabet.....	12
Names of the letters.....	15
Bohemian pronunciation.....	16
Parts of speech.....	18
Gender	19
Grammatical rules in general.....	20
The accent.....	21
"Ty" and "vy".....	22
Part II. Rules of pronunciation.....	
Lesson I }	28
Lesson XL }	172
Part III. Bohemian conversation.....	
Bohemian and English.....	180
Greetings and compliments.....	187
A call.....	190
Time.....	192
The hour.....	198
Age and date.....	201
The weather.....	206
Health and sickness.....	213
The human being.....	218
Disease and cure.....	228
Drugs and medicines.....	237
At home.....	244
Buying and selling.....	249
In a grocery store.....	255
Garments.....	257
Shoemaking	260
Diverse trades.....	261
On the farm.....	262
Part IV. Bohemian grammar.....	
Orthography.....	269
Etymology	274

SLAVIE a RODINA.

Slavie, časopis národní a politický. Nejstarší, nejoblíbenější a nejrozšířenější časopis český v Americe. List ryze národní, v politice rovný a nezávislý, fedrující vždy zásady jedině té strany politické, kteráž zemi a veškerému obyvatelstvu, najmě pak všemu lidu pracovnému bez výmlinky, na ten čas jest nejprospěšnější.

Rodina, zábavník "Slavie", přináší výbor nejlepších románů cizojačných i českých a povídky i romány do roka v Rodině vyšlé mají samy o sobě mnohonásobnou cenu předplatného. Romány v Rodině vycházející jsou veskrz dobré, mravně ušlechtující. Hledíme, aby se české mládeži pomocí zábavy dostalo toho, čeho se jí nedostatkem českého školství nedostalo.

Tlumač. Nový Tlumač Americký od Karla Jonáše. Žádná publikace česká v této zemi nebyla přijata od obecenstva s takovým vděkem a uznáním a žádne se nedostalo rozšíření tak rychlého a velikého, jako Tlumačí, knize ku snadnému a rychlému příučení se jazyku anglickému, bez jehož znalosti nikdo se zde valného pokroku nedodělá. Cena \$1.50 i se zásylkou a prodává se jedině za hotové.

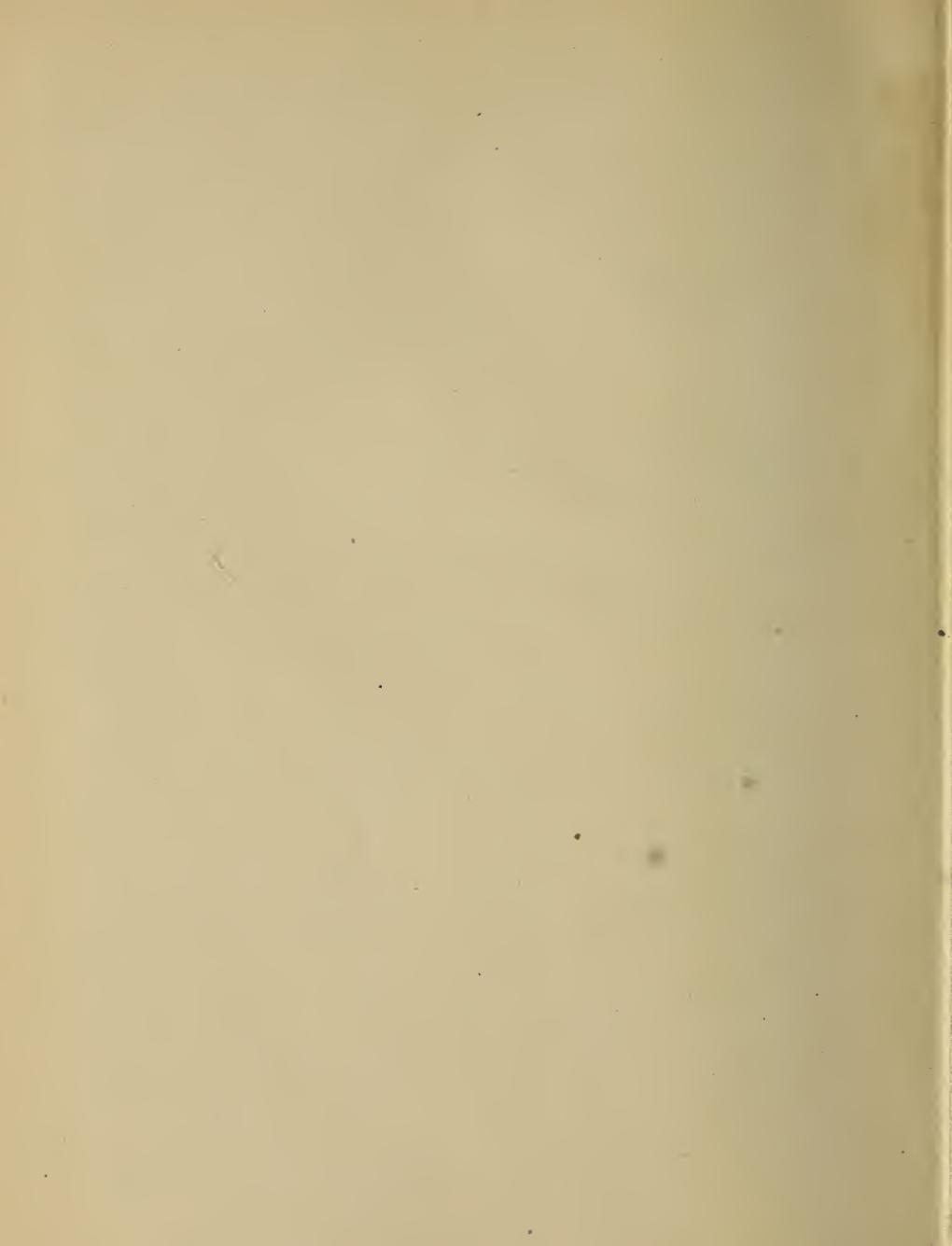
Slovník česko-anglický, od Karla Jonáše. Druhé rozmnožené a opravené vydání. Postupná kniha učebná po Tlumačí a nezbytná pro každého ku zdokonalení se v jazyku anglickém. Pro počátečníka ku rychlému seznámení se s nejobecnější, každodenní mluvou postačí Tlumač; povrchní znalec angličiny musí pak k ruce mít Slovník, aby se v jazyku zdokonalil. Cena \$1.50. Jenom za hotové. — Slovník anglicko-český vyjde n Slavie tiskem později.

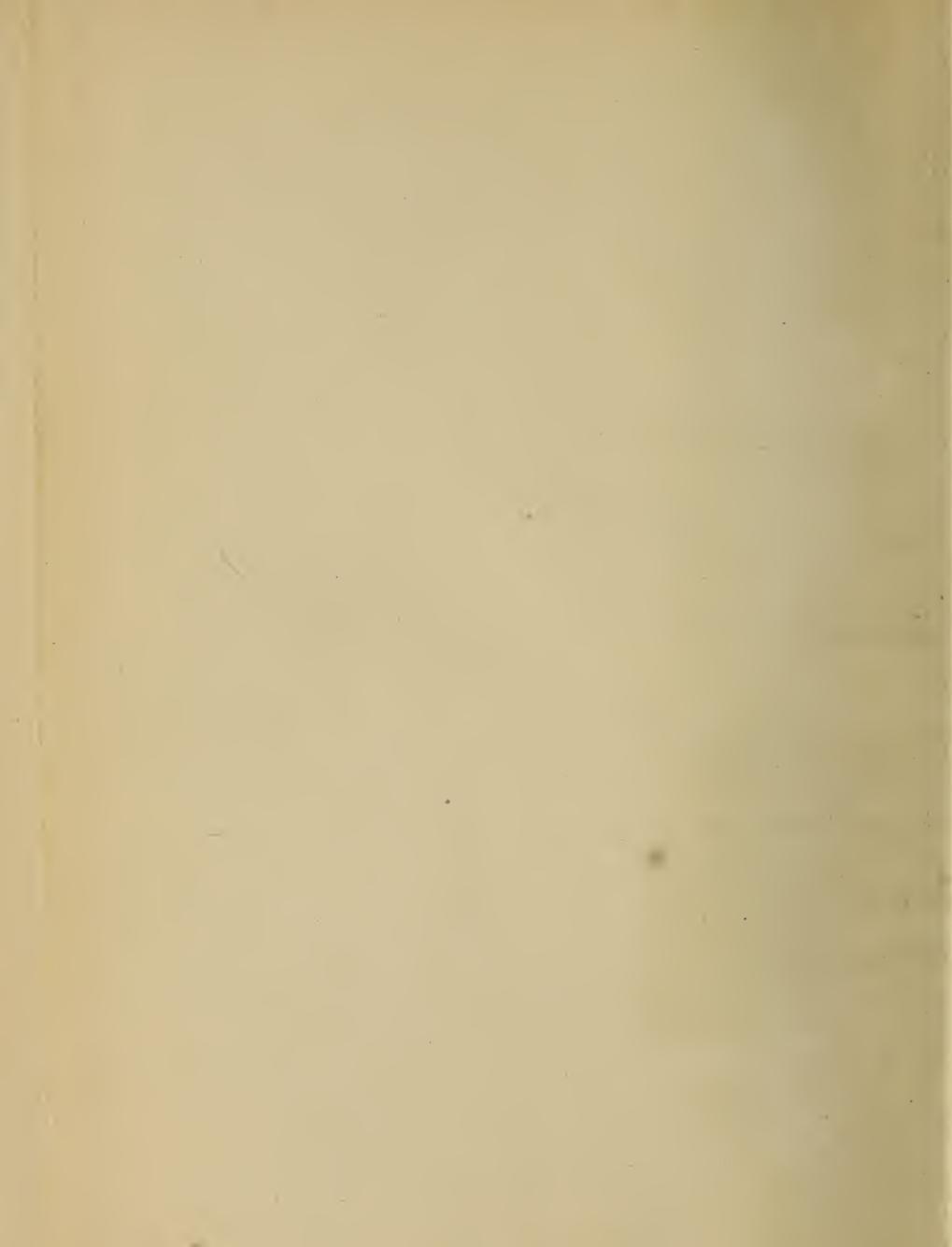
Americké právo od Karla Jonáše. Sbírka zákonů a výkladů právních, pro osadníky česko-americké zvláště užitečných. Alespoň povrchní znalost zdejších zákonů nutna jest každému občanu americkému, anatož neznalost zákonů nikoho před škodou neuchrání. Sbírka tato obsahuje toliko zákony nejnuttnejší, ve všech státech stejně platné a zvláště důležitý zákon homesteadní se všemi doplnky. "Právo farmerské" a smlouva rakousko-americká jsou spisu přidány. Cena 75c. Jen za hotové.

Zlatá kniha pro farmera. Dle rozličných pramenů sestavil Karel Jonáš. Knihha tato pojednává o vnitřních i zevnitřních nemocích koní a všechno dobytka hospodářského. Obsahuje návod o koupì koní, dodatek o domácích pomůckách pro všecké nehody, a recepty na rozličné léky v jazyku českém i anglickém. Prospěla již stovkám českých farmerů a na žádné farmě neměla by chyběti. Cena 65c. Jen za hotové.

Politické zřízení americké. Napsal Charles Nordhoff. Se svolením spisovatele a nakladatelů přeložil Gustav B. Reišl. Znati politické zařízení země v níž žijeme a prospivati chceme, jest jednou z nejpřednějších povinností každého přistěhovalce. Až do nedávna nebylo spisu, z něhož by nové příchozí takové známosti mohli nabýti. Nedostatku tomu odpomohl pan Reišl překladem tohoto výtečného díla Nordhoffova, jež se u Amerikánů cení co nejvýše. Cena pouze 50c. i se zásylkou. Jen za hotové.

Přihlášky poštou a zásylky peněz budtež adresovány prostě: «Slavie», Racine, Wis.





Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: Feb. 2007

Preservation Technologies

A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION

111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
(724) 779-2111



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



00023913355

